Invited papers and selected continuing education lectures

Editor:
Richard Riley
Royal Perth Hospital
University of Western Australia
University of Notre Dame

Australasian Anaesthesia
2021
# Contents

## BREATHING AND VENTILATION

Pandemic planning during a global respiratory crisis: Anaesthesia experience of service redesign at a major teaching hospital in Western Australia  
Christine Grobler, Lisa Molloy  
3

Management of severe Covid disease in the ICU  
Nicola Dobos, James Douglas  
11

Open-source hardware and the great ventilator rush of 2020  
Erich B Schulz, Robert L Read, Ben Coombs  
25

Is one picture worth 1000 words? How discussions of gas uptake in the lung have been compromised for decades by a single diagram  
Ben Korman  
39

## CIRCULATION

Atrial fibrillation, ablation, and the anaesthetist  
Cameron Maxwell, Derek Potgieter, Thomas Bruess  
53

Bubble trouble: Vascular gas embolism  
Bridget Devaney  
65

The expanding role of SGLT-2 inhibitors in the treatment of heart failure  
Aaron Pym, Ross Hannahan, Peter Flynn, Thomas Bruess  
73

Anaesthesia for the adult patient with a Fontan circulation undergoing non-cardiac surgery  
Reza Yusoff, James Preuss, Shannon Matzelle, Cameron Seamen  
83

Anaesthetic considerations in the patient with Eisenmenger syndrome  
Michael H Toon, Cameron Graydon  
91

Right ventricular failure – when the right heart goes wrong  
Richella-Lea Falland, Kate Drummond, Nicole Wylie  
103

Management of right ventricular dysfunction after separation from cardiopulmonary bypass  
Mumtaz Khan, Michael Scerri  
115

The perioperative management of patients with ventricular assist devices undergoing non-cardiac surgery  
Richella-Lea Falland, David Sidebotham, Sara Jane Allen  
125

## COAGULATION AND BLOOD

Transfusion implications in a COVID-19 era  
Michelle Roets, David Sturgess, Melinda Dean  
137

Direct acting oral anticoagulants – pharmacology and perioperative considerations  
Kate Drummond  
147

## PAIN

An update on intrathecal baclofen  
Corinne Teh, Sharon Keripin  
159

Enhancing powerful medication – applications of the placebo response for pain management  
Andrew Watson, Thomas Bruess  
165

Aue, Ta fia Ola! Pain and the faaSamoa  
Leinani Aiono-Le Tagaloa, Brenda Cassidy  
175
OBSTETRICS AND GYNAECOLOGY  181
Nitrous oxide use on the labour ward: Efficacy and environmental impact 183
Alice Gynther, Fiona Pearson, Forbes McGain
Epidural labour analgesia: Current trends, advances, and future techniques 193
Victor Chen, Harriet Wood
Labour epidural injustice 203
Ian Maddox

ASSESSMENT AND PERIOPERATIVE MEDICINE  211
Benefits of anaesthesia preassessment clinics 213
Saleem Khoyratty, Rishi Mehra, Aaron Paul
Use of mobile applications in perioperative medicine 225
Josh Szental, Rani Chahal, Gregg Miller
How can anaesthetists talk to patients with obesity? 237
Natalie Smith, Anthony Hodsdon, David A Story
Preparing the elderly patient for elective non-cardiac surgery 243
Naomi Osborne, Leena Nagappan, Kevin Kwan
Perioperative melatonin: Too good to be true? 257
Marli Smit, Dale Currigan

TRAUMA AND EMERGENCIES  271
Whakaari/White Island eruption – an overview of volcanic trauma and its management 273
John Burnett, Matthew Taylor
A beginner’s guide to in-flight medical emergencies 283
Gareth Jones, Nicola Emslie, Dean Bunbury

EDUCATION  293
NetworkZ: A multi-disciplinary team training initiative aiming to reduce unintended harm from surgery 295
Jennifer M Weller, Jennifer Long, Alan P Morry
Teaching medical students during clinical anaesthesia placements 303
Jeremy Rogers, Jeremy Carman, Andrew Gardner, Ross MacPherson

MANAGEMENT AND LEGAL  311
Clinical leadership in uncertain times 313
Nicole Sheridan, Candida Marane
Realising the potential of anaesthesia technicians: The Royal Perth Hospital experience 319
Peter Mulrooney, Laura Prates Vitoria
Socrates, Plato and the healthcare worker’s duty to serve 327
Elizabeth Hessian, Julian Savulescu
Medicolegal insights into anaesthesia 339
Chris Bolton
Media moments for anaesthetists 347
Simon Hendel, Jonathan (Joff) Lacey

Faculty and Regional Editors

Professor Thomas Bruessel
Australian Capital Territory

Dr Brenda Cassidy
Faculty of Pain Medicine

Dr Surbhi Malhotra
Western Australia

Professor Alicia Dennis
Victoria

Dr Sharon Tivey
New South Wales

Dr Gerald Toh
South Australia

Dr Thomas Fernandez
New Zealand

Dr Adrian Langley
Queensland

Dr Maurice Vialle
Tasmania
Preface

Welcome to the 2021 edition of Australasian Anaesthesia.

Two years ago, I wrote that the 2019 edition of Australasian Anaesthesia was to be my last. I was mistaken about that as well as any other plans I had made for my 2020 retirement. So, rather than living in Japan, I find myself back in this role and once again I am indebted to so many of you, authors, editors, and designers who have excelled during this time to produce a bumper edition.

It has been a biennium like no other. The COVID-19 pandemic has been the most disruptive, dangerous, and challenging period I have witnessed in my 40 years of medicine. At its onset, I even found myself ruminating on the possibility of dying at work, rather than dying en route to work. Reports of healthcare workers becoming seriously ill and dying while caring for patients with the same disease were frightening. In a selfish way, I was relieved when anaesthetists aged 60 and over were deemed unsuitable to be on the hospital intubation team. However, I felt some guilt for those in related specialties who were required to maintain their frontline roles. I saw colleagues shaving their beards, living separate lives from their families, working during their days off, and putting aside other pursuits during this most awful time. Many of us know friends, family members and colleagues who have become sick and even died, if not in our countries, then elsewhere.

At the same time, I have been impressed at the massive efforts of our anaesthesia and intensive care colleagues who have accepted the challenge and faced the disease head on. Equally impressive have been those colleagues who have become leaders of the healthcare response, at local, regional, and national levels. It has been said that anaesthetists are not perceived as natural leaders. Yet when there is a crisis, at a local or global level, we can and do assume such roles. Anaesthetists have taken prominent roles at the medical response to the Bali bombings; the Beaconsfield (Tasmania) gold-mine collapse; the Thai cave rescue; the terrorist attack in Christchurch, New Zealand; and most recently there has been the Whakaari (White Island) volcanic eruption in New Zealand and the global COVID-19 pandemic.

Which brings me to this edition. Australasian Anaesthesia 2021 features articles on these recent medical catastrophes and even delves into leadership and ethical considerations during these times. There is a wonderful variety of topics to keep your interest and cardiology topics are equally highlighted in this edition.

During these times of stress, fluctuating workloads, and persistent uncertainties, please continue to take care of yourself, your colleagues, and those whom you love.

I wish to thank the authors, the regional editors and ANZCA’s Liane Reynolds, Elizabeth Short and Frances Rowsell for their work and support in producing this edition; often working from home. Please thank our authors personally when you can and consider writing for the next edition.

Finally, allow me to acknowledge all those who have faced these challenges despite personal risk. Thank you so much!

Associate Professor Richard Riley
Editor, Australasian Anaesthesia 2021
bluebook@anzca.edu.au
Breathing and ventilation

Pandemic planning during a global respiratory crisis: Anaesthesia experience of service redesign at a major teaching hospital in Western Australia
Christine Grobler, Lisa Molloy

Management of severe Covid disease in the ICU
Nicola Dobos, James Douglas

Open-source hardware and the great ventilator rush of 2020
Erich B Schulz, Robert L Read, Ben Coombs

Is one picture worth 1000 words? How discussions of gas uptake in the lung have been compromised for decades by a single diagram
Ben Korman
Pandemic planning during a global respiratory crisis: Anaesthesia experience of service redesign at a major teaching hospital in Western Australia

Christine Grobler, MBBCH DA FCA FANZCA  
Department of Anaesthesia and Pain Medicine, Royal Perth Hospital, Western Australia
Dr Grobler is deputy director of the department of anaesthesia and pain medicine and the director of trauma anaesthesia in the department of anaesthesia and pain medicine at Royal Perth Hospital. She sits on the hospital and state trauma committees, is immediate past chair of the WA ANZCA Regional Committee and clinical lead for the Rural Health West Outreach Anaesthesia Program.

Lisa Molloy, MB BCh BAO (Hons) BA FCAI FANZCA  
Department of Anaesthesia and Pain Medicine, Royal Perth Hospital, Western Australia
Dr Molloy has completed fellowships in malignant hyperthermia, trauma anaesthesia, airway and paediatrics, and now works as a specialist anaesthetist at Royal Perth Hospital.

INTRODUCTION

“The world has to maintain vigilance against the recurrence of outbreaks from environmental sources or laboratories. Global efforts and co-operation are required to control devastating pandemics as our world is miniaturised by rapid air travel”.

On 11 March 2020, the World Health Organization (WHO) declared the novel coronavirus SARS-CoV-2 (COVID-19) outbreak a global pandemic. Following the declaration, many changes and plans were implemented within hospitals in Australia in preparation for the pandemic. At the time of the declaration, the definitive transmission and characteristics of COVID-19 were not fully understood, but like other respiratory pathogens, it was thought to be predominantly droplet spread with aerosol transmission in certain settings.

The majority of influenza-like illnesses are believed to spread via droplets (>5 microns) and airborne transmission is not considered likely unless an aerosol generating procedure (AGP) (see Table 1) is being performed. Airborne transmission is believed to occur when a susceptible host inhales infectious particles contained in small aerosols (<5 microns). The risk for airborne transmission to healthcare workers (HCWs) therefore exists when treating patients with a pathogen known to spread via the airborne route (for example, measles, TB, SARS and MERS), when conducting an AGP, or with a novel respiratory virus where the modes of infection, transmissibility or characteristic are not yet clearly understood (for example, COVID-19).

Table 1. Aerosol generating procedures (AGPs)
Reproduced with permission from the Communicable Disease Control Directorate, WA Health for the identification and use of PPE in the clinical setting during the coronavirus pandemic 9 April 2020.

AGPs include:
- Bag and mask ventilation.
- Tracheal intubation and extubation.
- Tracheostomy.
- Ventilation via supraglottic airway (including insertion and removal).
- Non-invasive ventilation including CPAP and BiPAP.
- High flow nasal oxygen therapy.
- Diagnostic and therapeutic instrumentation of the airway including bronchoscopy.
- Nebuliser administration.
- Sputum induction.
- Open airway suctioning.
- Surgical AGPs.

It was clear that change needed to occur rapidly within our hospital to deal with newly emerging challenges. Concerns were raised around health workers’ personal protective equipment (PPE) in terms of what was appropriate PPE for particular situations and the availability of PPE within the state and also there were
concerns re staff education and welfare. Decisions were required regarding a dedicated intubating team, Critical Care Outreach Teams and potential staff re-deployment across critical care areas. Regular multi-disciplinary working groups were necessary to map the hospital journey for COVID-19 patients; theatre adaptations and plans for critical care pods were vital.

**PERSONAL PROTECTIVE EQUIPMENT – INTRODUCTION OF FIT TESTING**

The two main types of air-purifying respirators used (referred to as respirators hereafter) are either powered (PAPR) or non-powered. Non-powered respirators utilise the negative pressure generated by the wearer to draw air through the filter and thereby purify it. Multiple international and national guidelines exist which state that fit-testing should be carried out prior to a respirator being used for the first time4,6.

N95 filtering respirators should filter 95 per cent of airborne particles up to 0.3 microns in size, which is the most penetrable size by air. Both P2 and N95 respirators are considered by the World Health Organization (WHO) for use in HCWs for this purpose. P2 respirators are most commonly used in Europe and comply with the AUS/NZ 1716 standard. N95 respirators are those which have been approved and certified by the United States Institute for Occupational Health and Safety (NIOSH). Both of these respirators are single use only4.

In our hospital, we had small and medium Halyard and BSN Proshield N95 masks available in theatre, but only one size was available in other parts of the hospital.

At the time of the COVID-19 outbreak, fit testing was not part of our institutional protocol and was not routinely carried out at any other hospital within Western Australia (WA). A fit check was the appropriate minimum standard required in hospitals, and although fit testing was the Australian gold standard there existed no mandatory requirement at a national or state level. Based on the premise that there was some uncertainty on the method of spread at the time the COVID-19 pandemic was declared, and due to the nature of the clinical work and the role that anaesthetists would play during a respiratory pandemic, we believed our staff to be at sufficiently high risk to initiate the introduction of qualitative fit-testing within our department. Similar measures were taken at other institutions within metropolitan WA.

**THE EDUCATIONAL BENEFITS – A FIT-TEST VS A FIT-CHECK**

A fit-test aids to ensure that the correct size of respirator is chosen by the wearer to ensure unfiltered air is not entrained from a poorly fitting mask. The average penetration by ambient aerosols can be 33 per cent for a poorly fitting respirator versus 4 per cent for a well-fitting respirator6. A fit-test should be conducted annually, whereas a fit-check needs to be undertaken every time a wearer uses a respirator. For the inexperienced wearer, a fit-check can be incorrectly done around 25 per cent of the time. It is reasonable to assume that the willingness of a HCW to work during an infectious respiratory pandemic will depend on perceived risk. Asking a wearer to perform a fit-check for the first time in a clinical scenario which is time critical and highly stressful does not assuage any such perception, nor does it instil faith within the wearer. Past experience has shown that the majority of HCWs who become infected do so during the first few days of exposure when understanding, protocol familiarity and vigilance in the correct use of respirators is the lowest10.

A fit-test utilises either a “qualitative” or “quantitative” method to determine whether a particular size, type and model of respirator will give the wearer an adequate seal if worn correctly1. The qualitative method relies on detecting leakage of a test substance into the face piece. This is a subjective test; it neither measures nor allows testers to quantify the actual amount of any leakage. The two main qualitative solutions used are saccharin, which leaves a sweet taste, and Bitrex solution, which leaves a bitter taste in the subject’s mouth. Qualitative fit-testing is generally used for half-mask respirators. Quantitative fit-testing on the other hand, can be used for any tight-fitting respirator, including full-face respirators, and utilises a machine to measure the actual amount of leakage which occurs11.

Our department used the Bitrex qualitative fit-testing method and the trainers were certified remotely by the 3M safety representative. It is an inexpensive test when compared with quantitative fit-testing, simple to use, is portable and the masks are not damaged during the test and can be reused by the wearer to minimise waste of PPE. However, qualitative fit testing is subjective, may be claustrophobic and is dependent on the subject tasting the solution.

As a department, it was decided that all intubations would be carried out by senior staff – anaesthesia consultants and fellows. All senior anaesthesia staff rostered to work during the initial outbreak were tested, unless they were over the age of 60 years or had a medical condition which precluded them from treating COVID-19 patients – (see RIDER criteria Table 2). Anaesthesia technicians who formed part of the anaesthesia intubating team (hereafter referred to as the SWAT team) were also tested.
Additionally, the hospital pastoral care service provided training sessions to numerous staff members within our department with the aim of improving listening skills and confidence in initiating conversations around mental health. The team also offered a confidential avenue of support, outside the department, for any staff members in distress.

Considerations for staff physical wellbeing were also made. Care bundles consisting of toiletries were stored within the department for use following a COVID-19 exposure procedure. Extra rest space was created to allow for adequate rest while maintaining social distancing. Links to online exercise classes and exercise regimes were provided to staff to facilitate wellbeing and for those unable to attend gym classes due to mandatory isolation. Storage spaces were also reconfigured to accommodate additional sleeping mattresses, in anticipation of an increased after-hours workload and shift pattern.

For members of staff who felt they could not return home following contact with a COVID-19 patient (due to living with vulnerable family members), special hotel rates were organised by the hospital executive with local hotels. All of these welfare provisions were regularly shared with the department via regular “COVID-19 Welfare” email updates, which also included links to other useful wellbeing resources.

**“FRONTLINE” HEALTH CARE WORKERS – GENESIS OF CORE INTUBATING TEAM CONCEPT**

The abundance of literature which has emerged from the Wuhan experience, has aided and guided pandemic preparedness across multiple WA institutions. Among the models of care, was the inception of dedicated airway response teams.

The belief was held that by choosing a small group of anaesthetists to form the airway response team would allow for focussed training and repetitive practise of important pathways. It also facilitated early consolidation of core PPE principles, allowing for minimisation of risk through familiarity. During the early period of the COVID-19 pandemic, when uncertainty existed regarding the exact transmission mode, it was realistic that the patients were likely to be maximally immunosuppressed and therefore more susceptible to respiratory complications, as they were during the SARS pandemic.

By having a small group involved in intubating, we hoped that early lessons learnt would be concentrated and the knowledge could then be distilled to the wider group in a more controlled manner.

WA major training hospitals were early adoptees of this approach and anaesthesia intubating teams were created. At our hospital, the premise was that all COVID-19 intubations for the entire hospital (for example, intensive care unit, emergency department and negative pressure rooms on the respiratory unit), would be carried out by the SWAT team. This was an anaesthesia consultant-led service and a separate roster was established for on-site and afterhours cover from home 24/7 at the beginning of the pandemic. As our state numbers decreased, the SWAT team was disbanded after seven months, and extra cover for COVID-19 patients is now provided by the general on call consultant from home.

Storage areas became necessary in remote areas for airway equipment, COVID-19 trolleys and cognitive aids, examples of these areas being respiratory wards and the COVID-19 testing clinic. A backpack was created containing additional miscellaneous equipment not readily available in other locations – single use laryngoscopes, CMAC blades, stylts, bougies, various sized suction above cuff endotracheal tubes (SACETT) and iGel LMAs. This was carried by members of the SWAT team as the WA Major Trauma Centre was the clinical emergency team (MET) anaesthesia registrar. The pharmacy also created specific COVID-19 intubation drug packs containing drugs for intubation and haemodynamic stabilisation for use in remote locations. These drugs included ketamine, fentanyl, midazolam, propofol, metaraminol and various muscle relaxants. The quantity of drugs included in the pack allowed for both induction and maintenance infusions in preparation for transfer to ICU.

**HOSPITAL ADAPTATIONS – NEGATIVE PRESSURE THEATRES AS A FUTURE POSSIBILITY**

During the period when elective work was ceased, the decision was made to change the pressure differential within one of the operating suites to convert it to a “negative pressure” operating suite (relative to the anaesthetists and theatre corridors). This was achieved by reducing air inflow without altering outflow or laminar flow characteristics. This became our dedicated COVID-19 theatre. Change to a “negative pressure theatre” has not been achieved within our institution in the past, despite the fact that we have for years, and continue to conduct, both surgical (for example, bronchoscopies, lung biopsies) and anaesthetic AGPs on patients requiring airborne precautions. Our institutional guideline advocates that AGPs in patients under airborne precautions be performed in a negative pressure room if practical. The theatre anaesthesia room then became the donning area for anaesthesia staff and preparation zone prior to the arrival of the patient, with all necessary equipment, including PPE being kept on a dedicated COVID-19 trolley.

**HOSPITAL ADAPTATIONS – THE RISE OF SURGE CAPACITY**

Reconfiguration of the emergency department (ED) occurred with the creation of a new Acute Respiratory Illness Zone (ARIZe) for the acute management of COVID-19 or suspected COVID-19 cases presenting to the hospital. All patients were triaged outside ED before entry and then assigned to a zone. The ARIZe area was cordoned off from the rest of the ED and hospital areas designed to facilitate a “one-way” patient flow model. It was accessible only by staff working in that area to reduce the risk of cross contamination. It had a dedicated elevator to the COVID wards, stopping only on these floors and the fourth floor, which allowed access to ICU and theatres.

ARIZe contained six negative pressure high acuity rooms with ample space for PPE donning and doffing, and ICU patients could be intubated prior to transfer to ICU. This allowed for easier access for low-risk patients, including multi-trauma patients, to be treated separately within the business-as-usual model. It was accepted that the occasional COVID patient could be missed, especially if asymptomatic, but overall it was hoped that by dividing ED into the two main sections it would lower the risk to both staff and patients. Our ED has subsequently converted back to its usual configuration for triage, patient flow and use of clinical areas.

In preparation for an increased demand for critical care beds, escalation plans were established in conjunction with ID/IPM (infectious diseases/infection prevention medicine) to accommodate extra ICU patients outside of the dedicated ICU unit. One of our day surgery admission units adjacent to ICU was reconfigured and within a short period of time, three extra isolation rooms were built. ICU equipment was also moved to establish an extra eight fully equipped high acuity beds in this area. In addition to this, other areas were identified for surge capacity including operating theatres, the Coronary Care Unit and the State Trauma Unit should the need arise. Patients could be ventilated in part of the theatre complex under the care of ICU and the anaesthesia department, while also allowing non-COVID emergency cases to continue in other areas of the theatre complex. Including all ICU appropriate areas (others were also identified) within the hospital, this would allow for ICU numbers to substantially increase from 24 to 98.

Anesthesia registrars with previous ICU experience were identified and allocated to ICU for one week for skills expansion, familiarisation with ICU protocol and training, potentially for re-deployment to ICU during the pandemic. Preparation was made on the anaesthesia roster for consultants to cover anaesthesia registrar shifts if necessary. Several anaesthesia technicians were also allocated to ICU to support the respiratory technicians and become familiar with equipment.

Recovery nursing staff were also deployed to ICU for upskilling, and other hospital nursing staff with critical care experience were identified and recruited to ICU education. An educational program was started for theatre nurses, should they be required to help with the recovery of patients in theatre.

During the initial period of the pandemic, arrangements were made between all of the large teaching and training hospitals, so that staff were based in one hospital only, and not across multiple sites, thereby minimising risk of cross-site infection if one staff member was infected. As with most healthcare facilities, efforts to minimise future potential spread have resulted in stricter entry points and limited access to the hospital by the public.

Throughout the pandemic, twice-weekly meetings were established between ICU, infectious diseases, anaesthesia, physiotherapists, allied health, nursing staff, pharmacy and the executive to facilitate communication for surge capacity planning.

**EDUCATIONAL OPPORTUNITIES – FUTURE PANDEMIC PREPAREDNESS**

The pandemic raised both our awareness of and familiarity with infection control principles. Across healthcare institutions, we could exploit this renewed interest to re-appraise historical standards and bring about change.

A statewide multi-pronged approach was employed. Collaborative groups, including virtual group forums and online information repositories were established across metropolitan and regional Western Australia (WA) to effectively share local, national and international knowledge and guidelines, and problem solve clinical dilemmas that were encountered or those that could potentially occur.

New up-to-date institutional management guidelines, protocols and checklists were developed and published and departmental pandemic preparedness strategies were developed and disseminated. Visual guides to assist and remind staff in evidence-based clinical management were developed and presented both online and in print format and made available in all clinical areas.

Audiovisual resources were generated from multiple anaesthesia departments to provide instruction on the correct technique for safe airway management of the COVID-19 patient, including the donning and doffing of PPE, intubating/extubating COVID-19 patients and transferring these patients from a remote location. In collaboration with other WA hospitals, dedicated airway trolleys and “shadow boards” for intubation
were designed. The pandemic highlighted that we were ill prepared and had no plans in place to deal with an infectious respiratory threat. To improve pandemic preparedness, low and high-fidelity simulations for staff were held across multiple clinical environments including the ED, medical wards and theatres. As part of an ongoing pandemic preparedness strategy, our department undertakes quarterly online PPE refresher courses and annual practical PPE sessions run across our institution. As a result of increased meetings and training, inter-departmental relationships were strengthened.

Departmental teaching and business meetings moved to a virtual platform to reduce the risk of spread. Caps were placed on numbers allowed in the seminar room, and these caps remain, with all others joining meetings virtually via Microsoft Teams from their own offices. The move towards online meetings has allowed for international speakers to be involved in our departmental meetings on a regular basis.

The pandemic has also encouraged us to use telehealth and phone consultations. Telehealth, until now has been used almost exclusively for rural patients, but during the pandemic, there was a rapid expansion in the use of phone and video consultations for all patient groups allowing healthcare to continue while minimising exposure to both staff and patients at the same time. One hundred additional rooms were equipped with webcams for outpatient telehealth appointments and 200 additional staff were trained to deliver telehealth services. Between January and June 2020, over 30 per cent of patients over the age of 60 from regional and metropolitan areas attended their general outpatient appointments virtually – more than double the number of appointments in 201916. Seventy per cent of Aboriginal patients living in rural and remote communities attended their appointments via telehealth in April 2020. The use of telephone and video consultations peaked in April 2020 with an average 62 per cent of patients from metro and regional areas attending their appointments virtually – almost six times more than pre-COVID-19 periods. Overall during the first six months of 2020, there was a 700 per cent increase in the use of video consults compared with 201916. Telehealth, predominantly phone consultations, were used by our department for preoperative appointments and malignant hyperthermia services, while the pain service used a combination of video and telephone consultations. Peak usage for the pre-assessment clinic were the months of April and May, with over 90 per cent of patients having telephone/video appointments16. Although the transition to phone consultations took time to adjust, it allowed us to continue assessing patients during the pandemic and minimise exposure for both patients and staff while continuing with daily clinics.

LESSONS LEARNT – GROWTH IN THE TIME OF COVID

COVID-19 caught us all unaware. It exposed deficits in our systems and revealed how easily day-to-day healthcare can be disrupted. The pandemic also demonstrated the need for adaptations to daily routines and that working outside one’s usual clinical area may be necessary in a pandemic. The need for communication between departments, executive staff and other metropolitan hospitals was highlighted, allowing us to share ideas, skills and resources. The importance of collaboration between WA hospitals was shown by allowing access to shared resources, thereby providing a safe environment for both staff and patients. Increasing use of telehealth and telephone consultations, has demonstrated this form of consultation may be appropriate to continue in a larger capacity long term, and the necessity for clinicians to embrace digital technology as normal service. Its sudden introduction also highlighted the need for computer and equipment upgrading. From a PPE aspect, WA Health’s introduction of fit testing for all frontline staff, has emphasised the importance of effective use of this component of PPE for staff safety.

CONCLUSION

In comparison to other parts of the world, we have been very fortunate in western Australia with our COVID-19 numbers. Despite our low numbers, much has been learnt and much has changed within our hospital since the declaration of the pandemic. The COVID-19 and suspected COVID patients we now treat are from hotel quarantine and international ships. The extra time compared with our colleagues elsewhere in Australia, has given us time to prepare for what lies ahead. Social distancing and virtual meetings have become the norm. Periodic simulations continue as refreshers in anticipation of another COVID wave and visual guides are readily available in theatres. The pandemic has helped us forge better communication and relationships between various departments, and between departments and the hospital executive staff. WA Health quantitative fit testing commenced in early 2021. Vaccination of hospital staff has commenced and is ongoing. COVID-19 has shown us that life can change rapidly, necessitating an accordingly rapid response in our professional, social and personal lives.

REFERENCES

Management of severe Covid disease in the ICU

Nicola Dobos MBBS MPH FCICM
Intensive Care Specialist, Department of Intensive Care Services, Western Health, Melbourne, Australia

Dr Nicky Dobos is a staff specialist intensivist at Western Health in Melbourne. She is also the New Fellows’ Representative on the board of the College of Intensive Care Medicine (CICM) and chair of the Trainee Committee. Nicky’s interests include obstetric critical care, advanced communication, medical education and mentorship.

James Douglas MBBS (Hons) FRACP FCICM DTM&H
Intensive Care Specialist, Department of Intensive Care Services, Western Health, Melbourne, Australia

Dr James Douglas completed joint training in Internal Medicine and Intensive Care in Melbourne, Australia before completing fellowships at the Royal Children’s Hospital and Guy’s and St Thomas’ Hospital in London. James works as a staff specialist intensivist at Western Health in Melbourne and has interests in mechanical ventilation and medical education.

INTRODUCTION

Coronavirus disease 2019 (COVID-19) is an infectious disease caused by the highly contagious severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus 2 (SARS-CoV-2). A novel coronavirus was identified in Wuhan in late 2019 through the “pneumonia of unknown aetiology” surveillance program and was linked to the Huanan Seafood wholesale market. Prior to 2019, there were six coronaviruses that were known to cause human disease. Of these, four cause the common cold, while more serious disease was caused by the severe acute respiratory syndrome (SARS) and Middle East respiratory syndrome (MERS) coronaviruses. COVID-19 has subsequently led to a global pandemic with unprecedented consequences to human health and society, leading the World Health Organization (WHO) to declare a global emergency in January 2020. The morbidity and mortality rates due to the pandemic are increasing rapidly worldwide, causing overwhelming impacts on current and ongoing provisions of intensive care.

CLINICAL FEATURES OF SEVERE COVID-19

Premorbid risk factors that predict progression to severe or critical illness with COVID-19 include age and underlying medical conditions. However, the exact potential effect of various comorbidities on the severity of COVID-19 illness is unclear and predicting disease trajectory from the time of symptom onset is difficult.

Patients with COVID-19 present most commonly with fever (temperature > 38 degrees Celsius), cough, shortness of breath, anosmia and fatigue. Clinical features of severe infection include interstitial pneumonia, respiratory failure, acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) and sepsis.

Critically ill COVID-19 patients typically develop pneumonia approximately five days following symptom onset and severe hypoxaemic respiratory failure requiring intensive care unit (ICU) admission at approximately day seven to 12.

Severity of infection with COVID-19 can be classified as mild, moderate, severe or critical, as per the Australian Guidelines for the Clinical Care of people with COVID-19 (see Table 1).

Table 1. COVID-19 Disease Severity Classification

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disease Severity</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mild illness</td>
<td>Asymptomatic, or Mild upper respiratory tract symptoms, or Cough, myalgia, asthenia without shortness of breath or reduction in oxygen saturation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Moderate illness</td>
<td>Oxygen saturations of &gt;92%; on up to 4L/min oxygen via nasal prongs. Prostration, severe asthenia, fever &gt;38°C or persistent cough. Clinical or radiological signs of lung involvement. No clinical or laboratory indicators of clinical severity or respiratory impairment.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The clinical features that prompt consideration of ICU admission are those of severe or critical illness:
- Respiratory rate ≥30 breaths/min, or
- Oxygen saturation ≤92% at rest, or
- Arterial partial pressure of oxygen (PaO2)/inspired oxygen fraction (FiO2) ≤300.

**Severe illness**

Adult patients meeting any of the following criteria:
- Respiratory failure
- Severe respiratory failure (PaO2/FiO2 <200), respiratory distress or ARDS. This includes patients deteriorating despite advanced forms of respiratory support (non-invasive ventilation (NIV), high-flow nasal oxygen (HFNO)) OR patients requiring mechanical ventilation.
- OR other signs of significant deterioration
  - Hypotension or shock.
  - Impairment of consciousness.
  - Other organ failure.

**Critical illness**

Adult patients meeting any of the following criteria:
- Respiratory failure
- Hypoxaemia (requiring >6L O2 via nasal prongs to achieve SpO2 >92%, or arterial partial pressure of oxygen (PaO2) / inspired oxygen fraction (FiO2) ≤300.
- Respiratory distress or increased work of breathing (respiratory rate >30 breaths/minute).
- Patient deterioration despite advanced respiratory support (via either non-invasive ventilation (NIV) or high flow nasal oxygen).
- Worsening lung infiltrates on chest radiograph.

**ASSESSMENT FOR SUSPECTED COVID-19**

All patients presenting with any of the documented symptoms or signs of COVID-19 should be tested and considered "suspected COVID" until proven negative, according to both risk stratification, epidemiology and microbiological tests. Given the non-specific nature of many of the clinical features of COVID-19, it is important to maintain a high index of suspicion and test all potential cases.

The test of choice to confirm COVID-19 infection is viral PCR, with swab samples from both the oropharynx and nasopharynx to optimise virus detection. Sputum samples should also be obtained where possible. Avoid bronchoscopy and bronchoalveolar lavage due to the risk of aerosolisation, unless there is a strong suggestion that it may change management.

A full septic screen should be considered for all suspected or confirmed COVID-19 patients admitted to ICU, including blood, urine, sputum and faecal cultures, atypical pneumonia screen and chest radiograph.

Common observations in laboratory abnormalities in severe and critically unwell COVID-19 patients include lymphopenia, elevated ESR and CRP, as well as elevated ferritin levels. Very high ferritin levels (>700ng/ml) seen in severe COVID-19 patients may be a marker of overwhelming systemic inflammation and increased risk of cytokine storm syndrome. The cytokine storm may be responsible for two main causes of mortality in COVID-19, ARDS and secondary haemophagocytic lymphohistiocytosis.

Serological tests detect evidence of recent infection and are therefore not used in the acute assessment or management of COVID-19 ICU patients.

Severe COVID-19 pneumonia can present with bilateral opacities on chest radiograph or ground-glass opacities with or without consolidation on chest CT. Other less common findings include pleural effusions, interstitial disease and pericardial effusion.

**ICU ADMISSION CRITERIA FOR COVID-19 PATIENTS**

Admission to ICU with COVID-19 depends on a number of factors, including patient age, comorbidities and clinical state. It is also important to consider any previously expressed values and preferences, communicated directly by the patient or via their medical decision treatment maker.

ICU Liaison Services consist of experienced critical care nurses and doctors who provide follow up of patients discharged to the ward from ICU, as well as support for medical and nursing staff caring for deteriorating patients on the ward. The ICU Liaison service may be able to regularly review and manage COVID-19 positive patients on the ward and update the ICU team of their progress or deterioration, in order to streamline their admission to ICU if required, and prevent unnecessary ICU admissions in times of increased demand.

The clinical features that prompt consideration of ICU admission are those of severe or critical illness: respiratory failure, shock and multiple organ dysfunction (see Table 2).

**General ICU management**

**Fluid management**

Notwithstanding initial resuscitation requirements, severe and critically unwell COVID-19 patients in ICU should be managed with a conservative fluid approach, aiming for relative euvolaemia. Fluid should be administered cautiously as patients with severe and critical COVID-19 may develop myocardial dysfunction, with the attendant risks of acute pulmonary oedema.

**Thromboprophylaxis**

Studies have suggested that there is an increased risk of thromboembolism associated with COVID-19 infection. Australian guidelines recommend the use of higher doses of prophylactic anticoagulants in adults with severe or critical COVID-19 infection (for example, enoxaparin 40mg twice daily for patients with normal renal function, or once daily in those with impaired renal function), unless there is a contraindication, such as major bleeding or thrombocytopenia.

**Antimicrobials**

Given the difficulty in distinguishing bacterial pneumonia or coinfection from COVID-19 alone, it is appropriate for suspected or confirmed COVID-19 patients with an oxygen requirement to be managed empirically with broad-spectrum antimicrobials with activity against both typical and atypical respiratory pathogens. This should be reviewed daily and de-escalated as able, depending on the patient’s clinical picture and the available microbiology.

**Sedation and analgesia**

Requirements for sedation and analgesia in intubated COVID-19 patients vary. Generally, a Richmond Agitation Sedation Score (RASS) of 0 to -2 can be targeted, unless there is evidence of ventilator dysynchrony or a requirement for neuromuscular blockade (such as in critical hypoxemia), in which case deeper sedation may be required. Deeper sedation may also be required for patients at risk of self-extubating. Agents used for sedation include, but are not limited to, propofol, opioids such fentanyl and benzodiazepines such as midazolam. Desmopressin may be appropriate in the weaning stages for selected patients, especially in the setting of delirium.

**Other**

Usual ICU supportive management includes stress ulcer prophylaxis and glycaemic control as per local protocols, bowel management and strict pressure injury care. Discussion regarding goals of care should be done early in patients’ hospital admission with consideration of their values and preferences and in conjunction with their family and/or next-of-kin.

**MANAGEMENT**

**Fluid management**

**Thromboprophylaxis**

**Antimicrobials**

**Sedation and analgesia**

**Other**

### Table 2. Clinical features of COVID-19 patients prompting consideration of ICU admission

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Respiratory</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hypoxaemia (requiring &gt;6L O2 via nasal prongs to achieve SpO2 &gt;92%, or arterial partial pressure of oxygen (PaO2) / inspired oxygen fraction (FiO2) ≤300.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Respiratory distress or increased work of breathing (respiratory rate &gt;30 breaths/minute).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patient deterioration despite advanced respiratory support (via either non-invasive ventilation (NIV) or high flow nasal oxygen).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Worsening lung infiltrates on chest radiograph.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cardiovascular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Systolic blood pressure &lt;90mmHg.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heart rate &gt;120 beats per minute.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Neurological</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Altered conscious state.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Other</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Deteriorating multiple organ function.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Advanced life support

Cardiopulmonary resuscitation is a complex and difficult problem in patients with COVID-19 pneumonia and is considered aerosol generating. It is important for institutions to develop internal protocols for the performance of advanced life support (ALS) with modification to algorithms and the use of personal protective equipment (PPE) both in patients with known COVID infection as well as in general hospital inpatients during periods of high community transmission. It is important to monitor patients with COVID-19 infection who are at risk of deterioration in higher acuity areas of the hospital, as well as have clearly documented “goals of care” (that is, intubation/resuscitation status) for such patients to ensure appropriate decisions are made.

Staff safety remains a core priority during ALS. It is important that the hospital has appropriate PPE for staff safety and that it is worn prior to commencing cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) rather than entering a negative pressure room (NPR). In the presence of community transmission of COVID-19, an unresponsive or collapsed patient must be assumed to be high risk for COVID-19 infection, and therefore, healthcare workers (HCW) must only proceed with resuscitative measures if they are in the appropriate PPE. Having a buddy system, or “PPE spotter” to allow appropriate donning and doffing and restricting the number of staff entering the room can help with this.

Recommended modifications to the ALS algorithm are listed in Table 3.

Table 3. Recommended modifications to the ALS algorithm

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>General</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All HCWs performing resuscitative measures should be dressed in PPE for full airborne precautions (for example, gloves, eye protection, gown, N95 mask or powered air-purifying respirator (PAPR)).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Staff should wear a minimum of gloves, eye protection, and surgical face mask before placing defibrillation pads on the chest, performing a rhythm check and defibrillating a patient.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If able, resuscitation should be performed in the highest level of isolation room or area available.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Airway and breathing

- Use a mask, towel or sheet to cover the patient’s face to reduce the risk of aerosols during resuscitation.
- Provide oxygen via a face mask only. If possible, a supraglottic airway is preferred to a face mask.
- Place a hand on the patient’s chest to feel for chest rise and fall. Do not listen or feel for breathing.
- Use head tilt or chin lift only in order to clear the airway.
- Do not suction an airway with an open device (that is, Yankauer sucker) unless in an appropriate room with airborne PPE.
- Early intubation via an experienced airway operator, using video laryngoscope.
- Minimise bag-mask ventilation. Perform positive pressure ventilation ideally only once the patient is intubated, with cuff up and the ETT position is confirmed.

Circulation

- Perform compression-only CPR until an endotracheal tube is inserted.
- Do not disconnect airway devices for defibrillation.
- Use mechanical CPR devices if available to reduce HCW exposure to COVID-19.

Psychological support to patients, families and staff

Staff wellbeing and support is vital in a pandemic in order to protect them and create a safe and sustainable workforce. Increased workload, feelings of stress, anxiety and uncertainty are common. Prioritise clear, consistent communication and education for all staff. Regularly monitor staff wellbeing and ensure staff know how to access mental health and psychological support services. Ensure appropriate rostering and shift breaks and encourage time off work to avoid burn out. Provide rest areas with adequate social distancing measures in place. Ensure adequate and appropriate PPE is available for all staff caring for COVID-19 patients, including the use of PPE buddies. Assign high-risk staff (including those aged over 65 years, pregnant or immunocompromised) to patients who are confirmed COVID-19 negative.

Establish a communication plan with families. If visitation is restricted or denied, provide frequent, scheduled phone or video updates. Consider appropriateness of more lenient visitation during certain circumstances such as end-of-life care, in conjunction with local hospital guidelines. Utilise telephone or video calls for patients in order to enhance communication between themselves, their families and social supports.

Oxygenation and ventilation of COVID-19 patients

Oxygenation strategy

Severe and critical COVID-19 patients appear to suffer more from hypoxia than hypercapnia (Type 1 respiratory failure) despite extensive pulmonary inflammatory changes. The WHO has recommended targeting oxygen saturations (SpO2) greater than 96 per cent on initial resuscitation and greater than 90 per cent on subsequent resuscitation. This should be achieved with the lowest FiO2 possible and ideally via a low flow system (either face mask or nasal prong oxygen) with a designated limit for ward-based care (such as 6 L/min). This will allow recognition of deterioration along with minimising the risk of droplet aerosolisation and risk to patients and staff.

Patients with COVID pneumonia can vary in severity of pulmonary involvement. There is a spectrum of disease ranging from mild to severe. The management can thus range from observation, to low-flow oxygen, to high-flow or non-invasive ventilation and ultimately intubation and mechanical ventilation. Given both the infectivity of the disease and that patients’ clinical conditions can change rapidly, it is important for hospitals to develop clear guidelines and protocols to manage these patients during the course of their stay.

High flow nasal cannula oxygen and non-invasive ventilation

The appropriate modality to oxygenate patients who are deteriorating despite low level oxygen support is challenging and is constantly evolving. In an early report of the first 1591 patients admitted to ICU in 72 hospitals in the Lombardy region, 88 per cent were intubated. However, intubating all patients who are failing low flow oxygenation may lead to both some unnecessary intubations and will impact resource utilisation within the hospital.

If a patient remains hypoxaemic despite increasing FiO2, positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP) may be indicated. Continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP) can be used with suggested pressure ranges of 8–14 cmH2O, although the level may need to be adjusted as clinically indicated.

The use of high flow nasal prong (HFNP) oxygen and non-invasive ventilation (NIV) is challenging as they are considered AGPs and so pose a potential risk to staff and other patients. Institutions with NPRs or single isolation rooms may be able to use this modality more frequently but it remains problematic in open-plan areas.

NIV and HFNP oxygen may be limited to respiratory isolation rooms on the ward or in the ICU when provided under individual isolation such as the “McMonto Hood” (separating the patient from the environment) with appropriate aerosol control.

All patients who are undergoing HFNP oxygen therapy need increased monitoring in a high-acuity (HDU or ICU) environment due to the potential for rapid deterioration and the need for urgent intubation. Similarly, strict attention to PPE regardless of the location of these patients is critical.

Self proning

Proning is an established mechanism for improving oxygenation in patients with refractory type 1 respiratory failure by minimising ventilation/perfusion mismatch in the lung. Self-proning in awake COVID-19 patients prior to intubation was initially reported in a single centre French study that described 24 spontaneously ventilating hypoxic patients with posterior lesions on chest CT. Of these patients, 63 per cent were able to tolerate this for more than three hours, although oxygenation increased in only 25 per cent. Given the small data-sets and complexities with nursing care of these patients, individual hospitals need to determine their own protocols as to whether they should implement this strategy.

Intubation

The decision to intubate a patient with COVID pneumonia remains challenging. Waiting until a patient is in extremis puts both patients and staff at risk in terms of both outcomes and infection. “Early” intubation has been recommended but this is challenging both because the definition of what “early” means is debated and because there is a subset of patients with COVID-19 pneumonia who remain relatively stable despite high levels of supplemental oxygen therapy for many days.

Consideration for intubation may include rapid deterioration over hours, inability to maintain oxygen saturations greater than 90 per cent with an FiO2 of 0.6 or higher, hypercapnoea, increasing work of breathing, haemodynamic instability and multi-organ failure.
Intubation is considered an AGP and so ideally should be performed in a NPR by the most experienced practitioner available. Staff protection remains a key priority even in the context of significant patient deterioration and as such, early planning and identification of patients potentially needing intubation is of critical importance. Some institutions utilise “airway teams”, often including senior intensivists and anaesthetists, to intubate suspected or confirmed COVID-19 patients. Simulation, education and clear protocols are helpful given the stressful nature of intubating critically unwell and infective patients in often unfamiliar environments, including the use of cognitive aids, and outside and inside room checklists. These serve as reminders for the team leader of the critical steps involved in the intubation process. If a NPR is available for intubations, it can be beneficial to create two different teams – one team as the primary intubators and a second team in the antechamber to allow rapid communication and equipment management.

Intubation and equipment checklists consistent with society guidelines should be created, printed out in high colour and laminated to provide visual guidance and to help create consistency of approach. Adjustment needs to be made to multiple pieces of equipment to allow safe intubation in patients with COVID-19 pneumonia. With face mask ventilation, the circuit should be modified so that a viral filter is connected directly to the face mask to minimise the risk of infectious aerosolisation. The ventilator should also be set up prior to intubation with pre-specified settings. The circuit for connection should be modified to include closed system suctioning. Once intubation has been confirmed and the patient transferred to the ventilator, a decision needs to be made as to whether to keep end tidal carbon dioxide monitoring in place. This is normally considered a routine part of care of the intubated patient, but the risk of aerosolisation may mean that some institutions decide to leave it out.

A modified rapid sequence induction (RSI) approach is used for intubation. Modifications may include two handgrip mask oxygenation to minimise gas leak, extended pre-oxygenation time up to five minutes, use of a large dose of paralysing agent, avoidance of routine cricoid pressure, avoidance of bag mask ventilation unless life-threatening hypoxaemia develops, using video-laryngoscopy to optimise view for first pass intubation and confirmation of cuff up on the pilot balloon prior to commencing ventilation.

A structured approach to then transition the patient to the ventilator is also required to minimise risks to patient and staff. This may include turning off the oxygen at the wall to the self-inflating bag, clamping the endotracheal tube (ETT) prior to disconnection, connecting the patient to the ventilator, unclamping the ETT and then commencing ventilation.

Clear communication is required between all team members throughout this process. Depending on local resources it may be prudent to then protocolise the insertion of nasogastric (NG) tubes or central venous catheters (CVCs) in addition to the timing of being able to leave the NPR.

Ventilation strategy

The approach to ventilation in patients with COVID pneumonia follows a similar approach to ventilation in ARDS. On commencement of ventilation, a routine mode of mechanical ventilation should be chosen to allow uniformity of practice. For example, synchronised intermittent mandatory ventilation mode, with a tidal volume of 4–8mls per kilogram ideal body weight, a plateau pressure target of less than 30cmH2O, a respiratory rate of 20 breaths per minute and a PEEP of up to 5cmH2O with a FiO2 of 60% has been shown to be effective in reducing the risk of death in adults hospitalised with COVID-19 infection and with evidence of lower systemic inflammation. Such ventilation settings should be modified to include closed system suctioning, avoidance of nebulised medications and not routinely performing bronchoscopy (all designed to minimise aerosol generation). In the setting of refractory hypoxaemia, a structured approach should be taken including reassessing the patient for any reversible causes of the deterioration (such as sputum, ventilator associated pneumonia, pneumothorax or cardiac failure) and then a sequential series of management strategies such as neuromuscular blockade (either as a bolus dose of infusion), diuresis, recruitment manoeuvres and the consideration of prone positioning.

In settings of refractory hypoxaemia despite these measures, consideration may be made for extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO) although this is a resource intensive strategy, has limited data in COVID-19 pneumonia and is not widely available.

Prone ventilation

Prone position ventilation has been in use in severe COVID pneumonia with refractory hypoxaemia. The indications for prone ventilation are primarily based on a FiO2 of < 150 with an FIO2 > 0.6 with a PEEP > 5cmH2O with a tidal volume of around 6ml/kg. Proneing is most effective in units that are familiar with the technique and practice it routinely. Unit protocols, a team-based approach and regular simulation are required in order for this to be successful. Patients should be placed in the prone position for approximately 16 hours per day.

Exubation

Ideally, exubation should be performed when the patient is deemed to no longer be infective, and in this instance, standard extubation procedures can be followed. Timing of extubation of patients still infective with COVID-19 should be carefully assessed to decrease any chance of failure, or of the patient requiring NIV or re-intubation. They should ideally be ready to extubate onto a facemask. Readiness for extubation should be assessed via standard protocols, including the use of a spontaneous breathing trial (SBT). COVID-19 patients are often intubated for longer periods than usual and so non-invasive ventilation may be considered as a bridge to extubation with evidence suggesting increased airway oedema and secretions. Consider using lower pressure support ventilation (PSV) parameters (for example, 0-5cm H2O) for 5-10cm H2O for and for a longer period of time to ensure a higher degree of readiness.

Consider the use of prophylactic corticosteroids in the 24–28 hours prior to planned extubation of patients with prolonged intubations to decrease laryngeal oedema.

Exubation is an AGP and for a patient who is still infective, this should be performed in a NPR with appropriate PPE for droplet and contact precautions (including gown, gloves, N95 mask and eye protection), or under a McMonty/Ventilation Hood. Minimise the number of staff in the room, with staff available outside should they be needed, including senior staff who are trained to re-intubate if required. Assessing for a cuff leak prior to extubation is not recommended due to its potentially poor positive predictive value and sensitivity, and the potential to generate aerosolised particles. Consider mechanisms to minimise the risk of coughing, including intravenous opioids or dexmedetomidine and care during oral suctioning.

Once extubated, place an oxygen mask over the face and do not encourage patients to cough afterwards. The patient should remain in the NPR for 30-60 minutes following extubation to allow for clearance of aerosolised particles, however the ideal time for this is still uncertain and a balance must be found between staff and patient safety, and hospital efficiency.

Tracheostomy

Patients with COVID pneumonia often have prolonged ICU stays and slow ventilatory weans. Tracheostomy may be required to facilitate weaning from mechanical ventilation. There is no specific evidence guiding the timing of tracheostomy and the decision to proceed with the procedure needs to balance the risks of staff with the potential benefit to the patient. Current ANZICS guidelines recommend waiting until day 10 of intubation prior to consideration of tracheostomy insertion. The tracheostomy procedure is aerosol generating and so strict protocols for performing it with appropriate PPE are required.

COVID-19 specific management

Antiviral therapy – remdesivir

Remdesivir is an RNA polymerase inhibitor which has been shown to shorten the time to recovery and reduce the risk of death in adults hospitalised with COVID-19 infection and with evidence of lower respiratory tract infection. Australian guidelines recommend consideration of treatment with remdesivir for five days for ICU patients with moderate to severe COVID-19 infection who do not require ventilation (invasive, non-invasive or extra-corporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO)).

Antiviral therapy – baricitinib

Baricitinib is an orally administered selective inhibitor of Janus Kinase 1 and 2. It inhibits the intracellular signalling pathways of cytokines known to be elevated in severe COVID-19. Baricitinib plus remdesivir has been shown to be superior to remdesivir alone in reducing recovery time and accelerating clinical status among patients with COVID-19. Australian guidelines currently recommend using baricitinib (4mg oral or nasogastric daily dose for up to 14 days) in adults who require supplemental oxygen particularly where there is evidence of systemic inflammation.

Baricitinib is an orally administered selective inhibitor of Janus Kinase 1 and 2. It inhibits the intracellular signalling pathways of cytokines known to be elevated in severe COVID-19. Baricitinib plus remdesivir has been shown to be superior to remdesivir alone in reducing recovery time and accelerating clinical status among patients with COVID-19. Australian guidelines currently recommend using baricitinib (4mg oral or nasogastric daily dose for up to 14 days) in adults who require supplemental oxygen particularly where there is evidence of systemic inflammation.
Corticosteroids
Corticosteroids may have activity against the associated cytokine-release syndrome seen in severe and critical COVID-19 illness\(^3\). Evidence suggests there may be a mortality benefit with the use of dexamethasone for patients hospitalised with COVID-19 who required supplemental oxygen or additional supports, by modulating inflammation-mediated lung injury and thereby reducing progression to respiratory failure and death\(^3\). Australian guidelines recommend using dexamethasone 6mg daily intravenously or orally for up to 10 days in adults with COVID-19 who are receiving supplemental oxygen (including mechanically ventilated patients). If dexamethasone is unavailable, alternative acceptable options include hydrocortisone, prednisolone or methylprednisolone\(^6\).

Immunotherapy
Immunotherapy may help modulate the effects of the cytokine storm seen in some patients with severe COVID-19 infection\(^6\). For adults with COVID-19 who require supplemental oxygen, especially those with evidence of systemic inflammation, tocilizumab or sarilumab may reduce the risk of death, however, the RECOVERY and REMAP-CAP trials showed benefit when tocilizumab was used in conjunction with corticosteroids for this subset of patients\(^6,11\).

Minimal evidence supports the use of aspirin, azithromycin, colchicine, convalescent plasma, hydrochloroquine, interferon 8a or lopinavir-ritonavir in the treatment of adults with COVID-19 and this is not recommended. There are a number of other agents and experimental therapies that are also not recommended for use outside of clinical trials, and expert guidance from local and international societies is recommended (see Table 4).

### Table 4. Disease-modifying treatments not recommended outside of clinical trials for patients with severe to critical COVID-19*  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Medication</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Antihypertensives</td>
<td>Telmisartan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antithrombotic, antiplatelets and related therapies</td>
<td>Sulodexide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antivirals</td>
<td>Baloxavir marboxil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Darunavir-cobicistat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ensamum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Favipiravir</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sofosbuvir-naclatasvir</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Triazavirin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Umifenovir</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Human and blood derived products</td>
<td>Human umbilical cord mesenchymal stem cells</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Intravenous immunoglobulin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Intravenous immunoglobulin plus methylprednisolone</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

INFECTION CONTROL

**COVID-19 Transmission**

COVID-19 is extremely transmissible and gains entry thought the mucous membranes. There are three main routes of transmission in humans:

1. Direct contact with virus-contaminated fomites on skin, surfaces or other objects.
2. Larger, respiratory droplets.
3. Smaller, micro-droplets or aerosols of virus-containing particles that persist in the environment from human breathing, shouting, singing, coughing or sneezing.

COVID-19 can survive on surfaces for hours to days and in aerosolised droplets for up to three hours\(^9\). Data from Australia in 2020 suggests that most infected HCWs acquired their infection in the workplace.\(^17\) Therefore, anyone treating confirmed or suspected COVID-19 patients must use the appropriate PPE.

### Aerosol generating procedures

AGPs increase the risk of nosocomial transmission of COVID-19 among HCWs. AGPs include any procedures of the respiratory tract, including tracheal intubation, extubation, tracheostomy, bronchoscopy, suctioning and mouth care. Other high risk AGPs include, nebuliser therapy, high flow nasal oxygen, non-invasive ventilation, transoesophageal echocardiography (TOE) and endoscopy (gastroscopy), as well as chest compressions and defibrillation\(^22\).

### Protecting staff

To adequately protect staff, appropriate local guidelines, in conjunction with the most up-to-date evidence-based recommendations must be established. These include frequent hand hygiene with alcohol-based hand sanitiser or soap and water, avoidance of touching one’s face with contaminated hands, regular disinfection of equipment and surfaces, and practising social distancing. Staff should avoid sharing equipment and minimise personal effects taken into the workplace. Staff must be provided with the appropriate PPE, as well as training and supervision in PPE use.

Steps to maximise staff safety while performing patient interventions include:

- Minimise the number of times each intervention is performed.
- Minimise the time taken to perform the intervention, with the most experienced person available performing the intervention.
- Minimise the number of people at the bedspace or in the room where the intervention is being performed.
- Perform AGPs in a NPR or, if unavailable, a single room.

There are a number of measures which can be taken to help reduce staff infection rate and increase staff sustainability (see Table 5).

### Table 5. Reducing staff infection rate and increasing staff sustainability

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Intervention</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Single negative pressure isolation rooms for COVID-19 patients</td>
<td>Only perform AGPs in NPRs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Anteroom for donning and doffing PPE.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Single standard pressure isolation rooms for COVID-19 patients</td>
<td>Clearly designated “COVID-19 areas” for patients in open ICUs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Minimise HCW contact with suspected and confirmed COVID-19 patients</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Single team member to examine patients.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Visiting teams to the ICU to send minimum number to see patient, prefer over-the-phone consultation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimise HCW cross-infection with COVID-19</td>
<td>Cancel face-to-face meetings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Social distancing in break rooms.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Clean personal equipment, minimise personal effects, wear scrubs in clinical areas that can be changed out of at the end of a shift and shoes that can be readily disinfected.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Personal protective equipment

PPE includes hand hygiene, gown, gloves, N95 respirators, face-shields or goggles, and sometimes a powered air-purifying respiratory (PAPR) if clinically appropriate. Different levels of PPE include standard, contact, droplet and airborne precautions.

Contact and airborne PPE precautions are recommended to care for all suspected or confirmed COVID-19 patients in ICU, as well as when assessing suspected or confirmed COVID-19 patients elsewhere in the hospital. Staff training in PPE fitting, compliance and competency is recommended, including “fit testing” of N95 masks and the use of a buddy or “PPE spotter” to supervise and monitor any breaches when donning and doffing PPE. Multidisciplinary staff training and simulation is recommended to improve practise.

Patient isolation hood

The McMonty patient isolation hood is a portable shielded plastic hood that was developed with the aim of reducing HCW COVID-19 infections. It covers the patient in the hospital bed and has an extractor fan which creates a negative pressure system under the hood that passes through a viral filter. It allows aerosols generated by patients to pass through this viral filter rather than passing into the environment. This is hypothesised to decrease the risk of transmission of COVID-19 both to other patients and to HCWs. The use of novel technologies such as this may be particularly important in ICUs with predominantly open-plan environments and minimal NPRs or isolation rooms. It may similarly have roles in emergency departments and ward-based environments. Such novel devices need to undergo trial analysis to confirm their usefulness and units should be encouraged to participate in such trials if they can.

Vaccines

The global administration of safe and effective vaccines against SARS-CoV-2 are vital to controlling the pandemic. There are three primary vaccines being used in Australia at the time of publication; two messenger RNA (mRNA) vaccines (BNT162b2, Pfizer-BioNTech and mRNA-1273, Moderna), and an adenoviral vector vaccine (ChAdOx1 nCoV-19, Oxford/AstraZeneca). These vaccines have been shown to be highly effective in preventing symptomatic and asymptomatic SARS-CoV-2 infections and COVID-19-related hospitalisations, severe disease and death[32,33]. By late 2021, it became mandated for many Australian industries and workers (including frontline HCWs) to be fully vaccinated to leave home to work on-site. Data from observational studies has suggested the possibility of waning vaccine-elicited immunity and decreased vaccine effectiveness over time[34,35]. Administration of booster doses for certain high-risk individuals in Australia were becoming available at the time of publication.

ICU PANDEMIC PLANNING

Staffing and surge capacity

Institutional and regional pandemic planning is essential in order to minimise strain on the healthcare system and maintain the highest standards of staff and patient care. Pandemic plans must include approaches to reduce ICU demand and increase ICU capacity from both an infrastructure and workforce and staffing point of view. See Table 6[36]. Sick leave for HCWs, as well as requirements to self-isolate or furlough will lead to staff shortages and have a significant impact on workforce sustainability. Re-deployment of critical care trained staff (for example, anaesthetists) to ICU may be necessary. Also, non-critical care trained staff from medical, nursing and allied health departments may need to assist in ICU under the supervision of trained critical care staff.

Regular and effective communication and information sharing at local, regional and state levels is crucial to the successful delivery of safe and effective clinical services in a pandemic. Determining risk of ICU admission involves an analysis of local prevalence, cluster epidemiology, rates of new COVID-19 cases and the ability to control community outbreaks.

Table 6. Measures to reduce ICU demand and increase ICU capacity during a pandemic[17]

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Measures to reduce ICU demand during the pandemic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Access to fast COVID-19 testing for ED, ICU and theatre patients.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Defer or cancel non-urgent elective surgery.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Expected patient discharge from ICU, including additional support or supervision for ward staff to manage higher acuity patients.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Reserving ICU admission for patients requiring ICU-specific interventions, including extended stays in areas such as theatre recovery or CCU.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Proactive consideration of treatment goals and documentation of goals-of-care to avoid ICU/HDU admissions in patients who are not appropriately managed on the ward.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Measures to increase ICU capacity (Infrastructural)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Measures to increase ICU capacity (infrastructure)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Daily discussions between tertiary, metro and regional ICUs to assess clinical strain and resource availability.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Transfer patients between ICUs to ensure equitable distribution of patient numbers and workload.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Repurpose alternative clinical areas for critical care patients, including CU, HDU, theatre recovery, or unstaffed or old ICU beds.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Assess current stock of ICU equipment and anticipate requirements with increasing ICU load and methods of procuring additional equipment.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Measures to increase ICU capacity (workforce and staffing)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Measures to increase ICU capacity (workforce and staffing)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Re-deployment of critical-care trained staff (for example, anaesthetists) to ICU.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Non-critical care trained staff from medical, nursing and allied health departments may need to assist in ICU under the supervision of trained critical care staff.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ICU OUTCOMES

Outcomes specific to patients admitted to ICU have varied widely. The reasons for these significant differences may relate to local resources, ICU admission criteria and definition, diagnostic and treatment capabilities as well as overall case load and hospital strain. An early single centre study from China showed that of 138 patients with novel coronavirus infected pneumonia, 26 per cent of patients required admission to ICU and 4.3 per cent of patients died[36]. Subsequently, a prospective analysis of 257 critically ill patients admitted to two ICUs in New York reported that 39 per cent had died in hospital with only 23 per cent being discharged alive (the rest remaining hospitalised at the time of publication). At the time of writing, the most recent ICNARC report from the United Kingdom has reported 24,781 patients in total admitted to ICU and outcomes thus far have shown 37.2 per cent have died in ICU[37]. In Australia and New Zealand, 204 patients were admitted to ICUs in the “first wave”, and the mortality of ICU patients who were intubated (22 per cent) was significantly higher than those who were not (5 per cent)[38].

CONCLUSION

The global COVID-19 pandemic has produced many challenges to human health and society. The impact on intensive care has been profound and ongoing. The assessment and management of COVID-19 continues to rapidly evolve from a critical care perspective and there is still minimal evidence as to what is optimal management. Ongoing global efforts into research and clinical trials will aid in providing more robust evidence into the potential treatment options for COVID-19. This requires commitment from national, regional and hospital levels.

REFERENCES


Authors: Auteur: [Authors names]
Open-source hardware and the great ventilator rush of 2020

Erich B Schulz, MBBS, MBA, FANZCA
Senior Staff Specialist, Department of Anaesthesia, Mater Health, Brisbane, Queensland, Australia
Dr Schulz has previously practiced medical informatics and was once an accidental medical administrator.

Robert L Read, PhD
Public Invention, Austin, Texas, USA; founded the non-profit organisation Public Invention in 2018
Dr Read is a professional computer programmer and manager, and amateur mathematician and electrical engineer.

Ben Coombs, ME(Hons)
Public Invention, Auckland, New Zealand
Mr Coombs holds a Master of Engineering (Honours) in mechanical engineering from The University of Auckland, New Zealand where he researched sustainable aerospace composite materials and manufacturing methods. He is a professional software engineer and has been involved in open-source respiration engineering since the start of the pandemic.

INTRODUCTION

In early March of 2020, the COVID-19 pandemic exploded into a global concern and triggered a scramble to secure more ventilators. China had largely brought COVID-19 under control but the disease was spreading rapidly. Knowledge and treatment rapidly evolved, and many nations began implementing lock-downs and social distancing. In Lombardy, Italy, ICU capacity was exceeded and mortality rose. Based on understanding of the viral transmissivity and initial treatment protocols, models predicted a world-wide shortfall of intensive care beds and mechanical ventilators. Fears of spreading infection and questionable efficacy resulted in a reluctance to use non-invasive ventilation strategies.

Australian government modelling predicted that uncontrolled spread of COVID-19 could result in a peak demand of 35,000 ICU beds, or five times the existing capacity. Some models predicted that the USA alone would require up to one million ventilators from a baseline of around 150,000. As the medical community began to seriously consider the prospect of rationing access to ventilators, journalists picked up the story. Hospitals began to scramble for supplies, governments put out urgent calls to industry and some institutions shared a single ventilator with multiple patients.

The availability of ventilators, and the staff to support them, appeared even more precarious in less resourced healthcare systems with the prospect of help from wealthy nations seeming remote. Even well-resourced systems investigated the use of veterinary anaesthetic and transport ventilators to support ICU. Around the world governments rapidly adopted new and more flexible approaches to emergency use authorisation for devices capable of positive pressure ventilation. Government personnel reached out to engineers for advice, often on a personal and informal basis. The United States Food and Drug Administration (FDA; March 13), UK government (March 18) and the Australian Therapeutic Goods Administration (TGA; April 7), provided waivers or clarification to existing guidelines. The UK “Specification for Rapidly Manufactured Ventilator System (RMVS)” acted as a foundation for many teams.

By April there were real concerns that industry was going to be incapable of delivering the hardware that the hospitals were going to need. Engineers and makers spanning the globe sprang into action. While much of this effort is opaque and unpublished, subject to concerns for intellectual property and corporate interest, there was an explosion of interest in open-source approaches to ventilators and other pandemic associated hardware. Competitions were initiated. In excess of 100 open-source teams responded to the perceived emergency.

However, as the pandemic unfolded it became apparent that the demand was not going to reach predictions, despite many countries suffering multiple waves of infection. By late April initial worst-case estimates were being wound down, and by August the perceived ventilator shortage was essentially over.

A false alarm?

In retrospect, initial estimates were so wrong for several reasons.

Firstly, the public health measures were more effective than expected, enabling most countries to “flatten the curve” or virtually eliminate it.
Secondly, the indications for ventilating people with COVID-19 changed. Initial guidance in March of 2020 had called for avoidance of non-invasive ventilation and early intubation. This was largely motivated by the desire to prevent aerosolisation of viral particles leading to infection of staff and others. However over the next few months there was a gradual acceptance of the potential role of high-flow nasal oxygen and nasal CPAP, providing that staff were provided with adequate personal protective equipment (PPE). By May, many authors began to seriously question the desirability of early intubation. While data remained scant, there was a growing realisation that the acute risks of ventilation-induced lung injury, ventilation-acquired pneumonia, pulmonary fibrosis and that mechanical ventilation might be an independent risk factor as a result of ventilator-induced lung injury. Emerging medical treatments, notably remdesivir and dexamethasone, also probably helped reduce the number of patients requiring invasive ventilation.

Finally, as the situation evolved, it rapidly became clear that ventilators alone would not be enough without adequate staffing and consumables. It also became clear that the initial request for basic ventilators that did not include the ability to synchronise was misguided.

By August 2020, fears of a ventilator short-fall had disappeared. The Australian government had taken delivery of more than 2000 locally manufactured Notus ventilators adding to an already significant stockpile. UK manufacturers had rapidly produced 14,000 ventilators and the NHS had secured around 16,000 CPAP and non-invasive ventilators. In the USA, Ford and General Motors delivered 80,000 ventilators to the national stockpile, which became the world’s largest single source ventilator manufacturing.

Did we learn anything in the rush?

Despite the relatively brevity of the “Great ventilator rush of 2020”, the episode triggered an unprecedented public focus on ventilators, what they do, and how to make them. The resulting boom of ventilator projects was always admirable and well intentioned, generally creative but more than occasionally frightening.

This paper reports our observations of projects that set out to operate using an open-source framework. Those seeking a more conventional discussion of ventilators and ventilation should refer to some of the recent texts on the topic.

As the dust settles and with the half-completed relics of a sudden burst of activity left scattered around internet repositories, we wonder if the world can extract anything useful.

The ventilator shortage occurred in a context where hospitals were likely to be overwhelmed. At the time it seemed possible hospitals could become overrun with patients while simultaneously suffering a significant loss of staff just as pallet loads of rapidly assembled ventilator hardware arrived on hospital loading docks.

So, in those early months of 2020 it appeared that we potentially needed millions of non-existent ventilators with the following unique requirements:

- Rapidly manufacturable without dependence on traditional supply chains.
- Avoid venting viral aerosols into the environment.
- Easy to use by overworked, inexperienced and fatigued staff.
- Capable of efficiently weaning patients.

Particularly the last two raise ongoing challenges.

**OPEN-SOURCE HARDWARE**

Well before the pandemic began, a collection of advances was disrupting traditional approaches to organising intellectual projects and even hardware manufacturing.

Open-source software-engineering practices have their roots in the 1950s and gained momentum with the birth of high-speed computer connectivity. The world wide web of hypertext servers which now underpins the internet, as most of us experience it, was built on software that had been written incrementally by coders who were either unsung heroes or locked for organisational reasons in an arboreal intellectual property rights for their work, in the so-called “LAMP stack”, a set of open-source software used for web application development, was written entirely in this manner and demonstrated the formidable capacity of open intellectual capability unshackled by copyright and patents. Founded in January 2001, Wikipedia had extended the open approach to the organisation of human knowledge itself, rapidly surpassing the efforts of commercial competitors in many domains.

Underpinning these efforts are free and sophisticated version control systems, notably “git” software written by Linus Torvalds, creator of the free computer operating system, GNU/Linux. The version control systems enable multiple contributors to “fork” and “clone” files within “repositories”, propose edits via “patches” which project leaders can review via “pull requests”. Git is freely available via several easy to use web platforms. In modern software projects many repositories integrate automated tests which ensure that proposed changes do not break existing functionality. Arguably, high-quality test frameworks are more valuable than the code itself. While this level of automated testing is not possible in hardware projects, such sophisticated test methodologies show that an open-source approach does not equate with chaos and poor quality.

Around the same time that Wikipedia entered household vernacular, there was growing interest in applying these open-source approaches to hardware. Computer controlled manufacturing such as 3D printers, CNC mills, and laser cutters have unlocked the ability to share designs across the world and then rapidly manufacture them locally. Affordable and easy to use open-source microcontrollers, notably the “Arduino”, were soon developed making sophisticated electronic control systems widely available. Even though 3D printing is comparatively slow compared to manufacturing at scale, it allowed rapid increases in localised production capacity. One university laboratory produced a large number of 3D printed face shields.

Publication of design files is not enough for a design to be truly open-source. “Open-source” or “free-libre open-source” designs and code require a license enabling others to legally use published designs without paying fees or infringing copyrights. Truly usable practical open-source hardware designs additionally require publication of accessible design source files, bills of materials, assembly instructions, wiring diagrams, all software, as well as operation, production, calibration instructions, and documentation to facilitate regulatory approval. Open-source software-engineering practices have their roots in the 1950s and gained momentum with the birth of high-speed computer connectivity. The world wide web of hypertext servers which now underpins the internet, as most of us experience it, was built on software that had been written incrementally by coders who were either unsung heroes or locked for organisational reasons in an arboreal intellectual property rights for their work, in the so-called “LAMP stack”, a set of open-source software used for web application development, was written entirely in this manner and demonstrated the formidable capacity of open intellectual capability unshackled by copyright and patents. Founded in January 2001, Wikipedia had extended the open approach to the organisation of human knowledge itself, rapidly surpassing the efforts of commercial competitors in many domains.

Publication of design files is not enough for a design to be truly open-source. “Open-source” or “free-libre open-source” designs and code require a license enabling others to legally use published designs without paying fees or infringing copyrights. Truly usable practical open-source hardware designs additionally require publication of accessible design source files, bills of materials, assembly instructions, wiring diagrams, all software, as well as operation, production, calibration instructions, and documentation to facilitate regulatory approval. One university laboratory produced a large number of 3D printed face shields.

Publication of design files is not enough for a design to be truly open-source. “Open-source” or “free-libre open-source” designs and code require a license enabling others to legally use published designs without paying fees or infringing copyrights. Truly usable practical open-source hardware designs additionally require publication of accessible design source files, bills of materials, assembly instructions, wiring diagrams, all software, as well as operation, production, calibration instructions, and documentation to facilitate regulatory approval. Publication of design files is not enough for a design to be truly open-source. “Open-source” or “free-libre open-source” designs and code require a license enabling others to legally use published designs without paying fees or infringing copyrights. Truly usable practical open-source hardware designs additionally require publication of accessible design source files, bills of materials, assembly instructions, wiring diagrams, all software, as well as operation, production, calibration instructions, and documentation to facilitate regulatory approval.
As of 20 March 2021, 84 ventilators of various types have received FDA Emergency Use Authorisation (EUA). However only a handful of open-source ventilators achieved EUA and these were all the bag-squeezer type ventilators without capacity to support synchronized breathing. It is unclear if any of these were ever deployed and used clinically.

**Globally rapid initiation**

One of the most impressive aspects of the open-source response was the speed of the initial response. We observed inventors, makers and humanitarian engineers, many idled by lockdowns, globally applying their creativity to this problem almost immediately with consortia and organisations appearing virtually overnight.

The efforts were often international from inception and were founded in Europe, North America, South America, Asia, and Africa. Many caught public attention. International co-operation seemed to be taken for granted.

**Government facilitation and regulation**

Most participants in open-source projects have no experience with practices needed for regulatory approval. Regulatory experts provided some advice but were in short supply. We repeatedly observed engineers concerned about liability and intimidated by fear, uncertainty, and doubt (FUD) around the law of liability and open-source licensing.

Volunteer open-source efforts predictably struggled to navigate even the reduced regulatory requirements. However, it is clear that the regulators were not an unreasonable barrier as multiple non-open-source products were given approval. Between 25 March and 23 July, the FDA would provide EUAs for 71 different ventilators. By 31 January 2021, the Australian TGA had permitted three ventilators under an emergency exemption. Notably only one of the three TGA permitted ventilators apparently supported synchronised ventilation, but the TGA noted that the manufacturer had not provided validation data. The exemption ceased on 31 January 2021 with the TGA strongly recommending caution in their use as they have not had their safety or performance fully tested.

While it seems that volunteer efforts are unlikely to ever by themselves cross this hurdle it is certainly possible that with enough time teams could lay the foundations for regulatory approval.

**Internet as an enabler**

COVID-19 exposed the relatively glacial pace of the academic peer-reviewed approach to literature. While the traditional journals continued to play a vital role, the speed of the crisis led many to rely on internet-based communication. As the pandemic erupted, large non-profit and commercial organisations rapidly adopted modern remote collaboration tools such as sophisticated chat clients (like Slack and Discord) and video conferencing (like Zoom, Google Meet, and Skype). Shared git repositories and open documents that could be commented on by the general public were extremely effective, with minimal vandalism. Gaps in medical knowledge of the engineering community were addressed by rapidly organised virtual conferences, a widely-read briefing document and peer-reviewed publications.

**Misalignment between effort and publication**

Many teams declared themselves open-source, but in fact delayed sharing reproducible details of their work or closed-sourced their work in response to investors or FUD. This persistent issue was observed early on.

This may have been due in part to inadequate resources as many teams did not successfully recruit sufficient technical writers, outreach coordinators, project managers, graphic artists, social media experts.

Conversely some engineering teams, perhaps supported by overly enthusiastic public relations teams, published videos and demonstrations early on but then never followed through with technical publications in any form.

**Medical knowledge limitations**

Effort and time was required to bridge the gap between the vocabulary and practice of the engineering and medical communities. Medical and engineering jargon differ significantly. Individuals fluent in both were extremely valuable. Even measuring pressure in cmH2O was quaint and arcane to many engineers. Non-standard naming conventions further added to the confusion.

Most engineering teams reported making noble, if somewhat unsuccessful, efforts to enlist true medical professionals to provide advice. However, many doctors were too busy treating patients to participate, and many engineers were reluctant to do the necessary learning outside their expertise. Many doctors communicated individually to engineering teams. However, this effort was based on personal relationships and often not shared outside those teams. There was no worldwide doctor-to-engineering interface. As a result, many engineers started from a standing start.

There were initially few open-source designs to build upon and none that laid the foundation for a ventilator that could compete with the features of modern ICU ventilators. Many engineers succumbed to the temptation to build before fully understanding the clinical nature of the problem.

**Changing understanding of both disease and requirements**

While very helpful, the early government specifications were vague and conflicting. Neither the 18 March UK RMVS, nor the 7 April Australian TGA guide emphasised the requirement for supporting spontaneous breathing. It was not until 10 April that the UK revised the RMVS to stress the desirability of supporting spontaneous ventilation. By then many teams had locked in a design architecture and most would never change direction.

The reluctance to change designs was compounded by an initial failure to appreciate that providing ventilator support to patients requires much more than just a physical ventilator. Thus, there was a general trend for many open-source teams to aim for hardware that was extremely cheap to manufacture. As a result, many designs were underpowered and unlikely to ever support synchronised respiration. Ventilators without a synchronised mode require keeping patients deeply paralysed and sedated leading to prolonged weaning. The resulting prolonged ventilation would have led to even greater strain on staffing and drains of therapeutic oxygen and other scarce consumables.

**Supply chain issues**

Outside of the engineering teams’ control, the worldwide supply chain was shown to be opaque and fragile. For example, a single firm, Sensirion, created flow sensors that were widely relied upon. Although they made an extraordinary effort to increase production, there was a noticeable worldwide limitation of flow sensors. During the rush our teams personally experienced delays of several months securing delays small research quantities of these components.

There is no entity that can collate demand effectively when the crisis is too acute and chaotic for normal marketing and purchasing procedures. Buyers, who are never monolithic, were hesitant to discuss demands for untested and unfamiliar products in a time of crisis. The potentially short-lived and chaotic nature of demand spikes and supply shortages made businesses reluctant to commit to increasing supply of rapidly developed new products. Previously initiated supply chain resilience efforts were redoubled.

**Commercial efforts**

Neither journalists nor those working in the open-source space were granted insights into the production schedules of corporations. Commentably, on 30 March, Medtronic published the design for the Puritan Bennett 560 ventilator but stipulated that any ventilator hardware based on the design be labelled “for use only in the pandemic”.

**Safety and compliance**

Safety and compliance are at the core of all medical devices throughout their lifetime. Modern ventilators are complex devices with mechanical, electrical and software components that have to meet a comprehensive set of safety standards (see Box 1). This daunting and opaque process was made more transparent for engineering teams through continuous education by peers, experts, industry publications, and a virtual conference was held on Quality Assurance and Regulatory Compliance.

ISO and IEC also generously released a number of relevant standards to support global COVID-19 efforts.
Box 1. Ventilator standards for ventilators

  Anaesthetic and respiratory equipment - Conical connectors: Part 1: Cones and sockets
- 1-98 ISO 80601-2-12 First edition 2011-04-15
  Medical electrical equipment - Part 2-12: Particular requirements for the safety of lung ventilators - Critical care ventilators (Including: Technical Corrigendum (2011))
- 1-129 ISO 5359 Fourth edition 2014-10-01
  Anaesthetic and respiratory equipment - Low-pressure hose assemblies for use with medical gases (Including: AMENDMENT 1 (2017))
- 1-130 ISO 18082 First edition 2014-06-15
  Anaesthetic and respiratory equipment - Dimensions of noninterchangeable screw-threaded (NIST) low-pressure connectors for medical gases (Including: AMENDMENT 1 (2017))
- 1-134 ISO 18562-1 First edition 2017-03
  Biocompatibility evaluation of breathing gas pathways in healthcare applications - Part 1: Evaluation and testing within a risk management process
- 1-135 ISO 18562-2 First edition 2017-03
  Biocompatibility evaluation of breathing gas pathways in healthcare applications - Part 2: Tests for emissions of particulate matter
- 1-136 ISO 18562-3 First edition 2017-03
  Biocompatibility evaluation of breathing gas pathways in healthcare applications - Part 3: Tests for emissions of volatile organic compounds
- 1-137 ISO 18562-4 First edition 2017-03
  Biocompatibility evaluation of breathing gas pathways in healthcare applications - Part 4: Tests for leachables in condensate
- 1-138 ISO 80601-2-74 First edition 2017-05
  Medical electrical equipment - Part 2-74: Particular requirements for basic safety and essential performance of respiratory humidifying equipment
- 1-146 ISO 80601-2-12 Second edition 2020-02
  Medical electrical equipment - Part 2-12: Particular requirements for basic safety and essential performance of critical care ventilators

Any material used in the airway needs to be tested for biocompatibility to ISO 1856285, leading many teams to design automated squeezers for existing self-inflating bags. Polyvinyl chloride (PVC) plastic plumbing parts were also a popular choice with pandemic ventilator teams. However, the TGA Ventilator specification for low-pressure connectors for medical gases forbids the use of PVC. Phthalates (plasticizers) and common building materials are a known risk for respiratory and allergic effects. Ultimately the product gas needs to be tested to demonstrate it contains no harmful by-products.

Although much knowledge was shared and many promising prototypes were developed, the cost and complexity to take a medical device through the regulatory approval process to market still presents a significant barrier. The creation of free open-source software (FOSS) and hardware (FOSH) safety and compliance tools and continued education could help accelerate future development of open-source medical devices.

MANUFACTURING

With lockdowns hindering traditional manufacturing processes, many teams turned to low-cost 3D printers to manufacture parts for prototyping and in some cases for end-use. A popular workflow was to design parts in free CAD software and share the designs online, which could then be downloaded and printed anywhere in the world. This allowed for rapid design iterations and high levels of collaborative problem solving.

3D printing technology is being widely adopted in the medical field for a multitude of uses86. The most common type of 3D printer is Fused Filament Fabrication (FFF) where a thin plastic wire is extruded repeatedly in layers to build a 3D part. Polyactic acid (PLA) is the most popular plastic used in FFF printers because of its low melting point, however this also makes it difficult to sterilise. High end FFF printers can print polycarbonate and polyether ether ketone (PEEK), which may be steam sterilised, but challenges remain in the 3D printing process such as ensuring air-tightness between the printed layers and maintaining a clean-room level manufacturing environment. Despite these challenges, 3D printing was successfully used in low-risk use products such as face-shields86.

THE RELICS OF THE RUSH

One of the biggest take-aways from early 2020 was the importance of making ventilators that were optimised for use in sub-optimal contexts85. As the pandemic passes we can imagine future situations where easier to use ventilators could still save lives, in a similar way that automated defibrillators appear to have84. Currently powerful microcontroller boards and small touch screens are available for a few dollars. Yet many pandemic ventilators were designed with technological approaches that date to 1940s, or 1970s at best. Even though fully featured modern ventilators provide excellent graphics and descriptions of sensor readings out of range, they do not have the enhanced capabilities to specifically guide on how to clinically respond to measured ventilation parameters.

There are numerous opportunities to aid inexperienced, overworked or fatigued doctors and nurses with clearer guidance and automated control. Conditions such as bronchospasm, pneumothorax, patient-ventilator asynchrony (PVA), disconnection and tube kinking all have readily identifiable impacts on sensor readings. In some cases, adding decision support would be quite simple. Thus, it is probable that ventilators do not report a differential diagnosis, yet alone treatment suggestions, simply because designs assume that the ventilators would only ever be used in the presence of highly trained doctors and nurses. Other decision support algorithms will be more challenging. For example, managing PVA is complex90,91 and unreliably managed even in well-resourced ICUs92.

As the pandemic passes we can imagine future situations where easier to use ventilators could still save lives, in a similar way that automated defibrillators appear to have84. Currently powerful microcontroller boards and small touch screens are available for a few dollars. Yet many pandemic ventilators were designed with technological approaches that date to 1940s, or 1970s at best. Even though fully featured modern ventilators provide excellent graphics and descriptions of sensor readings out of range, they do not have the enhanced capabilities to specifically guide on how to clinically respond to measured ventilation parameters.

There are numerous opportunities to aid inexperienced, overworked or fatigued doctors and nurses with clearer guidance and automated control. Conditions such as bronchospasm, pneumothorax, patient-ventilator asynchrony (PVA), disconnection and tube kinking all have readily identifiable impacts on sensor readings. In some cases, adding decision support would be quite simple. Thus, it is probable that ventilators do not report a differential diagnosis, yet alone treatment suggestions, simply because designs assume that the ventilators would only ever be used in the presence of highly trained doctors and nurses. Other decision support algorithms will be more challenging. For example, managing PVA is complex90,91 and unreliably managed even in well-resourced ICUs92.

Recognising this need, and the opportunity to channel the expertise developed by many during the rush, we initiated VentOS, a project with the mission:

“To create a free and open-source software library and embedded operating system to enable engineering teams to develop safe and effective invasive and non-invasive ventilators for diverse contexts.”

This project, still in early phases of development, continues to work closely with the open-source ventilator teams that are continuing to develop their devices.

Others have long recognised computer based protocols96, or more recently, smarter ventilators, could assist everyday management even in well-resourced services95,96. Importantly during the resource constraints of a pandemic, ventilator-based decision support offers the prospect of efficient weaning97. When protocols are clearly defined, new alternatives continue to evolve98-101, but experience has shown poor adherence with paper-based protocols95,96. Integrating some algorithms into computer code would facilitate rigorous evaluation and subsequent deployment of such new ventilatory approaches. The support could come initially in an “open loop” form where a clinician needs to actuate each suggestion, before possibly moving on to “closed loop” systems96. Already a promising field of ICU research across many fronts96, increasing focus on artificial intelligence and machine learning is likely to increase the pace of change.

While trials using computer based protocols are ongoing96, patents have limited application of some approaches96 and it is possible that an open-source approach to algorithms may enable more rapid deployment and development of advanced algorithms. There currently exists no open platform on which existing protocols, or those that are emerging, can be efficiently deployed across existing ventilator hardware. It is an open question whether best-practice open-source software, possibly based on the ongoing VentOS project, could change this.

NOTABLE HARDWARE APPROACHES AND DESIGNS

Whatever else may have been missing in the great ventilator rush, creativity was abundant. A number of heterodox solutions were explored.

By far the most common approach adopted was to make a mechanical bag squeezer. This was unfortunate. Pre-pandemic open-source designs already existed12-17 and numerous teams followed this lead. For the non-medical personnel, the appeal of taking the relatively cheap, safe and ubiquitous self-inflating bag and mechanically squeezing it was hard to resist. Given that these devices typically came with FDA approval, many believed that simply enclosing one in a squeezing mechanism would be practical and avoid bio-compatibility issues in the airway.
There are two core problems with using self-inflating bags. Firstly, the bag itself has complex compliance mechanics that will vary between manufacturers and over time. Reliable detection of mechanical ventilation will be difficult as the bag re-inflates, effectively mimicking patient respiratory effort. There appear to be no reports of attempts to evaluate a bag-squeezer in a synchronised mode.

The other fundamental flaw with mechanical bag squeezers is that these devices are not designed to cope with the mechanical stress of prolonged use, particularly continuous flexing in exactly the same location, which may eventually result in fatigue failure. Splitting of the bag at some random time, possibly 3am, is a significant risk.

The ARMEE device, a reconstitution of a design from the 1960s is one of the more intriguing proposals. It was developed by the US Army for emergencies, and attracted early attention because of the ability to 3D print or mill these devices, literally in the millions. It has no moving parts or electronics, simply a pair of adjustment screws. It works purely on fluidic control of a flow of gas, weighs under 250g and is less than 20 by 50 by 90mm in size. Initial research by the US Army found that, in order to deliver a 6L/min minute volume, the device requires a driving gas at 150cmH2O and 28L/min. Because medical gases continue to flow during exhalation, it wastes therapeutic oxygen (see Figure 1).

Figure 1. Flow analysis of the ARMEE vent device, illustrating the fluidic control of flow during inspiration (left) and expiration (right)

We have seen no reports of its practical use in a clinical setting but suspect that the interaction between patient physiology, efforts and alterations in driving pressure could prevent precise control of parameters such as rate, positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP), inspiratory to expiratory (I:E) ratio and peak inspiratory pressure (PIP).

Smith Vent, by engineering alumni and friends of Smith College in Massachusetts was one of the outstanding projects, winning a major competition. The Smith Vent, like the People’s Ventilator Project, uses standard high-pressure medical oxygen and air supplies that it blends using two solenoid valves and a reservoir before fine controlling inspiratory flow with a proportional solenoid valve. Expiration is controlled with another solenoid valve and adjustable PEEP valve. The device incorporates a touch screen, three separate pressure sensors and dual flow sensors all orchestrated by a microcontroller (see Figure 2 and Figure 3).

Figure 2. Schematic of the Smith Vent

Figure 3: Rendering of Smith Vent design

Finally, recognising the need for a low cost testing device, a ventilation test and monitoring device, the VentMon, was developed in March 2020 with volunteers by two of the authors (BC, RR). The VentMon is a FOSH device using standard 22mm connectors to enable ventilator developers to record flow, pressure and oxygen concentration waveforms in order to test and evaluate a ventilator. The design exemplifies a modular approach where potential a single specialised component may then support other hardware designs. The VentMon was funded by two flash grants and given away to open-source ventilator teams.

CONCLUSION

“The great ventilator rush of 2020” drew global attention to the urgent need to rapidly make millions of obscure and complicated medical devices. Ultimately, the open-source ventilator efforts were gallant but failed to deliver operational hardware beyond a few test items. It is our view that the natural desire to be a hero, the difficulty in communication, lack of organisation and the pandemic “fog of war” led multiple isolated teams to rush towards “the” solution without producing useful components. The “not-invented-here syndrome” further compounded duplication of effort.

Comparing the open-source PPE efforts with the ventilator efforts is illuminating. Humanitarian crafters and makers effectively produced PPE in large quantities. One non-profit organisation alone provided over 39 million face shields, gowns, and cloth masks. These items are far simpler to design and manufacture than ventilators and were able to more readily bypass strict testing requirements that ventilators cannot escape.

Certainly, the open-source community demonstrated a willingness to follow leadership which is perceived as unbiased, competent, and ungreedy — but this does not automatically make such leadership appear. In order to be effective, the effort requires individuals able to understand both medical and engineering needs who are willing and able to provide sufficient time to lead teams.
Is one picture worth 1000 words? How discussions of gas uptake in the lung have been compromised for decades by a single diagram

Ben Korman OAM, BSc, MBBS, MD, PhD, FFAARACS, FANZCA
Emeritus Consultant, Department of Anaesthesia and Pain Medicine, Royal Perth Hospital
Adjunct Associate Professor, School of Medicine, University of Western Australia

Dr Ben Korman has had a longstanding research interest in the uptake and distribution of anaesthetic agents. This article is based on material in a thesis by the author entitled “Modelling of gas exchange in the lung during nitrous oxide anaesthesia,” submitted in fulfillment of the requirements for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy at The University of Western Australia, 2020.

INTRODUCTION

While preparing for the Part 1 exam during my first year as an anaesthesia registrar at Royal Perth Hospital in 1974, I came across a diagram used by Edmond Eger to explain certain aspects of gas uptake during nitrous oxide anaesthesia. Eger was one of the pioneers in the field of pharmacokinetics of anaesthetic gases. Indeed, his name is almost synonymous with the subject. Over the years, the diagram had been used repeatedly by Eger and many other authors and still appears in some anaesthetic textbooks today.

I was at first captivated by the diagram but over time, I began to feel there was something wrong. My suspicions were confirmed when a friend pointed out a flaw. If Eger’s diagram was wrong, then what was the correct diagram? It took me many years to sort out the puzzle. This is the story of my search for the answers. It involves several prominent figures who have made a lasting impact on our specialty: Seymour Kety, Edmond Eger and William Mapleson.

KEY’S THEORY OF INERT GAS UPTAKE

In 1951, Kety published what is generally acknowledged to be the first comprehensive review of inert gas exchange in the lungs and tissues¹. An inert gas merely dissolves in blood and does not interact with it chemically. Our anaesthetic gases are believed to behave in this way, so his findings were very relevant to our speciality. He identified factors which determine the rate of gas uptake and indicated the direction to our speciality. He identified factors which determine the rate of gas uptake and indicated the direction to our speciality. He identified factors which determine the rate of gas uptake and indicated the direction to our speciality. He identified factors which determine the rate of gas uptake and indicated the direction to our speciality. He identified factors which determine the rate of gas uptake and indicated the direction to our speciality. He identified factors which determine the rate of gas uptake and indicated the direction to our speciality. He identified factors which determine the rate of gas uptake and indicated the direction to our speciality. He identified factors which determine the rate of gas uptake and indicated the direction to our speciality.

In 1962, Kety published a paper on the uptake of inert gases in the lung. The diagram was used repeatedly by Eger and many other authors and still appears in some anaesthetic textbooks today.

[References]


ANAESTHETIC UPTAKE IN PERIPHERAL TISSUES

In the period between 1951 and 1963 anaesthetic interest was directed at refining Kety’s solution to improve the fit to experimental data. Copperman, cited by Kety, allowed for the division of the body into a number of compartments. The tissue/blood partition coefficient of each tissue compartment could then be adjusted appropriately, instead of assuming a value of 1 as Kety had done. The blood flow per unit of tissue volume was the same in any one compartment but differed from one compartment to another.

The solution of the relevant equations was complicated by the huge number of calculations required and was initially achieved using an electric analogue. Although several analogues were presented at a gathering of experts invited to a famous conference in 1962, the first electric analogue was probably that of Mapleson⁵. His paper was submitted to the prestigious Journal of Applied Physiology on 4 December 1961 but was not published until January 1963.
EGER’S MATHEMATICAL MODEL

At the conference in 1962, Eger produced a mathematical model of uptake and distribution of anaesthetic gases. We can summarise the relevant parts of his model as follows:

\[ C_{gn} = \frac{V_L \cdot C_{bn-1} + V_I \cdot F_I \cdot u_n + F_I \cdot u_n}{V_L} \]

(1)

\[ C_{bn} = \frac{C_{bn-1} \cdot Q_T + u_n}{Q_T} \]

(2)

\[ \lambda = \frac{C_{bn}}{C_{gn}} \]

(3)

where:

- \( C_{gn} \) = concentration of anaesthetic agent in gas phase at the end of the \( n \)th breath
- \( C_{bn} \) = concentration of anaesthetic agent in blood at the end of the \( n \)th breath
- \( V_L \) = volume of air present in the lungs at the end of passive expiration
- \( V_I \) = volume of inspired gas mixture delivered during the \( n \)th inspiration
- \( u_n \) = uptake of anaesthetic gas during the \( n \)th breath
- \( Q_T \) = pulmonary blood flow
- \( T \) = duration of each breath
- \( \lambda \) = blood/gas partition coefficient

The numerator of Equation 1 states that the volume of the anaesthetic gas present in the lung at the end of the \( n \)th breath (\( C_{gn} \)) is equal to the volume of anaesthetic gas present in the lung at the beginning of the \( n \)th breath (\( V_L \cdot C_{gn-1} \)) plus the volume of the anaesthetic gas brought in during the breath (\( V_I \cdot F_I \cdot u_n \)) minus the volume of anaesthetic gas absorbed by equilibration with blood (\( u_n \)) plus the volume of fresh gas drawn in to replace the volume of anaesthetic gas transferred to blood (\( F_I \cdot u_n \)).

Equation 3 is the form of Henry’s Law commonly used in anaesthesia and respiratory physiology to describe the behaviour of inert gases. From his model, Eger predicted that \( F_A/F_I \) would rise more rapidly in the presence of 70% nitrous oxide – the second gas effect. This effect was interpreted by the authors to be the result of the additional respiratory inflow secondary to the absorption of nitrous oxide at higher concentrations, that is, the term \( F_I \cdot u_n \) in Equation 1 above. The effect was subsequently documented for oxygen and carbon dioxide.

THE SECOND GAS EFFECT

Because it is a weak anaesthetic agent, it is common to supplement nitrous oxide with low concentrations of a more potent volatile anaesthetic. Using mixtures of nitrous oxide and halothane, Epstein et al. showed that when the concentration effect is in operation, it may accelerate the rise of \( F_A/F_I \) for a second agent administered simultaneously (Figure 2). Although the inspired concentration of halothane was the same in both cases, \( F_A/F_I \) rose more rapidly in the presence of 70% nitrous oxide – the second gas effect. This effect was interpreted by the authors to be the result of the additional respiratory inflow secondary to the absorption of nitrous oxide at higher concentrations, that is, the term \( F_I \cdot u_n \) in Equation 1 above. The effect was subsequently documented for oxygen and carbon dioxide.

---

a Eger included corrections for temperature, humidification and volume of lung tissue but these are not critical to the discovery of the concentration effect and resulted in his model becoming unnecessarily complicated. We do not include them here as inspired gas is considered to be fully humidified at 37 deg C and we use the fractional concentration in dry gas as our measure of concentration.

b This is the functional residual capacity, FRC.

c For copyright reasons, this diagram and several others in this paper are simulated using inputs from the original publication in a new computer model. Dr Ranjan K Dash, Professor of Bioengineering and Physiology, University of Wisconsin, kindly assisted me in solving the relevant equations in MATLAB.

d The original article may be viewed at: https://anesthesiology.pubs.asahq.org/article.aspx?articleid=1966256.
AN ADDITIONAL EXPLANATION FOR THE SECOND GAS EFFECT

In a subsequent investigation, Stoelting and Eger equilibrated dogs with low concentrations of ethylene, cyclopropane or halothane in oxygen. The inspired gas composition was next changed abruptly to a mixture containing 70% nitrous oxide, the equilibrium concentration of the second gas and oxygen. For the second gas was then observed to rise above the inspired concentration. They postulated that an additional factor, a **concentrating effect** must be involved. They illustrated their results by modifying a diagram previously employed by Eger to explain the concentration effect.

**Figure 3. The additional explanation for the second gas effect**

Simulation of experiment by Stoelting and Eger using a model with inputs based on the original investigation in which dogs were equilibrated with low concentrations of ethylene (blue, $\lambda = 0.14$), cyclopropane (green, $\lambda = 0.415$) and halothane (red, $\lambda = 2.3$) in oxygen. At the time indicated as zero, the inspired gas composition was abruptly changed to a mixture of 70% nitrous oxide, 19% oxygen and 1% second gas. The balance of the inspired gas mixture consisted of oxygen. The alveolar concentration of each second gas was then observed to rise above the inspired concentration. Ventilation was controlled with a volume-limited ventilator.

"**The hypothetical lung initially contains 80% nitrous oxide, 19% oxygen and 1% second gas.**

A – the **concentrating effect**. If half the nitrous oxide is taken up, the remaining second gas now represents 1.7% of the total gas volume, while before it represented only 1%. Consequently, the second gas has been concentrated in a smaller gas volume and its alveolar concentration increases.

B – the **increased inspiratory ventilation**. This is necessary to maintain lung volume. The inflowing gas contains the same proportions of nitrous oxide, oxygen and second gas as the gas originally present. Although this additional ventilation increases the nitrous oxide concentration from 66.7% to 72%, it dilutes the previously-concentrated second gas and diminishes the magnitude of the second gas effect."

No doubt Eger believed the diagram to accurately reflect the steps in his mathematical model. Sadly, as we will now demonstrate, this was not the case. Notice that as the rule for equilibrating nitrous oxide with blood, Eger is postulating that half the nitrous is taken up. However, the rule is only applied to the initial gas. The extra gas brought in to replace the nitrous oxide taken up by blood is left unequilibrated in the lung. Looking at Equation 1, we can see that the extra gas is included in the calculation of $C_{\text{ex}}$, which is itself then equilibrated with blood in Equation 3. Therefore, the diagram and the model are not the same.

Moreover, the notion of gas sitting for any length of time in the lung, unequilibrated with blood is incompatible with the basic assumptions of inert gas exchange, a well-known fact by 1969. Equilibration with blood leads to the situation shown in Figure 5. The starting situation is shown on the left of the figure. Now however, the extra-inspired ventilation has been added to the original volume $V$ giving a total volume of $1.7V$. Nitrous oxide comprises 80% of the total volume or $1.7V$. Following proper equilibration with blood according to Eger’s formula that half the nitrous oxide be taken up, $0.5V$ of the nitrous oxide disappears into blood leaving $0.5V$ behind in the gas phase.

**THE EGER-STOEILING DIAGRAM**

**Figure 4. Diagram of hypothetical lung used by Eger and Stoelting to explain the concentration and second gas effects**

Reproduced from Stoelting and Eger with permission from copyright owners Wolters Kluwer Health Inc.

The revised diagram was now used to explain both the concentration and second gas effects. Since its first appearance in Anesthesiology in 1969 it has been reproduced in numerous anaesthetic textbooks whenever the effects are discussed. The explanation in the caption given by the authors is as follows:

"The theoretical lung initially contains 80% nitrous oxide, 19% oxygen and 1% second gas.

A – the **concentrating effect**. If half the nitrous oxide is taken up, the remaining second gas now represents 1.7% of the total gas volume, while before it represented only 1%. Consequently, the second gas has been concentrated in a smaller gas volume and its alveolar concentration increases.

B – the **increased inspiratory ventilation**. This is necessary to maintain lung volume. The inflowing gas contains the same proportions of nitrous oxide, oxygen and second gas as the gas originally present. Although this additional ventilation increases the nitrous oxide concentration from 66.7% to 72%, it dilutes the previously-concentrated second gas and diminishes the magnitude of the second gas effect."

No doubt Eger believed the diagram to accurately reflect the steps in his mathematical model. Sadly, as we will now demonstrate, this was not the case. Notice that as the rule for equilibrating nitrous oxide with blood, Eger is postulating that half the nitrous is taken up. However, the rule is only applied to the initial gas. The extra gas brought in to replace the nitrous oxide taken up by blood is left unequilibrated in the lung. Looking at Equation 1, we can see that the extra gas is included in the calculation of $C_{\text{ex}}$, which is itself then equilibrated with blood in Equation 3. Therefore, the diagram and the model are not the same.

Moreover, the notion of gas sitting for any length of time in the lung, unequilibrated with blood is incompatible with the basic assumptions of inert gas exchange, a well-known fact by 1969. Equilibration with blood leads to the situation shown in Figure 5. The starting situation is shown on the left of the figure. Now however, the extra-inspired ventilation has been added to the original volume $V$ giving a total volume of $1.7V$. Nitrous oxide comprises 80% of the total volume or $1.7V$. Following proper equilibration with blood according to Eger’s formula that half the nitrous oxide be taken up, $0.5V$ of the nitrous oxide disappears into blood leaving $0.5V$ behind in the gas phase.

**THE EXTRA-INSPIRED VENTILATION**

From the time he first gave his explanation of the concentration and second gas effects, Eger routinely invoked the twin mechanisms of the **concentrating effect** and the **extra inspired ventilation**. Presumably because the concentration effect was greater with the more soluble agent ether than with nitrous oxide, he postulated that the extra-inspired ventilation is more important for more soluble agents, while based on the findings shown in Figure 3, the concentrating effect is more important for less soluble agents. Thus, the extra-inspired ventilation became a standard component of discussions of these effects with the clear message that it is always present.

**A MATTER OF RELATIVITY**

The question of whether an extra-inspired ventilation is always a part of gas exchange was the subject of many conversations with my friend Ian Ritchie. Ritchie was then an Associate Professor of Chemistry at the University of Western Australia. He pointed out that it depends where the observer is located. If the observer is located at the alveolar-capillary junction, large volumes of different gases are constantly flowing in both
directions. During induction of anaesthesia with a gaseous agent, the net movement of anaesthetic gas is into blood. The observer stationed there will perceive that more anaesthetic gas is drawn down the airway to replace that taken up by blood. This must always occur at the interface between gas and blood if anaesthetic uptake is to proceed without interruption. However, we anaesthesiologists are not stationed at the alveolar-capillary membrane. We are standing beside our patients and observing events from the outside. This is associated with a different perspective which will now be considered.

**RESPIRATORY PATTERN DURING N2O ANAESTHESIA**

Kety1, Mapleson3 and Eger4 all treated the functional residual capacity (FRC) as remaining constant during anaesthetic uptake. Any changes in volume due to gas uptake can then only be reflected in such models by differences between the inspired and expired ventilation. In particular, \( V_{I} / V_{E} \), the inspired alveolar ventilation, must exceed \( V_{E} \), the expired alveolar ventilation. This gives rise to two possible extreme patterns of respiration. These have been named constant inflow and constant outflow.9

**Constant inflow**

In this pattern, the inspired tidal volume is kept constant and the expired tidal volume allowed to vary, reflecting the gas uptake during the breath.

**Constant outflow**

At the other extreme, we have a constant outflow pattern in which the expired tidal volume is fixed, and the inspired tidal volume allowed to vary.

In Figure 7, the second line in each pair represents the constant expired tidal volume. To maintain the expired tidal volume constant, it is necessary for the inspired tidal volume to exceed it. The amount by which the inspired tidal volume exceeds that expired is the volume of nitrous oxide uptake during that breath. This volume is indicated by the stippled area and may be thought of as being drawn into the airway to maintain the sum of the FRC and expired tidal volume at a constant value. We can therefore identify this gas as Eger’s extra-inspirated ventilation.

The terms “constant inflow” and “constant outflow” were first suggested by Professor Alex Robertson, Foundation Professor of Mathematics at Murdoch University, Western Australia.

This pattern is approximated clinically by a spontaneously breathing subject attempting to maintain a constant arterial \( P_{CO_{2}} \).

**TEGR’S CONSTANT INFLOW MODEL**

It is important to note that while Eger produced equations of the form of Equations 1-3 for the constant outflow case (which he equated to a nonrebreathing system4), he also produced the following equation for the constant inflow case:2

\[
C_{n} = \frac{V_{L} \cdot C_{G_{n-1}} + V_{I} \cdot F_{I} - U_{n}}{V_{L} + V_{I} \cdot F_{I} - U_{n}} \tag{4}
\]

Equations 2 and 3 were applied as before. On rearrangement, this system of equations gives rise to a quadratic equation which is solved for \( u_{c} \). In this system also, the higher the inspired concentration, the more rapid the approach to the final concentration but not as fast as with Equations 1-3. Eger attributed the reduction in rate to the limited inflow associated with the use of a circle system2. He commented that the solution “is not difficult, but cumbersome.”

**RESPIRATORY PATTERN AND THE EGER-STOELTING DIAGRAM**

After gas in the lung is fully equilibrated with blood, we may draw the following version of the corrected Eger-Stoelting diagram to illustrate the difference between the two extreme respiratory patterns13. In Figure 8, we have again applied the rule that half the nitrous oxide be taken up. Note that the constant inflow case is associated with a smaller uptake of nitrous oxide than the equivalent constant outflow case (160 ml compared with 287 ml). This is a feature of constant inflow and reflects the limitation on inflow referred to by Eger. When we apply the rule that half the nitrous oxide be taken up, the final concentration is the same with both patterns.

Once the FRC is fixed, the only possible patterns are constant inflow, constant outflow and all combinations thereof. Since the concentration effect occurs in both extreme cases, it follows that it must occur in all combinations thereof. But there is no extra-inspirated ventilation with constant inflow. As a result, the extra-inspirated ventilation cannot be credited with causing the concentration and second gas effects. Instead, we must look for some other property common to both constant inflow and constant outflow. That property, evident in all our figures from Figure 4 to Figure 8, is a shrinkage in volume and the associated concentrating effect. Thus, we conclude that the concentration and second gas effects are always caused by the concentrating effect that accompanies net gas volume uptake.

This is incorrect as a non-rebreathing system used with a constant volume ventilator actually has a constant inflow pattern.

h This is incorrect as a non-rebreathing system used with a constant volume ventilator actually has a constant inflow pattern.
SHOULD EGER HAVE KNOWN?

Eger’s presentation at the 1962 conference chaired by Papper and Kitz was immediately followed with a commentary given by Herbert Rackow[1]. He referred to previous work published by his group in 1959 in the Journal of Applied Physiology in which the authors described the performance of different ventilators during emergence from nitrous oxide anesthesia[2]. In doing so, he actually presented the constant inflow and constant outflow patterns. He went on to comment that he thought this was part of Eger’s concentration effect. Strangely, neither Eger nor Rackow seems to have made the connection. For year after year, Eger went on explaining the concentration effect, repeatedly using his diagram and always invoking an extra-inspired ventilation. In 1971, Rackow finally described the situation during induction of anaesthesia with the different ventilators,[3] but the different respiratory patterns he described received little further attention and gradually faded into history.

In 1974, I came across Eger’s diagram in Scurr and Feldman’s Scientific Foundations of Anaesthesia[4]. At the time, I was a junior registrar in the Department of Anaesthesia at the Royal Perth Hospital. The diagram appealed to me – so simple, so elegant! It was only a year or so later that I became suspicious of the diagram and asked Ian Ritchie if he could see any flaw in the reasoning. He came back to me after 2 weeks and pointed out the failure to equilibrate the extra-inspired ventilation. It took many more years to “join the dots” and I finally presented a talk entitled “The vacuum theory of anaesthesia” at the 1996 World Congress of Anaesthesiology in Sydney. In the talk, I focussed on the message conveyed by Eger’s diagram, the message that there is always an extra-inspired ventilation during nitrous oxide anaesthesia and asked the question “How can this be when most of us use a constant volume ventilator during anaesthesia[5]?”. Edmond Eger and John Severinghaus[6] were both present.

By this time, I had approached Bill Mapleson for help to bring the inaccuracy in Eger’s diagram to the attention of both teachers and authors. The next year our collaboration finally bore fruit when our article entitled “Concentration and second gas effects – can the accepted explanation be improved?” was published in the British Journal of Anaesthesia[7],[8]. Following this, Eger’s diagram virtually disappeared from those anaesthetic textbooks published outside the United States. Within the United States, the diagram continued to be produced regularly by Eger until his death. One of the few concessions he made to our criticism is contained in his chapter: “Inhaled Anaesthetics: Uptake and Distribution in the seventh edition of Miller’s Anaesthesia”[9]. In this edition, he wrote:

“This explanation has been criticized as being overly simplistic and ignoring the realities of some aspects of ventilation. For example, if ventilation is controlled with a volume-limited respirator, an augmentation in inspired ventilation is limited to the period of the expiratory pause. Spontaneous ventilation minimizes this limitation. In any event, the reader needs to be aware that although Figure 4 describes the basic factors governing the concentration and second gas effects, the actual situation is more complex.”

Of course, the exact opposite is true. The situation is much simpler – uptake of significant volumes of gas concentrates each remaining gas in a smaller volume; this increases its partial pressure and accelerates its uptake. The only complexity has been introduced by Eger himself in persisting with a diagram that is wrong. So confused has the picture become, that Calvey and Williams, when alluding to the concentration effect in their chapter on inhalational anaesthetic agents in Principles and Practice of Pharmacology for Anaesthetists seem too scared to actually offer an explanation. Instead they state: “The cause of this phenomenon is obscure”[10]. American authors other than Eger continue to reproduce the diagram uncritically. Sometimes the diagram is disguised but the explanation remains the same as in the following example by Forman and Benkowitz[11]:

Other times the diagram remains unchanged, but the explanation is altered as in this extract from the chapter by Ebert and Naze[12] in Clinical Anaesthesia:

“In this hypothetical example, the second gas is set at 2% of a potent anesthetic and the model is set for 50% uptake of the first gas, nitrous oxide in the first inspired breath. The second gas is concentrated because of the uptake of nitrous oxide (middle panel). One replenishing the inspired second gas in the next breath, the second gas has been concentrated to 2.7% because of the uptake of nitrous oxide in the previous breath.”

In the version of the Eger-Stoelting diagram accompanying this explanation, the second gas concentration starts at 2% in the first panel, rises to 3.1% in the second and finishes up at 2.7% in the third. Note however, that the dilution in the third panel is now ascribed to the next breath implying that one respiratory cycle consists of inspiration-expiration-inspiration. Does this mean that the next respiratory cycle consists of expiration-inspiration-expiration? Surely this is a classic case of trying to make the facts fit the theory! One can only feel pity for the poor anaesthesia trainee trying to make sense of these explanations.

CONCLUSION

The Eger-Stoelting diagram is often used as a teaching tool. The steps in the diagram do not match those taken in the mathematical model used by Eger to predict the existence of the concentration effect. The concentration and second gas effects are best explained as follows: Uptake of significant volumes of gas concentrates each remaining gas in a smaller volume; this increases its partial pressure and accelerates its uptake. In the case of CO₂ its elimination from blood is slowed. No diagram is necessary but if one is to be included Figure 5 above, is sufficient.

Whenever large volumes of gas disappear into blood during gas uptake a significant difference may arise between the inspired and expired tidal volume of each breath. When modelling anaesthetic uptake with a fixed FRC, two extreme patterns of respiration are recognisable: constant inflow and constant outflow. Each of these exhibits the concentrating effect as shown in Figure 8. Any combination of these two patterns will therefore exhibit a concentrating effect.

Instead of asking what changes needed to be made to Kety’s model to produce the concentration and second gas effects, Eger remained satisfied with his own explanation of the cause of these phenomena and continued to use a flawed diagram as a teaching tool long after the flaw had been pointed out. This shows us that old ideas should not be automatically accepted as correct without critical analysis, even when they originate from acknowledged experts. One does not have to be an academic to do this — even the most junior of trainees can challenge long-held ideas if they don’t seem to make sense. Indeed, it should be regarded as obligatory to do this instead of simply regurgitating textbook material as is frequently done during exams. It is often said that “One picture is worth 1000 words”. Eger’s diagram shows exactly what can happen when the picture is wrong!

j Well-known anaesthesiology research worker and inventor of the Severinghaus PCO₂ electrode.
k This may be viewed at: https://bjanaesthesiol.org/article/S0007-0912(17)39990-7/fulltext
An earlier version of this paper had previously been rejected by ANESTHESIOLOGY.
REFERENCES

Circulation

Atrial fibrillation, ablation, and the anaesthetist
Cameron Maxwell, Derek Potgieter, Thomas Bruessel

Bubble trouble: Vascular gas embolism
Bridget Devaney

The expanding role of SGLT-2 inhibitors in the treatment of heart failure
Aaron Pym, Ross Hanrahan, Peter Flynn, Thomas Bruessel

Anaesthesia for the adult patient with a Fontan circulation undergoing non-cardiac surgery
Reza Yusoff, James Preuss, Shannon Matzelle, Cameron Seamen

Anaesthetic considerations in the patient with Eisenmenger syndrome
Michael H. Toon, Cameron Graydon

Right ventricular failure – when the right heart goes wrong
Richella-Lea Falland, Kate Drummond, Nicole Wylie

Management of right ventricular dysfunction after separation from cardiopulmonary bypass
Mumtaz Khan, Michael Scerri

The perioperative management of patients with ventricular assist devices undergoing non-cardiac surgery
Richella-Lea Falland, David Sidebotham, Sara Jane Allen
Atrial fibrillation, ablation, and the anaesthetist

Cameron Maxwell, BSc MChD MMed
Department of Anaesthesia, Perioperative Medicine and Pain Management, Canberra Health Service, ACT, Australia

Dr Cameron Maxwell is an advanced trainee at Canberra Hospital. His interests include education and teaching, cardiothoracic anaesthesia, and retrieval medicine.

Derek Potgieter, MBCh FCA (South Africa) FANZCA
Department of Anaesthesia, Perioperative Medicine and Pain Management, Canberra Health Service, ACT, Australia

Dr Derek Potgieter is a staff specialist at Canberra Hospital and clinical lecturer at the Australian National University. His interests include cardiothoracic anaesthesia and electrophysiology.

Thomas Bruessel, Dr med, FANZCA
Department of Anaesthesia, Perioperative Medicine and Pain Management, Canberra Health Service, ACT, Australia

Professor Thomas Bruessel is the Director of the Department of Anaesthesia, Perioperative Medicine and Pain Management at Canberra Health Services and Chair of Anaesthesia at the Australian National University. He has strong interests in regional anaesthesia, neuro-anaesthesia and neuro medicine.

INCIDENCE AND PROJECTIONS

Atrial fibrillation (AF) is the most common arrhythmia and has significant health and socioeconomic impact. In Australia it affects 500,000 people and an estimated 5 per cent of the over 55 years age group suffer from it.1

AF is a major risk factor for new-onset heart failure, stroke, dementia and mortality. The impact of AF is also increasing with the proportion of AF related deaths doubling from 4.6 per cent in 2001 to 9 per cent in 2018. AF has significant economic effects with almost one billion dollars, or 1 per cent of the health budget, being spent on the diagnosis and treatment of AF in 2019.2

EFFECTS ON THE PATIENT

Apart from the increased risk of stroke, dementia, heart failure and overall mortality, AF greatly impairs quality of life. Similar degrees of quality-of-life impairment are seen in patients with recent myocardial infarction and heart failure, emphasizing the importance of effective AF management.3 Quality of life can be assessed in four domains: physical condition, psychological well-being, social activities, and everyday living. AF has wide ranging effects on the four domains secondary to AF symptoms as well as general chronic disease impacts. The detrimental effect on quality of life is a major driver to seek management and consequently treatment aims to improve quality of life.

LIFESTYLE MODIFICATION

A key component to the successful treatment of AF is lifestyle modification and aggressive risk factor management. Common risk factors include smoking, alcohol consumption, physical inactivity, obstructive sleep apnoea (OSA) and obesity. Large trials4,5 have demonstrated the importance of weight reduction (>10% weight loss) and moderate regular exercise. OSA should be screened for and if diagnosed continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP) therapy initiated. It is prudent to check CPAP adherence. Hypertension, hyperthyroidism, hyperlipidaemia, and diabetes must be screened for and treatment initiated, aiming for a BP <130/80 and HbA1c <6.5%. Smoking cessation and abstinence from alcohol should also be encouraged.

MEDICAL MANAGEMENT

The two major goals for medical management of AF include preventing thromboembolic events and managing symptoms with rate or rhythm control. Anticoagulants are used to reduce thromboembolic events and treatment is initiated based on risk. A commonly used risk scoring system is CHA2DS2-VASc (see Table 1)6 with a score greater or equal to 2 used as the threshold for anticoagulation. Bleeding continues to be a major limitation to initiating and/or continuing anticoagulation therapy.
Table 1. CHA2DS2-VASC risk scoring system

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Risk factor</th>
<th>Score</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Congestive heart failure/LV dysfunction</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypertension</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age ≥75 years</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diabetes mellitus</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stroke/Transient ischemic attack/Thromboembolism</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vascular disease (prior myocardial infarction, or peripheral vascular disease)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age 65-74 years</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sex category (female gender)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Rate control therapy choice is based on several factors including haemodynamic status, underlying cardiac function, duration of AF and comorbidities. Beta blockers are the most prescribed rate control agent and are also useful in patients with impaired left ventricular function. Digoxin and non-dihydropyridine calcium channel blockers are also used. Rhythm control therapy modifies cell excitability, conductivity, or abnormal automaticity via various ion channels. When administered early they have a high rate of successful conversion to sinus rhythm. Long term use requires careful consideration of contraindications and side effects. Amiodarone is commonly used, although the adverse and irreversible effects are numerous and include thyroid dysfunction, pulmonary toxicity and liver function derangement. Sotalol is also used, particularly in patients with structurally normal hearts, hypertension and/or coronary artery disease.

APPENDAGE OCCLUSION

Left atrial appendage occlusion is a consideration in the management of thromboembolic risk and AF in patients with a contraindication to anticoagulation. The left atrial appendage is a common site for the formation of thrombus. The occlusion device (clip, suture, or implant) is placed percutaneously via a venous sheath and a transseptal puncture. The PROTECT-AF trial showed a non-inferior rate of cardiovascular death and stroke between warfarin and an appendage occlusion device. There are several issues that exist with the use of appendage occlusion devices. Patients still require a period of anticoagulation and antiplatelet therapy to reduce the risk of device related thrombus. The period for epithelization of the device is variable and the occurrence and management of device related thrombus is still largely unknown. Furthermore, patients still require rate or rhythm control to treat symptoms associated with AF.

INDICATIONS FOR AF ABLATION

Indications for AF ablation are shown in Table 2. Most patients who undergo AF ablation will be symptomatic with paroxysmal or persistent AF who are refractory to or intolerant of antiarrhythmic drugs. AF ablation is also considered in a variety of other conditions and patient populations. In concomitant AF and heart failure with reduced ejection fraction, ablation has been shown to reduce mortality and hospitalisation for heart failure when compared with medical therapy.

Table 2. Indications for AF ablation

Adapted: 2020 European Society of Cardiology Guidelines.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class I</th>
<th>Symptomatic paroxysmal AF which is refractory to medical management</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tachycardia-induced cardiomyopathy secondary to AF to reverse LV dysfunction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Symptomatic persistent AF (refractory)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class IIa</td>
<td>Symptomatic paroxysmal AF (first line therapy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Heart failure with reduced ejection fraction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tachycardia-bradycardia syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Athletes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class IIb</td>
<td>Symptomatic persistent AF (first line therapy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Can also be considered in asymptomatic patients and patients with associated psychological stress</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Some patients with paroxysmal AF develop sinus pauses at the time of spontaneous cardioversion. This may be symptomatic and can deteriorate with drugs used for rate control. Catheter ablation of paroxysmal AF has been consistently shown to reduce both symptomatic and asymptomatic tachycardia-bradycardia in these patients. This can often reduce the need for both rate control drugs and permanent pacemakers.

Athletes are a special patient population that require optimal cardiac performance. As such athletes may poorly tolerate AF and effective treatment is required. Rate control agents are not recommended due to the limitation on maximum heart rate and may be prohibited in professional sport. Rhythm control agents or AF ablation are therefore the preferred first line treatment.

As mentioned above AF greatly impairs quality of life. When comparing AF ablation to medical therapy, the CANTOS trial showed a significant and sustained improvement in quality of life at 12 months. The CABANA trial found a similar result, extending to 24 months. The most common factor influencing quality of life is anxiety related to the disease and psychological distress is common in patients referred for AF ablation.

AF is a significant risk factor for cognitive impairment independent of its effect on the risk for stroke. The mechanism of AF and cognitive impairment is still unclear but likely relates to silent cerebral infarcts, microbleeds associated with anticoagulation and cerebral hypoperfusion. AF ablation has been shown to improve neurocognitive function at one year, particularly in patients with pre-ablation cognitive decline. Although early studies suggested that AF ablation was associated with post procedural neurocognitive abnormalities, techniques have since changed. Uninterrupted perioperative anticoagulation before and for three months following surgery, activated clotting time (ACT) of 350-400 seconds during the procedure and reducing left atrial dwell time with newer technologies may improve outcomes in this regard.

LIMITATIONS OF AF ABLATION

The main limitations of AF ablation are recurrence and complications. Recurrence is more likely in patients with persistent AF, unmanaged risk factors for AF and structural changes to the heart. The HATCH Score (see Table 3) predicts progression from paroxysmal to persistent AF and new onset AF after AF ablation.

Table 3. HATCH Score

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Risk factor</th>
<th>Score</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hypertension</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age ≥75 years</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transient ischaemic attack or stroke</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heart failure</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Increasing left atrial size and patient frailty are additional risks for the progression of paroxysmal to persistent AF. Structural remodelling of the left atrium also predicts recurrence. “AF begets AF” is a term used to describe the changes in AF making cure less likely.

Elderly patients are underrepresented in treatment of AF by ablation. Patients over 75 years make up 50 per cent of the community AF burden, yet less than 10 per cent undergo AF ablation in many centres. AF ablation in elderly patients is safe although somewhat less effective often leading to multiple procedures15.

**ABLATION VERSUS MEDICAL MANAGEMENT AND RECENT TRIALS**

Two landmark trials have been published in recent years examining AF ablation and medical management of AF. The Catheter Ablation versus Antiarrhythmic Drug Therapy in Atrial Fibrillation trial (CABANA)12 compared the safety and efficacy of the above treatments. The primary outcome was death, disabling stroke, serious bleeding, or cardiac arrest at 48 months. Although the primary outcome demonstrated non-superiority of AF ablation to drug therapy, there was considerable crossover which confounded the assessment. Subgroup analysis showed that patients that received AF ablation had a significant reduction in death, cardiovascular hospitalisations, recurrent AF, and AF burden. Furthermore, symptomatic patients (NYHA class II-IV) and patients with preserved ejection fraction heart failure had improved primary outcomes with AF ablation.

The Early Rhythm-Control Therapy in Patients with Atrial Fibrillation trial (EAST-AFNET 4)16 compared the safety and efficacy of rhythm control to usual care. Rhythm control therapy included AF ablation and/or rhythm control agents, while usual care was limited to rate control agents. Importantly, to be enrolled in the trial patients had to be diagnosed with AF within 12 months. The primary outcome was cardiovascular death, stroke, hospitalisation for heart failure, or acute coronary syndrome. The trial was stopped early due to efficacy with all primary outcomes than one ectopic focus) and most ectopic foci were located within the superior pulmonary veins.

The landmark paper by Haissaguerre18 explored the source of spontaneous ectopic beats triggering initiation of AF, the so-called atrial tachycardia. Atrial tachycardia is a common finding in AF and suggests that stable or unstable fibrosis-linked rotors and epicardial-endocardial dissociation are important for the maintenance of AF17. A rotor is a phase singularity (core) whose reverberations cause spiral waves that radiate into surrounding tissues leading to fibrillatory conduction. Understanding the source of AF triggers and mechanisms of trigger and maintenance in persistent AF.

The pathophysiological basis of AF is complex and not completely understood. The classical AF mechanism involves a single ectopic focus triggering a single re-entry circuit and multiple wave re-entry leading to persistent AF. Through complex atrial mapping techniques, novel concepts have been developed which suggest that stable or unstable fibrosis-linked rotors and epicardial-endocardial dissociation are important for the maintenance of AF17. A rotor is a phase singularity (core) whose reverberations cause spiral waves that radiate into surrounding tissues leading to fibrillatory conduction. Understanding the source of AF triggers and maintenance areas is crucial in determining targets for ablation. The landmark paper by Haissaguerre18 explored the source of spontaneous ectopic beats triggering initiation of atrial fibrillation. Forty-five patients with paroxysmal AF refractory to drug therapy were recruited and underwent atrial mapping with multi electrode catheters. Sixty-nine ectopic foci were identified (some patients had more than one ectopic focus) and most ectopic foci were located within the superior pulmonary veins.

**IMPORTANCE OF PULMONARY VEINS**

Unfortunately, the pulmonary veins are not the only source of ectopic foci. Non-pulmonary vein triggers include mitral and tricuspid periannular regions, the crista terminalis and Eustachian ridge, the interatrial septum, the ligament of Marshall. Non-pulmonary vein sources create challenges in AF ablation as they may be the cause of procedure failure if not located and treated.

AF ablation is generally more successful in patients with paroxysmal AF. Likely the transition from paroxysmal to long standing persistent AF is a continuum. In paroxysmal AF, the relative role of focal pulmonary vein triggers is high, so pulmonary vein isolation is generally successful. With progression to long standing persistent AF greater importance is on non-pulmonary vein triggers, rotors, scar interaction, and epi-endo dissociation.

Therefore, more complex mapping of the atrium is required to localise ablation targets and break the cycle of AF triggering and maintenance in persistent AF.

**ABLATION TECHNIQUES**

AF ablation involves placement of intravascular catheters, electroanatomical mapping to identify sources of AF, navigation systems to aid catheter manipulation, and ablation to isolate the pulmonary veins with different ablation energies and strategies.

**CT scan**

The cornerstone of successful AF ablation is pulmonary vein isolation from the left atrium. Unfortunately, challenges are created by the highly variable anatomy of the pulmonary veins and left atrium. Pre-operative cardiac CT scanning attempts to overcome this challenge by accurately imaging the left atrium and pulmonary veins. The CT images can then be integrated with fluoroscopy images to guide catheter ablation. Recent data suggests that the use of pre-operative CT imaging when combined with electroanatomical mapping does not improve safety or efficacy of AF ablation, and leads to additional radiation exposure46.

**Electroanatomical mapping**

Electroanatomical mapping involves creating a map of the heart to guide real-time catheter manipulations and ablation. Intracardiac electrograms measure electrical signals to assess activation sequence, and signal amplitude to assess tissue health. Anatomical three-dimensional mapping allows creation of a detailed cardiac chamber map and accurate catheter location. Data is collected and stored to allow pinpoint reproducible locations. Electroanatomical mapping is used in radiofrequency ablation and is not required in cryoablation as fluoroscopy and transoesophageal echocardiography (TOE) are used to guide the catheter.

**Ablation equipment**

The pulmonary veins are accessed via the left atrium. To access the left atrium, multiple venous sheaths are placed in large central veins, typically femoral, and catheters are directed to the right atrium. A transseptal puncture is required to pass the catheters from the right to left atrium. Two transseptal punctures are required for radiofrequency ablation as the mapping catheter is not integrated into the radiofrequency ablation catheter.

Radiofrequency and cryoablation are the two most used ablation energies. Radiofrequency ablation involves delivery of thermal energy, typically 30-50W, via direct contact leading to tissue necrosis. The standard radiofrequency ablation strategy is point-by-point wide-area circumferential pulmonary vein isolation. Confirmation of pulmonary vein isolation is via elimination of the pulmonary vein spike potential recorded by the mapping catheter. Three-dimensional electroanatomical mapping of the left atrium is required, which leads to generally longer procedures and more catheter manipulation. Advances in radiofrequency technology have been developed to improve the success and safety of the method. Direct contact is required for successful ablation however excessive pressure may lead to energy delivery to non-cardiac structures. Contact force sensors have been integrated to the radiofrequency catheter to improve effective delivery of energy to the myocardium. Integrated cooling systems have also been developed to allow a consistent energy delivery, and to reduce thrombus formation and steam pop.

Cryoablation involves placing a balloon at the pulmonary vein ostium and, through direct contact, delivering cryothermal energy creating ice and tissue necrosis, leading to pulmonary vein isolation. An integrated circular mapping catheter is present in the distal tip to allow measurement of ectopic electrical signals. The placement of the cryoballoon into the pulmonary veins is guided by fluoroscopy and/or TOE. It is a generally less time-consuming procedure and has demonstrated noninferiority to radiofrequency ablation (FIRE and ICE trial29).
Pulmonary vein anatomy and catheter position can be confirmed. In repeat ablations, pulmonary vein stenosis should be excluded, as it is a known complication of AF ablation. Pulmonary vein anatomy is usually imaged by CT scan and catheter-based mapping systems; however, TOE can also be used.

Limitations include obscuring of the transseptal catheter position on fluoroscopy. The TOE probe also must be removed prior to ablation, to allow monitoring of oesophageal temperature. The usual risks of TOE remain, including oesophageal injury, dental damage, and sore throat.

### PERIOPERATIVE ANTICOAGULATION

Patients undergoing AF ablation are at risk for peri-procedural thrombotic events, including stroke and cognitive dysfunction. They are also at risk of bleeding, with groin complications as well as cardiac tamponade. AF ablation was typically performed with cessation of vitamin K antagonists (VKA) with or without bridging therapy. Novel anticoagulant (NOAC) therapy has become more commonly used and this was typically ceased for 24–48 hours prior to AF ablation. When the catheters were within the left atrium, heparin was used to keep ACT 300–400 seconds.

More recent studies suggest that AF ablation without discontinuation of VKAs reduces peri-procedural stroke and minor bleeding relative to bridging with low molecular weight heparin. Uninterrupted NOAC therapy is as effective as uninterrupted VKA and may have a lower risk of major bleeding complications. Dabigatran appears to have the least bleeding complications and reversal is available for emergency use.

In uninterrupted anticoagulated patients, heparin should still be administered, usually a bolus of 100u/kg after septal puncture. The ACT should be kept above 300 seconds and repeated every 10–15 minutes until this is achieved, and then every 15–30 minutes until the end of the procedure.

Patients should resume regular anticoagulation for at least eight weeks following AF ablation.

### ANAESTHESIA

Patients should be warned of sore throat, secondary to intubation, TOE, and temperature probes. Chest pain after ablation is common but usually mild or moderate in severity. Groin pain at cannulation sites is common but also mild to moderate in severity and subsides after a few hours when sutures or compression dressings are removed. Bladder catheterisation should be considered, particularly with irrigated ablation techniques. Patients are nursed in a recumbent position for several hours following groin cannulation. Invasive arterial blood pressure monitoring is usually advised. Oesophageal temperature should be measured with the probe adjusted as close to the ablation site as possible. Changes can occur rapidly and the proceduralist must be advised immediately of any change.

The EP lab is a remote location and has a large amount of specialised, unfamiliar and radiation emitting equipment. Successful AF ablation requires a host of staff that are in and outside the lab, therefore communication and teamwork are essential. Teams controlling mapping systems, catheter position analysis, pacing, and ablation switching and setting are in an adjacent control room; while staff managing irrigation equipment, point of care ACT measurement, and cardioversion/defibrillation are inside the room. Communication is a problem and may be overcome by headsets for all staff. Screens should be capable of receiving multiple inputs for sharing of haemodynamic variables, temperature measurements, TOE images, fluoroscopy images, electrophysiological measurements, mapping images, ablation settings and delivery, and catheter force/direction. In addition, ablation irrigation volumes and urine volumes require communication as the room is cramped for space and the fields are sterile. Procedures take a few hours and vigilance is required by everybody.

Studies have demonstrated that AF ablation under either conscious or deep sedation is possible, but general anaesthesia is preferred due reduced recurrence rates. The procedure is painful and patient movement is required to be at the absolute minimum possible.

Where endocardial mapping techniques and referenced catheters are used, map shifts occur with patient movement relative to the magnet which is attached to the operating bed. Muscle relaxants can be used for intubation, but particularly in cryoablation, care should be taken to ensure that phrenic nerve pacing is possible by restricting the dose and allowing time for neuromuscular blocker recovery. Remifentanil is a useful agent to reduce movement without the need for neuromuscular blocking agents.
VENTILATION

In point-by-point radiofrequency ablation, each point is important and effective ablation relies on four factors to achieve ablation temperature in the tissue. The energy power setting, time of delivery, contact force of the catheter and catheter stability. Of these, the most difficult to control is catheter stability. Conventional ventilation causes movement of the lungs, causing movement of other organs in the chest and ultimately, movement of the ablation catheter. Ineffective ablation causes endocardial oedema, making subsequent ablation less effective. High frequency jet ventilation has become the standard in many institutions, with evidence of increased ablation success. Sophisticated equipment such as the Monsoon Jet Ventilator (Acutronic Medical Systems AG, Hirzel, Switzerland) is used. This pressure hose is typically connected to a specialised luer lock elbow connected to the endotracheal tube with the adjustable pressure limiting (APL) valve fully open. Initial ventilation is started at 120-130 breaths per minute with a driving pressure of 15-20psi and 60-100 per cent oxygen. Transcutaneous carbon dioxide monitoring is advised and correlated to blood gas analysis. Endocardial mapping should be performed when ventilation is settled as changes will produce a map shift. This ventilation can cause haemodynamic change and vasoressors are frequently required. Volatile anaesthesia cannot be used during jet ventilation so equipment for TIVA is required.

More recently and driven by barriers to the adoption of jet ventilation, a technique of high frequency low volume ventilation utilising a standard ventilator has been adopted in many institutions. Tidal volumes of 200-250ml and respiratory rates of 40-50 breaths per minute have been shown to significantly reduce variation in ablation catheter contact force. Inspiratory times should be significantly reduced, and expiratory flow should approach zero at end expiration to avoid air stacking and hyperventilation. This is tolerated by most patients and normal capnography techniques can be used, albeit with an increased end tidal to arterial carbon dioxide gap. This technique allows for the use of volatile anaesthesia and can be used with muscle relaxants or with remifentanil infusion, as required.

Other factors

Temperature monitoring is essential with an oesophageal temperature probe placed close to the ablation point as possible. New equipment allows multiple simultaneous point temperature measurements. Preoperative CT scan monitoring for vascular access is useful, and ablation techniques are likely to be closer to the oesophagus. Patient warmers should not cause electrical interference to the mapping system. Forced air warmers and some direct current resistive gel underbody warmers are acceptable. In fact, all electrical devices and even metal objects placed close to the patient can cause electromagnetic interference and should be cleared by the mapping scientists prior to use. Once electrical isolation of the pulmonary veins from the left atrium has been confirmed by pacing within the pulmonary veins, this conduction can be stress tested by the administration of adrenaline or isoprenaline. Potamine is often administered at the conclusion of surgery to aid groin haemostasis. Regular anticoagulants are resumed six hours following surgery and proton pump inhibitors are prescribed twice daily for six weeks.

Patients require ECG monitoring overnight and regular monitoring for groin complications and tamponade.

COMPLICATIONS

Approximately 2 per cent of patients undergoing AF ablation may experience major complications including stroke, oesophageal injury, cardiac tamponade, and pulmonary vein stenosis.

Postoperative expectations

Pain post AF ablation is reasonably common but short lived. In one study 60 per cent of patients reported moderate pain in the first 24 hours. Most common was back pain, likely related to a long procedure in the supine position, followed by groin, chest, and throat pain.

Tamponade and cardiac injury including pulmonary vein stenosis

Cardiac tamponade is a major life-threatening complication of AF ablation and occurs at an incidence of 1 per cent. It can occur at multiple stages of the procedure including transeptal puncture, catheter manipulation and energy deployment. Most of the time it can be treated with reversal of anticoagulation and percutaneous drainage, although occasionally urgent surgical drainage is required. Predictors of cardiac tamponade include ablation technology, ablation strategy and the number of procedures per patient. Radiofrequency ablation conveys the highest risk, likely related to the multiple transeptal punctures required. Ablation beyond pulmonary vein isolation also increases the risk of cardiac tamponade as the procedure is longer, with more catheter manipulations and greater energy deployment.

Pulmonary vein stenosis occurs in 0.5 per cent of procedures and, if unrecognized, can lead to chronic pulmonary hypertension, lung damage and right heart failure. It is theorised that risk factors for pulmonary vein stenosis include extensive ablation, multiple ablative procedures, small pulmonary veins prior to ablation or an increase in pulsed wave not to the expected velocity pre- and post-ablation. Diagnosis is delayed due to the non-specific early symptoms, so a high index of suspicion is required. Management of pulmonary vein stenosis is also challenging with a high rate of restenosis regardless of treatment modality (balloon angioplasty, bare or drug eluting stents).

Oesophageal injury

The oesophagus is closely related to the posterior wall of the left atrium, separated by only 1mm of fat, and is therefore not surprising that the phrenic nerve can be injured during AF ablation. Its incidence varies from 0.1 per cent. Although uncommon, it represents significant morbidity and, if unrecognized, has a mortality rate greater than 90 per cent. Uceration and erythema of the oesophagus is reasonably common but generally resolves with proton pump inhibitor therapy and time. Strategies have been developed to reduce the risk of oesophageal injury, including limiting magnitude of power and duration of ablation. Given the variable thickness of the posterior wall of the left atrium and the fat layer separating the oesophagus, luminal oesophageal temperature monitoring is also used. If temperatures greater than 38.5°C are measured, ablation should be interrupted, lower power settings adopted, and ablation should restart when the temperature falls below 38.5°C. Using this strategy, oesophageal injury may be reduced from 36 per cent to 6 per cent.

CNS problems, PODEC and stroke

Neurological complications occur at an incidence of 1 per cent and include stroke, transient ischemic attack (TIA) and phrenic nerve injury. The cause of stroke and TIA is multifactorial and can be secondary to patient and surgical factors. Patient factors include non-paroxysmal AF, older age, history of stroke, diabetes, and female sex. Ischemic stroke can occur secondary to catheter manipulation and transseptal puncture, while the use of intraoperative heparin (required to reduce thromboembolism) can predispose to haemorrhagic stroke. Air bubbles in irrigated ablation also pose a risk.

Patients presenting for AF ablation have commonly already been prescribed anticoagulants to reduce the risk of thromboembolic complications such as stroke. Guidelines state warfarin and NOACs should be continued in the perioperative period, although there is significant local practice variation. Discontinuation of warfarin is a major risk factor for stroke/TIA. Surprisingly, continuation of warfarin in the perioperative period leads to no change in major bleeding events and a reduction of minor bleeding events, likely due to the requirement of bridging low weight molecular heparin.

The phrenic nerve is nestled between the superior vena cava and the right superior pulmonary vein. It is therefore not surprising that the phrenic nerve can be injured during AF ablation. Its incidence varies significantly with procedure type, with the highest incidence occurring with cryoballon ablation (5 per cent). This is likely due to the balloon placement within the right superior pulmonary vein and therefore close association with the phrenic nerve. Phrenic nerve injury can also occur during radiofrequency ablation secondary to direct heat transfer and the increased susceptibility of the phrenic nerve to heat energy, although the incidence is lower (0.5 per cent).

Fluoroscopy time and dose

AF ablation relies on the use of fluoroscopy and therefore patients are exposed to radiation. Radiation dose varies with fluoroscopy system settings and fluoroscopy time which relates to complexity of procedure, operator experience and non-fluoroscopic techniques for catheter location (TOE, 3D mapping system). Large studies have found average fluoroscopy times to be 20 minutes with 386 milligrays (mGy) of radiation exposure. For comparison, an adult abdominal CT scan exposes the patient to 10 mGy and average yearly exposure is around 5 mGy. Although difficult to quantify in real-world terms it has been estimated that the lifetime risk of fatal malignancies after one hour of fluoroscopy is 0.07 per cent for male and 0.1 per cent for female patients.
Reoperations and ino an iterative testing

Pulmonary vein isolation is the cornerstone of AF ablation and pulmonary vein reconnection can lead to increased AF recurrence and repeat procedures. Reoperation can occur due to incomplete pulmonary vein isolation or as a result of morbid pulmonary vein conduction pathways. It is therefore important that the initial procedure that these pathways are discovered and investigated and reduced recurrence of AF.

Adenosine hyperpolarises pulmonary veins leading to restoration of tissue excitability, which unmasks dormant pulmonary vein conduction and partially ablated pathways. Typically, 50 per cent of patients will have dormant pulmonary vein unmasked during adenosine administration. This can then guide further ablation and has been shown to reduce the rate of recurrence36. Adenosine is given after pulmonary vein isolation and can be repeated until no further connections can be uncovered.

Isoprenaline is used to identify non-pulmonary vein triggers for AF. Non-pulmonary vein triggers may originate from, but are not limited to, the superior vena cava, coronary sinus, and interatrial septum. Observational studies suggest that ablation of non-pulmonary vein triggers improves success rates but in practice inducing, identifying, and eliminating these triggers is challenging. The benefit of isoprenaline is likely in repeat procedures where standard pulmonary vein isolation has been unsuccessful.

Failure and repeat procedures

Failure is an unfortunate event with any medical procedure and AF ablation is no different. Patients with paroxysmal AF have the highest success rate (76 per cent) and the lowest are seen in patients with long-lasting persistent AF (67 per cent)28. Success rate is improved with the continued use of antiarrhythmic therapies.

CONCLUSION

AF is the most common arrhythmia and continues to cause significant health and socioeconomic burden. As such novel management strategies and refinement of current management techniques will continue to develop. AF ablation strategies need to be modified with changes to technology and strategic technique leading to increased success rates and therefore more patients being offered the procedure. AF ablation is unique as an anaesthetic technique can affect the likelihood of a successful procedure. As its use becomes more widespread, anaesthetists will encounter this procedure more often and therefore must understand the challenges and conduct of AF ablation.

REFERENCES

INTRODUCTION

Vascular gas embolism (VGE) is a potentially life-threatening event which occurs when gas enters the vascular system. Historically this was primarily a condition associated with rapid ascent from diving or submarine escape training, particularly with breath being held and subsequent over-expansion pulmonary barotrauma causing disruption of the pulmonary vasculature and entry of gas into the vascular system. Over recent years advances in technological complexity and invasiveness of modern therapeutics have led to VGE becoming a predominantly iatrogenic condition. VGE has been documented to occur in an extremely broad range of procedures. In the author’s experience alone, causes of VGE in cases referred for Hyperbaric Oxygen Treatment (HBOT) range from air being inadvertently delivered under pressure during a resuscitation scenario, placement and removal of central venous access, loose perma-cath connections, lung transplantation and other cardiothoracic surgical procedures, gastroscopy and hysteroscopy, among others. It is difficult to provide accurate data on the true incidence of gas embolism and this is unlikely to ever be accurately known. The absolute quantity of gas entrained (or delivered) in VGE varies with each case; the type of gas although most commonly air, varies and as a result the behaviour of the gas bubbles may also vary. The end location of a gas embolus may be venous, pulmonary or arterial; it may have anywhere from minimal to abundant collateral circulation, differing metabolic requirements for oxygen as well as differing susceptibility to the vascular inflammatory changes that occur following the passage of bubbles. For these reasons both physiological effects and clinical findings in VGE may show extreme variation, from asymptomatic to cardiac arrest to catastrophic brain injury or death. At times, VGE may be suspected and for a variety of reasons not escalated or the suspicion not acted on. It is important to increase awareness of the condition as well as to foster a “speak-up” culture in order to avoid delays in diagnosis and the associated poor outcomes.

Our organisation provides the only public hyperbaric service for the state of Victoria and historically has treated an average of two cases of VGE per year. It is likely that substantially more events than this occur, and only the most severe are referred for HBOT. In fact, possibly in part due to improved awareness and recognition of the significance of gas embolism events, nine cases were treated over the year 2020, more than any preceding year.

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

Vascular gas embolism may be venous, arterial, or initially venous with subsequent arterialisation via intra-cardiac or intra-pulmonary shunting; known as paradoxical embolism. Bubbles may enter the cerebral circulation via the arteries or veins and cerebral gas embolism will be discussed separately below.

Arterial gas embolism

Air may enter the arterial circulation directly or indirectly. Direct arterial gas embolism occurs when gas is directly entrained or delivered into the arterial circulation, for example, during cerebral angiography, open chamber cardiac surgery, or bypass circuit accidents. Indirect or paradoxical arterial air entry occurs when venous gas translocates across a shunt which may be intra-cardiac (for example, PFO, ASD), intra-pulmonary (generally via overwhelming the pulmonary capillary bed’s filtering capacity, but also reported as having occurred via intrapulmonary arterio-venous anastomoses), or other (for example, atrial-oesophageal fistulae although this is rare).

Signs and symptoms of arterial gas embolism are determined by many factors, primarily the amount and distribution of gas, and while extremely variable, reflect the occlusion of portions of the vasculature. Neurologic deficits may occur (usually rapidly) and include loss of consciousness, stupor and confusion, unilateral or bilateral motor and/or sensory changes, gait disturbance, headache, vertigo, dizziness, and visual field defects or blindness. Pulmonary symptoms such as chest pain and shortness of breath may occur. Cardiac arrest may occur.
Venous gas embolism

Pre-conditions for entry of gas into the venous system include opening of the non-collapsing veins to the atmosphere and the presence of sub-atmospheric pressure within these vessels. The epiploic veins, emissary veins and dural venous sinuses are examples of non-collapsing veins. Other causes of venous gas embolism are procedures in which the surgical site is under pressure, or where the surgical wound is situated above the level of the heart such that venous pressure is sub-atmospheric and passive entry of air is enabled. Veins within a coagulated operative field may also allow entry of air. Air may enter veins through central venous or haemodialysis catheters, primarily on insertion or removal, but also due to more prolonged detachment, breaks or cracks in the lines. The veins of the myometrium during pregnancy and after delivery seem to be particularly susceptible to entainment of air.

The rate of entrainment of gas is important. Most commonly, a slow, steady, string-of-pearls type arrangement of bubbles enter the venous system. At rates of up to 10 mL/min the majority of bubbles are filtered out by the pulmonary capillaries. If a rapid bolus or particularly large volume of air is entrained into the venous circulation, pulmonary arterial pressures rise, leading to increased resistance to right ventricular outflow and diminished pulmonary venous return. In turn left ventricular pre-load is reduced as is cardiac output; and systemic cardiovascular collapse may occur. Tachyarrhythmias often develop and bradycardias are also possible. Given the altered resistance of lungs vessels, the mismatch between ventilation and perfusion causes intrapulmonary right-to-left shunting and increased alveolar dead space, leading to arterial hypoxia and hypercapnia.

Cerebral gas embolism

Cerebral arterial gas embolism (CAGE) may occur via a range of mechanisms; direct injection of gas into the cerebral arterial system during angiography or indirect (paradoxical) embolism via intracardiac, intrapulmonary, or other shunting. Pulmonary barotrauma can also enable entry of gas into the pulmonary veins, left heart and subsequently the cerebral circulation. Peripheral venous air bubbles may ascend in a retrograde fashion against venous flow into the cerebral venous system.

Studies looking at air within the cerebral arterial circulation demonstrated that when air is injected into carotid arteries, 80 per cent of bubbles can be collected in jugular veins within several cardiac cycles. With relatively high cerebral arterial systolic pressure, and an almost two-fold difference in diameter of the venous end of a cerebral capillary compared to the arterial end (9 vs 5 microns) bubbles are essentially sucked through the capillaries into the veins rapidly.

CAGE is often a biphasic phenomenon, and an initial, temporary neurologic dysfunction is likely due to the passage or transient lodgement of bubbles within the cerebral circulation. It is common to have a period of recovery and the clumping of bubbles are clearer to the jugular veins. Many patients (Gorman reports up to 65 per cent) with CAGE exhibit a secondary deterioration which may not occur for several hours after insult and is the result of the interaction between gas bubbles and vessel walls; consisting of endothelial damage, activation of leucocytes and platelets, extravasation of fluid and activation of the clotting cascade and complement systems. These events lead to vascular inflammation, microhaemorrhages, secondary thrombotic occlusions, cellular leakage and oedema as well as brain lipid peroxidation secondary to PMN diapedesis, bubble regrowth, and secondary vasospasm.

Larger intra-arterial cerebral bubbles may lodge at vessel branch-points, and these are redistributed substantially more slowly in a pulsatile fashion with systole over two to five minutes. Bubbles within loop and anastomotic vessels, where systolic pressure applies at both ends, are more likely to remain trapped, as are extremely large bubbles which occupy many generations of arterioles. In these cases (which make up approximately 30 per cent of cases of arterial gas embolism) ischaemia, infarction and a sustained loss of neurological function consistent with a stroke syndrome, is more likely to occur.

Neurologic deficits vary widely due to the distribution of bubbles in the cerebral circulation. If bubbles are distributed to the brainstem this can lead to cardiorespiratory arrest and is frequently lethal.

DIAGNOSIS OF VASCULAR GAS EMBOLISM

The diagnosis of iatrogenic gas embolism is a predominantly clinical one; a high degree of suspicion and attention to physiologic variables must be maintained during procedures in which gas embolism is a known risk. Given the biphasic nature of signs and symptoms, one should not be falsely reassured by a resolution of physiologic or other change.

In procedures in which gas embolism is a known risk, clinicians should be alert to the audible sucking of in air or visible entrainment through lines or cannulae.

Clinical findings such as a rapid fall in blood pressure, sudden changes in heart rate (tachy- or bradycardia), arrhythmias, cardiovascular collapse, decreased peripheral oxygen saturation, or a sudden sustained fall in BIS or cerebral oximetry should raise suspicion of cerebral arterial gas embolism. Decreased end tidal CO2 suggests the altered relationship between perfusion and ventilation due to obstruction of the pulmonary vessels. Transient or persistent ST changes may suggest gas moving through, lodging within or causing inflammatory changes to the endothelium of a coronary vessel. Seizure activity may occur.

A conscious patient might report chest pain, shortness of breath, cough, confusion or headache. A splashing precordial auscultatory sound, the classic "mill-wheel" murmur, may be heard with a precordial or oesophageal stethoscope, caused by froth in the cardiac chambers and great vessels.

Cardiopulmonary symptoms have been reported to be significantly higher in patients with venous source of air compared to an arterial source including tachypnoea, hypoxaemia, pulmonary oedema, cardiopulmonary arrest.

Where gas is introduced directly into the arterial system, symptom onset is immediate whereas if it is via arteriovenousisation of venous bubbles, the onset is delayed, as the process depends on an increase in pulmonary artery pressure and right heart pressures secondary to gas embolism of the pulmonary arteries. Arterial gas embolism may result in confusion, loss of consciousness or focal neurological deficits, cardiac arrhythmias or ischaemia.

The diagnosis can be challenging, and other features that support the diagnosis should be taken into account, for example, evidence of intravascular gas on ultrasound, direct observation (gas aspirated from a central venous line), or circumstances consistent with gas embolism occurrence such as high-risk surgeries.

The gold standard for detection of air embolism is transoesophageal echocardiography due to its ability to detect as little as 0.02 mL/kg of air11. However, given that the outcome of vascular gas embolism is highly dependent which vessels gas passes through or lodges in, in addition to many other factors, there is no clearly specified threshold of intra-vascular air (either venous or arterial) which is significant.

Most advanced radiological techniques have a high false negative rate for CAGE, even in the context of severe neurological deficits, and diagnosis should not depend on imaging results. Obtaining imaging delays time to definitive treatment (recompression) and is generally not recommended, particularly in those highly suggestive of CAGE12. The main role of cerebral imaging would only be to exclude other causes that may present like an AEG, for example, an intracerebral haemorrhage.

While signs and symptoms of arterial gas embolism are relatively easily detected when occurring in the previously well and conscious diver, this is clearly not the case for patients under anaesthesia with an iatrogenic gas embolism; detection and subsequent treatment of a likely gas embolism event often does not occur until the patient is woken post-operatively. Given the implication of delays to treatment on recovery, it is critical that a high degree of vigilance and meticulous monitoring of clinical parameters is maintained during high-risk procedures; especially in those cases following which the patient may not be woken or able to be assessed immediately post operatively.

MANAGEMENT

First aid
Immediate priorities in the management of iatrogenic vascular gas embolism include resuscitation, prevention of further air entrainment and efforts to remove or halt the progress of already entrained air, where possible.

In an anaesthetised patient, the airway should be secured with an endotracheal tube if not already done. The inspired fraction of oxygen should be increased to 1.0, and adequate ventilation maintained in order to maintain arterial oxygenation and to facilitate de-nitrogenation and resorption of bubbles. Normovolaemia should be maintained and allow improved blood flow.

In an anaesthetised patient, the airway should be secured with an endotracheal tube if not already done. The inspired fraction of oxygen should be increased to 1.0, and adequate ventilation maintained in order to maintain arterial oxygenation and to facilitate de-nitrogenation and resorption of bubbles. Normovolaemia should be maintained and allow improved blood flow.
Historically, the Trendelenburg position was recommended for patients with arterial gas embolism, based on the beliefs that the weight of the column of blood above would force bubbles through the cerebral capillary bed, the buoyancy of bubbles would keep bubbles located within the aorta or heart, and bubbles in the spinal cord might be compressed by the weight of spinal fluid above, however these theories were never experimentally confirmed.

Large air emboli have been demonstrated to increase intracranial pressure from 12 to 52mmHg within two hours of insult, with severe detrimental effects on brain oxygenation and glucose metabolism. However, in the event of a right ventricular outflow tract occlusion by gas embolism, immediate placement into the left lateral decubitus and Trendelenburg position may relieve the air-lock and move the air into the right atrium.

If the patient is awake or has a protected airway, they should be placed in the supine position, or lateral decubitus if unconscious with an unsecured airway. However, in the event of a right ventricular outflow tract occlusion by gas embolism, immediate placement into the left lateral decubitus and Trendelenburg position may relieve the air-lock and move the air into the right atrium.

**Hyperbaric Oxygen Treatment**

Hyperbaric Oxygen Treatment (HBOT) is the only definitive treatment for arterial gas embolism and is an American Heart Association (AHA) Class I recommendation (level of evidence C) for this indication.

Many studies demonstrate clearly improved neurological examinations, neurophysiological studies and neuro-physiometric testing outcomes amongst patients with arterial gas embolism treated with hyperbaric oxygen. A large number of case series of AGE and demonstrated a better prognosis among patients who received recompression compared to those who did not.

Hyperbaric oxygen should be delivered as soon as possible after an air embolism event, as a shorter interval between embolism and recompression is associated with a higher probability of a good outcome. A prospective animal study demonstrated that initiation of HBOT within one hour of symptom onset effectively mitigated brain injury from CAGE. In Beevor and Frawley’s retrospective review of 36 patients with cerebral gas embolism the only independent factor associated with good neurological outcome was time to first HBOT; HBOT within eight hours of cerebral gas embolism was associated with better neurological outcome. A study by McDermott et al. included 45 patients with arterial gas embolism and randomized patients undergoing recompression either after 2 or 4 hours. The treatment group showed a statistically significant improvement in neurological outcome compared to the control group (P < 0.001).

Lidocaine (lignocaine)

The use of lidocaine in arterial gas embolism is a Class IIa AHA recommendation with Level B evidence. In 1984 Evans et al injected lidocaine followed by air to the vertebral arteries of cats and measured their sciatic/cerebral SEFs. The control group SER fell to 28% of baseline and recovered to 60% and 73% at one and two hours. The treatment group SER fell to 68% of baseline and recovered to 89% and 95% at one and two hours. This difference was found to be statistically significant.

In a subsequent study also led by Evans, lidocaine was injected after the injury. Air was injected via the carotid artery until the SER was down to 10% of the baseline for a period of five minutes, after which the treatment group received a lidocaine bolus and infusion. The control group recovered to 32.8% of baseline SER, while the treatment group recovery was 73.8% of the baseline SER. This was also statistically significant (P < 0.001).

McDermott also performed several relevant studies on feline models. He showed that HBOT and HBOT + lidocaine had better SER recovery than a control group, but without additive benefit. Unfortunately, this study did not include a lidocaine-only group. McDermott also studied the additive benefit of lignocaine to HBOT in a dog model, whereby air was injected to the carotid arteries, and if the SER fell to under 10% of baseline, then dogs were recompressed with US Navy Table 6a and given lidocaine. The control group SER recovered to 32% of baseline, while the treatment group SER recovered to 60% of baseline (P < 0.025). Lignocaine has also been found in animal models to be associated with improved outcomes in the context of other neurologic injuries, however this is beyond the scope of this chapter.

The evidence for lidocaine in humans is less impressive than the animal data. While Mitchell et al’s double blind randomised control trial of patients undergoing left heart valve procedures in 1999 demonstrated that the group receiving standard cardiac antiarrhythmic infusion of lidocaine performed compared to placebo in 6 of 11 neuropsychological tests, the follow up study in 2009 failed to demonstrate a neuroprotective benefit in perioperative lidocaine use following cardiac surgery. There were some flaws to the follow up study, which included a predominance of patients undergoing CABG without cardiomyotone, unlike the initial study which only included open chamber surgery (which has previously been shown to result in greater quantities of gas embol).

In practice, the use of lidocaine for patients with vascular gas embolism varies. If it is to be used, evidence suggests that an appropriate endpoint is attainment of serum lidocaine concentrations consistent with an antiarrhythmic effect (2-6 mcg/mL).

**Potential mechanisms of neuroprotection by lidocaine**

Lidocaine induced sodium channel blockade prevents or decelerates membrane depolarization of hypoxic neurons.

Modulation of neuronal energy metabolism.

Inhibits leucocyte migration and accumulation in the microcirculation of reperfused ischaemic tissue.

Modulation of haemodynamic parameters.
CONCLUSION

VGE events are a rare complication of a range of procedures, which can manifest in a variety of ways, making early detection challenging; even more so when the patient is under relaxant anaesthesia.

Strategies should be developed to prevent, detect, and rapidly treat vascular gas embolism.

Procedures which carry a high risk for gas embolism should be identified early, discussed prior to the operation or consideration as well as during the pre-procedure time-out.

Consideration should be given to patient positioning and monitoring modalities. Maintaining pre-load can help minimise risk of air entrainment. Metabolic attention to clinical parameters and a high index of suspicion must be maintained, and vigilance particularly at key risk points of the procedure. Strategies aimed at consistently reducing these risks should be developed.

Regular education of staff performing high-risk procedures should be ongoing and specific to the task, with a focus on excellent communication; both between personnel (for example, anaesthetist and surgeon, to allow rapid action to be taken if air entrainment is suspected) as well as between clinician and patient (for example, use of clear instructions during central line placement in the awake patient, such as “breathe all the way out and then hold” rather than “hold your breath”, which many interpret an instruction to take a deep breath, which increases the risk of VGE).

A “speak-up” culture should be fostered, enabling all members of the interdisciplinary team to feel comfortable to communicate concerns around patient safety.

Awareness of the nearest appropriate hyperbaric facility and smooth referral processes should be maintained, as this is the primary mode of treatment, and those who are treated earlier have more favourable outcomes.

Inclusion of vascular gas embolism cases in interdepartmental SIM training is likely to be beneficial.

REFERENCES

The expanding role of SGLT-2 inhibitors in the treatment of heart failure

Aaron Pym, MBBS (Hons) B Econ FANZCA
Fellow, The Canberra Hospital, ACT

Dr Aaron Pym is completing a Fellowship in Perioperative Medicine at the Canberra Hospital. His research interests include the outcomes of obese patients in clinical anaesthesia, and the prevention and management of early post-operative nausea and vomiting. Aaron is also an Early Management of Severe Trauma (EMST) course instructor.

Ross Hanrahan, MBBS MMed PGCertCU FANZCA
Specialist Anaesthetist, The Canberra Hospital and Calvary Public Hospital, ACT

Dr Ross Hanrahan is a consultant anaesthetist with an interest in perioperative medicine focusing on perioperative risk reduction. Other interests include the use of ultrasound for point-of-care echocardiography and regional anaesthesia.

Peter Flynn, BSciMed (Hons) MBBS (Hons) FANZCA
VMO Anaesthetist at The Canberra Hospital and Calvary Public Hospital, ACT

Dr Peter Flynn is a consultant anaesthetist and supervisor of anaesthetic training in Canberra. He has an interest in adult education and perioperative medicine across the Australian Capital Territory.

Thomas Bruessel, Dr med, FANZCA
Director, Department of Anaesthesia, Perioperative Medicine and Pain Management, Canberra Health Service, ACT

Professor Thomas Bruessel is the director of the department and chair of anaesthesia at the Australian National University. He has a strong interest in regional anaesthesia, neuroanaesthesia and neuro medicine.

INTRODUCTION

The role for Sodium-Glucose Transport Protein 2 (SGLT2) inhibitors is expanding to include new patient groups, including those without Type 2 diabetes mellitus (T2DM) (see Table 1).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Agent</th>
<th>Australia/New Zealand</th>
<th>Other countries</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dapagliflozin (Forxiga)</td>
<td>• Improve glycaemic control in T2DM (Aus, NZ).</td>
<td>• Improve glycaemic control in T2DM (EU, US, UK).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Prevent hospitalisation for heart failure in those with T2DM and cardiovascular disease or risk factors (Aus, NZ).</td>
<td>• Improve glycaemic control in T1DM as adjunct to insulin (Jap).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Improve symptom control and cardiovascular outcomes as adjunct therapy in HFrEF (Aus).</td>
<td>• Improve glycaemic control in overweight patients with T1DM (BMI ≥27kg/m2) as adjunct to insulin (EU, UK).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Prevent new or worsening nephropathy in T2DM and cardiovascular disease or risk factors (NZ).</td>
<td>• Reduce risk of hospitalisation for heart failure in T2DM with cardiovascular disease or risk factors (US).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Reduce the risk of declining renal function, kidney failure, cardiovascular death and hospitalisation for heart failure in adults with chronic kidney disease at risk of progression (US).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Empagliflozin (Jardiance) • Improve glycaemic control in T2DM (EU, US, UK).
• Prevent cardiovascular death in those with T2DM and established cardiovascular disease (Aus, NZ).
• Prevent cardiovascular death in those with T2DM and established cardiovascular disease (US).
• Prevent hospitalisation for HFrEF (US, under FDA review).

Canagliflozin (Invokana) • Withdrawn from marketing for commercial reasons (Aus, NZ).
• Improve glycaemic control in T2DM (US, EU).
• Reduce the risk of major adverse cardiovascular events in T2DM with established cardiovascular disease (US).
• Reduce the progression of chronic kidney disease in T2DM and chronic kidney disease (EU, US).

Ertugliflozin (Steglatro) • Improve glycaemic control in T2DM (Aus).
• Improve glycaemic control in T2DM (EU, US, UK).

Sotagliflozin (Zynquista) • Not currently approved for use.
• Improve glycaemic control as adjunct to insulin in overweight patients (BMI ≥27kg/m²) with T1DM (EU).

The SGLT2 inhibitors have an established role in T2DM, improving HbA1c by 0.5–1 per cent1,2, and are known to also promote modest weight loss and blood pressure reductions3,4. Their use is already increasing in Australia. The Pharmaceutical Benefits Scheme observed a 24 per cent year-on-year increase in SGLT2 inhibitor use during the most recent 2019/20 financial year, subsidising more than two million prescriptions in Australia. The Pharmaceutical Benefits Scheme observed a 24 per cent year-on-year increase in SGLT2 inhibitor use during the most recent 2019/20 financial year, subsidising more than two million prescriptions in Australia. The Pharmaceutical Benefits Scheme observed a 24 per cent year-on-year increase in SGLT2 inhibitor use during the most recent 2019/20 financial year, subsidising more than two million prescriptions in Australia.

The approved indications for SGLT2 inhibitors are expanding in light of this evidence. In Australia and other countries, regulators have approved certain SGLT2 inhibitors for the management of heart failure with reduced ejection fraction in patients with and without T2DM13,14. In Europe, SGLT2 inhibitors have been approved as an adjunct to insulin for the management of overweight patients with Type 1 diabetes mellitus (T1DM)15,16. This review will explore the established and emerging applications for SGLT2 inhibitors beyond glycaemic control in T2DM. The potential perioperative risks from this drug class have been well documented and range from minor urinary tract infection (UTIs) to severe complications such as urosepsis, limb amputation and ketoacidosis17,18,19. While the importance of careful management of SGLT2 inhibitors during the perioperative period is increasingly recognised20, anaesthesiologists should be aware of the evidence supporting new indications for these agents. The use of SGLT2 inhibitors will probably become more common in the medium term and are already being used in Australia by patients without diabetes. The perioperative patient may be at greater risk of harm from complications (especially if undergoing emergency surgery or with poorly controlled diabetes) than that reported in large safety and efficacy trials.

CLINICAL BENEFITS OF SGLT2 INHIBITORS

Chronic heart failure and Type 2 diabetes mellitus Recent studies analysing the impact of SGLT2 inhibitors in T2DM found potentially practice-changing reductions in hospitalisation for heart failure, cardiovascular death and major adverse cardiac events (see Table 2).

Table 2. Summary of randomised controlled trials of SGLT2 inhibitors and cardiovascular outcomes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Trial</th>
<th>Study drug</th>
<th>Inclusion criteria</th>
<th>Participants (%T2DM)</th>
<th>Primary outcome (95%CI)</th>
<th>HHF HR (95%CI)</th>
<th>CV death HR (95%CI)</th>
<th>CKD progressiona HR (95%CI)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EMPA REG (2015)</td>
<td>Empagliflozin</td>
<td>T2DM &amp; established CVD</td>
<td>7,020 (100%)</td>
<td>CV death, MI, Stroke: 0.86 (0.74–0.99)</td>
<td>0.65 (0.50–0.85)</td>
<td>0.62 (0.49–0.77)</td>
<td>N/R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CANVAS Program (2017)</td>
<td>Canagliflozin</td>
<td>T2DM &amp; high CVD risk</td>
<td>10,142 (100%)</td>
<td>CV death, MI, Stroke: 0.86 (0.75–0.97)</td>
<td>0.67 (0.52–0.87)</td>
<td>0.87 (0.72–1.06)</td>
<td>0.60 (0.47–0.77)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DECLARE TIMI (2019)</td>
<td>Dapagliflozin</td>
<td>T2DM &amp; established CVD or risk factors</td>
<td>17,160 (100%)</td>
<td>CV death, MI, Stroke: 0.83 (0.73–0.95)</td>
<td>0.73 (0.61–0.88)</td>
<td>0.98 (0.82–1.17)</td>
<td>0.76 (0.67–0.87)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DAPA HF (2019)</td>
<td>Dapagliflozin</td>
<td>Chronic HF (NYHA II-IV) &amp; LVEF ≤40% with GDMT</td>
<td>4,744 (42%)</td>
<td>CV death or HF/HF: 0.74 (0.65–0.85)</td>
<td>0.70 (0.59–0.83)</td>
<td>0.82 (0.69–0.98)</td>
<td>0.53 (0.43–0.66)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EMPEROR Reduced (2020)</td>
<td>Empagliflozin</td>
<td>Chronic HF (NYHA II-IV) &amp; LVEF ≤40% with GDMT</td>
<td>5,730 (50%)</td>
<td>CV death or HF/HF: 0.75 (0.65–0.86)</td>
<td>0.70 (0.58–0.85)</td>
<td>0.92 (0.75–1.12)</td>
<td>0.50 (0.32–0.77)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SOLOIST WHF (2020)</td>
<td>Sotagliflozin</td>
<td>T2DM &amp; recent acute HF admission</td>
<td>1,222 (100%)</td>
<td>CV death or HF/HF: 0.67 (0.52–0.85)</td>
<td>0.84 (0.49–0.83)</td>
<td>0.84 (0.59–1.22)</td>
<td>N/R **</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EMPEROR preserved (2021)</td>
<td>Empagliflozin</td>
<td>Chronic HF (NYHA II-IV) with LVEF &gt;40%</td>
<td>5,988 (49%)</td>
<td>CV death or HF/HF: 0.79 (0.69–0.90)</td>
<td>0.71 (0.60–0.83)</td>
<td>0.79 (0.67–1.09)</td>
<td>N/R ***</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

T2DM, Type 2 diabetes mellitus. HR, Hazard ratio. 95%CI, 95% confidence interval. HHF, Hospitalisation for heart failure. CV, Cardiovascular. CKD, Chronic kidney disease. CVD, Cardiovascular disease. MI, Myocardial infarction. HF, Heart failure. NYHA, New York Heart Association. LVEF, Left ventricular ejection fraction. GDMT, Guideline-directed medical therapy. N/R, not reported.

*CKD progression generally described as a sustained decline in eGFR ≥40% to eGFR<60mL/min/m², progression to renal replacement therapy or eGFR<15mL/min/m² or renal death; see individual trials for specific definitions.

**HR for CKD progression not reported; eGFR data favoured empagliflozin (mean change in eGFR -0.16 (-1.30 – 0.98)).

***HR for CKD Not reported; eGFR data favoured empagliflozin (mean change in eGFR -1.37mL per year).

The size of effect, and the short latency to effect (within months) suggests a mechanism unrelated to glycaemic control, and potentially direct cardioprotective effects from this drug class. A meta-analysis of randomised controlled trials regarding the cardiovascular outcomes of SGLT2 inhibitors in T2DM included studies of empagliflozin, dapagliflozin and canagliflozin1. Overall, SGLT2 inhibitors were shown to reduce the risk of cardiovascular death or hospitalisation for heart failure by 23 per cent, with a similar benefit observed in those with and without heart failure, and with and without cardiovascular disease. The risk of major adverse cardiac events was reduced by 11 per cent but found benefit only in those with established cardiovascular disease and not in those without.

The first major randomised controlled trial to demonstrate significant cardiovascular benefits was EMPA-REG OUTCOME1. This study included participants with T2DM and cardiovascular disease who were already optimised with standard-of-care medications for cardiovascular comorbidities. This was a high-risk cohort; the majority (99 per cent) of patients had prior cardiovascular events (stroke, myocardial infarction, amputation or coronary artery disease). Investigators demonstrated a 38 per cent relative risk reduction for cardiovascular death, 32 per cent for all-cause mortality, and 55 per cent for hospitalisation for heart failure. Next, DECLARE-TIMI included participants with T2DM but relatively low cardiovascular risk and preserved renal function. Investigators found a 17 per cent relative risk reduction in the composite of CV death and hospitalisation for heart failure, with similar benefits in patients with and without existing atherosclerotic disease or heart failure. The CANVAS program included patients with T2DM (HbA1c ≥7.5 and ≥10.5%) and either symptomatic
atherosclerotic disease or at least two defined cardiovascular risk factors. Investigators found a 39 per cent relative risk reduction in hospitalisation for heart failure and a 20 per cent reduction for major cardiac events or cardiovascular death. Importantly, a subsequent analysis found canagliflozin reduced hospitalisation for heart failure among patients with ejection fractions below 40% across all HbA1c subgroups with good glucose control (HbA1c 6.5-7.0%)34. Although canagliflozin has since been withdrawn from the Australian market for commercial reasons, these data support the potential for a class effect from SGLT2 inhibitors, and observed UNEVENTS even for those with poorly controlled diabetes22. It is possible that the sponsor will seek to reintroduce canagliflozin to local markets given recent approvals in other countries for those with diabetic and non-diabetic chronic kidney disease (see Table 1).

Acute heart failure and Type 2 diabetes mellitus

In contrast to prior studies in T2DM, sotagliflozin has been studied in patients recovering from acute heart failure39. Sotagliflozin reduced the relative risk of hospitalisation for heart failure or CV death by 33 per cent when compared to placebo in the sotagliflozin group, which may be related to its mechanism as a dual SGLT1/SGLT2 inhibitor40. This study has demonstrated a potential role for initiating sotagliflozin early in the recovery phase from an episode of acute heart failure in patients with T2DM, although the practical safety challenges must be resolved before regulatory approvals are likely for this indication.

Heart failure in non-diabetic patients

The impressive reductions in hospitalisation for heart failure and cardiovascular death have also been shown in non-diabetic patients (see Table 2). The DAPA-HF (dapagliflozin) study recruited 4744 patients with known heart failure with and without diabetes12. All participants had heart failure with reduced ejection fraction (LVEF ≤40%) and NYHA Grade II-IV symptoms and were optimised on guideline-directed medical therapy prior to randomisation. Less than half of the participants had T2DM. Those with diabetes had their usual anti-hyperglycaemic therapy continued after addition of dapagliflozin (with hyperglycaemia not excluded) which was unlikely to experience a clinical improvement, and less likely to experience a deterioration than the placebo group. The beneficial effects were similar across all subgroups including those without diabetes at baseline, and in those diabetic patients with good glycaemic control27.30.

A subsequent analysis examined sub-groups according to pre-existing heart failure therapy38. Investigators examined dose intensity of traditional heart failure therapies, the use of sacubitril/valsartan or icarandipine and the presence of cardiac resynchronisation therapy. Improvements in heart failure outcomes and cardiovascular mortality were consistently shown across treatment sub-groups, even in patients already optimised with existing therapy. Prior to these data, it had been unclear whether the diuretic benefit would still be induced in patients already using loop diuretics and mineralocorticoid receptor antagonists, or whether a significant volume contraction would develop. Among patients with existing diuretic therapy, a significant lessening of mortality was achieved in those on sotagliflozin. A 44% relative risk reduction was achieved in those with reduced ejection fraction, dabigatran lowers the risk of worsening heart failure or death from cardiovascular causes, and results in better symptom control and fewer exacerbations in those with and without diabetes. Empagliflozin has also been investigated in heart failure patients with and without diabetes. The EMPEROR-Reduced trial targeted patients with more significant LV dysfunction than DAPA-HF. Investigators recruited those with heart failure with reduced ejection fraction and either LVEF ≤30% or LVEF 40%-49% with preserved or reduced hospitalisation for heart failure or very high biomarkers. Approximately 50 per cent of patients had T2DM, and 73 per cent had LVEF ≤30%. Empagliflozin was associated with a 25 per cent relative risk reduction for CV death or hospitalisation for heart failure; a number needed to treat of 19 to prevent one primary event. These findings were consistent across subgroups, including patients with and without diabetes. Also, their initial rates of genital tract infections, there were no differences in glycaemia or markers of heart failure safety (hypotension, volume depletion, renal dysfunction, bradycardia, dysglycaemia). EMPEROR preserved was a randomised controlled trial of empagliflozin which included all IIb-IV chronic heart failure and an ejection fraction <40%39. Empagliflozin reduced the risk of hospitalisation for heart failure or cardiovascular death (HR 0.79; 95% CI 0.69-0.89; P<0.001) in patients with and without diabetes. The number needed to treat for one primary event was 31. Sub-group analysis demonstrated benefits in patients with both preserved (EFZ50%) and mildly reduced ejection fraction (EF 41-49%). Although it is unclear whether those with a greater ejection fraction receive a decremental benefit, this is an important finding. Most heart failure therapies are ineffective or only weakly beneficial in those with higher ejection fractions. Although the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association guidelines have a new therapeutic recommendation of SGLT2 inhibitors in heart failure with preserved ejection fraction. The DELIVER trial is examining dapagliflozin in adults with heart failure and ejection fraction >40%. If benefits are confirmed for this difficult-to-treat condition, we should expect to see even more patients using SGLT2 inhibitors in the future.

Type 1 diabetes mellitus

Insulin therapy alone does not always achieve adequate glycaemic control in patients with T1DM. Certain SGLT2 inhibitors have been investigated as adjuncts to achieve HbA1c targets in T1DM24,41 and are approved for this use in the European Union, United Kingdom and Japan16,18. Studies in this patient group have found significant reductions in mean HbA1c, total daily insulin dose and body weight25-27,29,30. In placebo-controlled trials, dapagliflozin has been shown to significantly increase the proportion of patients achieving a reduction in HbA1c ≥0.5% without an increase in severe hypoglycaemia. Similarly, almost twice as many participants using sotagliflozin achieved HbA1c <7.0% with a 7% without a severe adverse event28. Both trials showed a 39% relative risk reduction of death or renal deterioration rate of T1DM, although the incidence is lower in overweight patients (BMI 27kg/m2)30-34,35. Most regulators which have approved SGLT2 inhibitors for T1DM have limited this adjunct therapy to the overweight population on safety grounds.

Diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA) is a significant problem for patients with T1DM and is responsible for up to 20 per cent of Type 1 diabetes-related deaths22. The elevated risk in these patients using SGLT2 inhibitors, although approved for this use in the European Union, in the United States the Food and Drugs Administration (FDA) has so far declined approval for SGLT2 inhibitors in T1DM due to the higher rate of DKA29. The position of regulators in Australia and New Zealand has not yet been tested. Patients who use dapagliflozin or sotagliflozin as adjunct therapy in T1DM should receive a structured education program by trained educators, and be taught to recognise the signs, symptoms and potential adverse events.

Chronic kidney disease

Chronic kidney disease is one of the fastest-growing causes of death, most commonly caused by diabetes, hypertension, obesity and obesity. In this context, agents which simultaneously improve control of blood sugar, blood pressure and body weight would be welcomed by nephrologists and other specialists. The SGLT2 inhibitors provide all of these benefits and have demonstrated reno-protective effects in patients with and without diabetes, and in diabetic patients with and without CKD. Multiple studies have described renal outcomes from SGLT2 inhibitors in T1DM41,42,43,44,45. A meta-analysis of participants found that the SGLT2 inhibitors substantially reduce the risk of dialysis, transplantation or death due to kidney disease by 33 per cent in T2DM (Relative risk, RR 0.67, 95%CI 0.52-0.88)46. SGLT2 inhibitors also reduced progression to end-stage kidney disease (ESKD) (RR 0.59, 95%CI 0.53-0.63) and acute kidney injury (RR 0.78, 95%CI 0.59-0.98)47. These effects were consistent across all sub-group analyses. This meta-analysis demonstrated that benefits were also consistent across all subgroups of baseline renal function, those with and without albuminuria, and those already using renin-angiotensinaldosterone system antagonists44,45. Renal protection with dapagliflozin has also been demonstrated in non-diabetic kidney disease. The DAPA-CKD trial included participants with CKD (mean baseline eGFR 43ml/min/1.73m2) and followed patients for a mean of 2.4 years before stopping early due to efficacy48. Dapagliflozin reduced the risk of a 50% eGFR decline, ESKD, or renal or CV death by 39 per cent (Hazard ratio, HR=0.61, 95%CI 0.51-0.72). The number needed to treat to avoid one primary endpoint was 19. The benefit was similar in patients with and without diabetes and was independent of pre-existing renal function. Dapagliflozin appears safe in non-diabetic kidney disease, with no increase in hypoglycaemia or ketoacidosis identified, although the participant numbers were relatively low and may not have been powered to find uncommon outcomes. Similar data have been presented for canagliflozin, although this is no longer available in Australia29.

Regulators in the United States and the European Union have authorised canagliflozin for use in secondary prevention of CKD in diabetic kidney disease, and in the United States dapagliflozin is approved for renal protection in non-diabetic CKD. The renal outcomes for diabetic and non-diabetic patients are impressive. Drug sponsors may seek to expand approved indications for SGLT2 inhibitors to include renal protection in diabetes or established non-diabetic kidney disease. In the meantime, we may also see nephrologists and other physicians prescribing SGLT2 inhibitors off-label for use in CKD.

PROPOSED MECHANISMS OF BENEFIT IN HEART FAILURE

Large randomised controlled trials have demonstrated reductions in hospitalisation for heart failure with SGLT2 inhibitors within just months of initiating therapy. The size and speed of this effect, consistent efficacy in diabetic and non-diabetic patients, and a new therapeutic mechanism of action suggest that benefit in atherosclerotic complications suggests a mechanism unrelated to anti-hyperglycaemic effects. The beneficial
effect appears consistent for those with heart failure already optimised on conventional guideline-directed medical therapy, which also suggests a mechanism independent of the traditional neurohumoral pathways of heart failure treatment. There is some pre-clinical and clinical research into the potential protective mechanisms in heart failure.

Preload reduction and novel diuretic mechanisms

In heart failure, the activation of the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system and sympathetic nervous system lead to salt and fluid retention and a progressively fluid-overloaded state68. Eventually an unfavourable myocardial length-tension relationship develops, with worsening myocardial performance and intravascular and interstitial sodium and fluid retention45. In a post-hoc mediation analysis of one large trial, investigators established that haemoconcentration of 50 per cent of the benefit in cardiovascular reduction was attributed to haemoconcentration and diuresis44,45, which would reduce preload and ventricular filling pressures.

The SGLT2 inhibitors have several unique diuretic attributes. First, they act at the renal proximal convoluted tubule to prevent glucose reabsorption and induce a natriuresis and osmotic diuresis without impacting plasma osmolality69. Sodium and glucose excretion has been observed to increase to 170 per cent and 2700 per cent of baseline68,70,71. The osmotic effect creates tubular fluid with a high sodium and chloride, and so these are not reabsorbed at the loop of Henle as might be expected; this natriuresis has been shown to reduce total body sodium64. Second, this mechanism induces tubuloglomerular feedback through increased delivery of fluid and sodium to the macula densa which stimulates afferent tubule vasoconstriction and reduces paracellular filtration68. In contrast, traditional thiazide and loop diuretics inhibit sodium entry into the macula densa and promote efferent arteriole vasodilatation. This may be the mechanism of the renoprotective benefits observed in trials and may also explain the observed increase in erythropoietin secretion52.

Third, the SGLT2 inhibitors appear to selectively reduce interstitial fluid clearance to relieve organ congestion without reducing intravascular volume. This may explain the absence of reflex neurohormonal activation; traditional diuretics are observed to induce off-target electrolyte-wasting and renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system activation with counter-productive vasoconstriction and sodium retention64,65,66. This diuresis is sympathetic with loop diuretics65, and may be valuable in those resistant to loop diuretics66.

Afterload reduction

Increased afterload is indicative of increased myocardial oxygen demand and includes arteriolar resistance and the pulsatile load generated by arterial stiffness. Investigators measuring surrogates for arterial stiffness and resistance (systolic/diastolic arterial stiffness index, pulse pressure and central systolic blood pressure) found favourable reductions in patients using empagliflozin45,46. Modest reductions in systolic and mean blood pressure (4-10mmHg and 2mmHg, respectively) have been observed with SGLT2 inhibitor use48. Similar improvements to arterial resistance and vascular function have been demonstrated in a pilot study with dapagliflozin, supporting a class effect49. Afterload reduction will reduce work and can be expected to improve left ventricular function50. This effect is only partly explained by a diuresis; although the volume loss is persistent over time (unlike with thiazide diuretics)50,51, the reductions in blood pressure do not correlate with measured fluid losses50.

Myocardial energy metabolism

Progressive heart failure induces unfavourable metabolic pathways, resulting in increased free fatty acid intermediates which further impair myocardial function19. The SGLT2 inhibitors increase circulating ketones in patients with and without T2DM46,48, probably due to glucagon-mediated ketogenesis or decreased renal ketone excretion50. Ketones are freely taken up by the heart and offer an additional and potentially more efficient myocardial energy supply for the failing heart68,69,71. This substrate improves transduction of oxygen consumption into work efficiency, and would be synergistic with the increased oxygen delivery observed with haemococoncentration44. These metabolic changes may partially explain increased cardiac output in heart failure but does not well explain the benefits observed in those without known heart failure. At present this is hypothesis-generating; there are no data definitively linking myocardial energetics to improvements in heart failure outcomes66.

Sodium–hydrogen transport protein inhibition

The SGLT2 inhibitors appear to inhibit Na+/H+ exchange (NHE) proteins, leading to increased myocardial calcium availability. This has been associated with beneficial cardiac remodelling, with reductions in cardiac hypertrophy, fibrosis and systolic dysfunction66,67. Empagliflozin has been observed to functionally inhibit a myocardial isoform NHE14,68, which reduces cytosolic sodium and calcium, and increases mitochondrial calcium and ATP activation in experimental models44,46. As SGLT2 proteins are not present in cardiac myofibroblasts, the mechanism for this interaction is unclear. However, NHE3 proteins do exist in the kidneys where they reabsorb tubular sodium after filtration47. An interaction between myocardial NHE1 and renal NHE3 would be biologically plausible and potentially represent a common mechanism of cardiorenal protection. Although NHE3 has been observed with SGLT2 inhibitors, the mechanism and relevance to myocardial performance is currently hypothetical.

Myocardial remodelling

Modest beneficial changes in myocardial mass and volume have been noted following the introduction of a SGLT2 inhibitor. Clinical studies have shown modest reductions in left ventricle end-systolic and end-diastolic volume indices after 12-26 weeks in patients with heart failure with reduced ejection fraction46. Other studies have shown modest but significant reductions in left ventricular mass by -3.35 to -9.0g/m2 body surface area46,47. This demonstrates a favourable impact on ventricular remodelling, as larger volumes are associated with worse non-fatal and mortality outcomes. The beneficial changes have been observed in those on optimal medical therapy. The magnitude of change is similar to other beneficial therapies in heart failure, and was incremental to those gains50.

The SGLT2 inhibitors have been shown to reduce cardiac fibrosis in animal and human models. In animal models of myocardial infarction, investigators have demonstrated reduced myofibroblast infiltration, improved cardiac metabolism and greater cardiac ATP production in patients exposed to SGLT2 inhibitors compared to controls47,75. Similar results have been shown in human atrial tissue, with a more quiescent phenotype of myofibroblast in tissue exposed to empagliflozin65. These changes are consistent with the benefits observed in large clinical studies and may explain improvements in diastolic function and ventricular mass.

CONCLUSION

In Australia and other countries, SGLT2 inhibitors are approved for treatment of heart failure as well as to improve glycaemic control in T2DM. Other jurisdictions have already approved their use in T1DM, and it is possible that approved indications may expand to include secondary prevention in non-diabetic chronic kidney disease. Even among patients with T2DM and good glycaemic control, the data appear to justify addition of SGLT2 inhibitors to prevent heart failure and progression of renal disease. There appears to be sufficient data to justify interest in SGLT2 inhibitors from cardiologists, nephrologists and endocrinologists, and the use of these agents may continue to increase.

Perioperative practitioners may soon find an even more diverse group of patients using these agents. Anaesthetists and perioperative physicians in Australia and New Zealand should be aware of these expanding indications and be vigilant for new approvals in our jurisdictions.

The perioperative risks from this drug class range from relatively mild to severe or life-threatening. Genital tract infections are common and usually mild20 but can be severe and may theoretically increase the risk of prosthetic implant infections47. Genital hygiene advice should be reiterated to any patient planning an at-risk procedure. Surgeons and perioperative physicians should consider routine UTI screening with history and urine dipstick testing for patients at particularly high risk of complications (for example, joint replacement or cardiac surgery), and the need for urinary catheterisation carefully considered.

“Euglycaemic” DKA is a life-threatening complication presenting with normal or near-normal serum glucose23. Although rare in large safety studies, euglycaemic DKA may be more common in the perioperative patient especially if undergoing emergency surgery or in the setting of acute illness, reduced oral intake or underlying poor glycaemic control. All patients using SGLT2 inhibitors should be educated about the risk of euglycaemic DKA and should be taught to develop a “sick-day” medication management plan to withhold the drugs while unwell. Although the incidence of euglycaemic DKA was low and similar to placebo for non-diabetic patients using SGLT2 inhibitors in large phase III trials, it is unclear whether these data apply to the perioperative patient group who may be at greater risk of relative insulin deficiency if fasting or undergoing physiological stress. For now, anaesthetists and perioperative physicians should be aware that patients with all forms of diabetes are at similar risk of this complication. While regulators and industry bodies (including ANZCA and the Australian Diabetes Society) have already advocated careful management during the perioperative phase, evidence and expert opinion continues to emerge and advice is frequently updated. Local and FDA advice is to cease most SGLT2 inhibitors three days prior to non-day surgery or bowel preparation for colonoscopy (day of surgery and two days prior). However, a recent British consensus statement recommends withholding only for two days (day of surgery and one day prior), except in patients requiring prolonged fasting such as for bowel preparation59. In all cases, SGLT2 inhibitors should not be restarted until the resumption of normal oral intake and resolution of acute illness.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

The authors would like to acknowledge the kind contribution by Professor Walter Abhayaratna OAM in reviewing this manuscript.
Anaesthesia for the adult patient with a Fontan circulation undergoing non-cardiac surgery

Reza Yusoff MB BCh, BAO, FCARCSI, FANZCA
Department of Anaesthesia, Sir Charles Gairdner Hospital, Nedlands, Western Australia
Dr Yusoff is a consultant cardiothoracic anaesthetist at Sir Charles Gairdner Hospital and a senior clinical lecturer at Notre Dame Hospital, Fremantle. His interests in paediatric and cardiac anaesthesia has ultimately resulted in passion for adult congenital heart disease. He also runs one lung ventilation workshops at state and international levels.

James Preuss MBBS, FANZCA, MC-CU, BSc (Hon)
Department of Anaesthesia, Sir Charles Gairdner Hospital, Nedlands, Western Australia
Dr Preuss is a consultant cardiac anaesthetist and deputy lead of research for the Department of Anaesthesia, Sir Charles Gairdner Hospital. Dr Preuss has an interest in adult congenital heart disease and completed his fellowship at Barts Heart Centre which is one of the adult congenital heart disease referral centres for London.

Shannon Matzelle, MBBS (Hons), FANZCA
Department of Cardiology, Perth Children’s Hospital, Nedlands, Western Australia
Dr Matzelle is a consultant cardiac anaesthetist at Sir Charles Gairdner Hospital with special interests in anaesthetics for adults with congenital heart disease and periprocedural echocardiography. Dr Matzelle is the co-ordinator for cardiac anaesthesia and periprocedural echocardiography teaching at SCGH.

Cameron Seaman MBBS, FRACP
Department of Cardiology, Perth Children’s Hospital, Nedlands, Western Australia
Dr Seaman is a consultant paediatric cardiologist at Perth Children’s Hospital with subspecialty training in cardiac catheterisation at the University of Alberta, Canada. He has a special interest in single ventricle physiology and transcatheter interventions in children and adults with congenital heart disease.

INTRODUCTION
Due to improvements in the early surgical and medical management of congenital heart disease (CHD), more patients with a range of such conditions are surviving into adulthood, and may require anaesthesia for unrelated surgical procedures or obstetric management. One such group are patients who have undergone a Fontan procedure in early childhood to palliate a congenital single functional ventricle. These patients have a persistent Fontan circulation and will require special considerations during subsequent anaesthesia and surgery, even if this does not directly involve the heart or great vessels. The aim of this article is to describe the Fontan procedure and its more recent modifications, discuss the physiological implications and common complications and provide guidelines for the periprocedural management of patients for non-cardiac surgery with this rare condition.

FONTAN PROCEDURE
The original creation of what is now known as the Fontan circulation was described by Fontan and Baudet in 1971. The novel procedure, performed in three patients with tricuspid atresia, was described by the authors as “a procedure of physiological pulmonary blood flow restoration”. Fifty years later, despite several modifications to the original procedure, this concept is still being used to palliate numerous congenital defects with a functionally single ventricle. In essence, the aim of the Fontan procedure is to separate the systemic and pulmonary venous returns, using the right atrium (RA) as a power source to pump the systemic venous return into the pulmonary artery. This original creation of what is now known as the Fontan circulation was described by Fontan and Baudet in 1971. The novel procedure, performed in three patients with tricuspid atresia, was described by the authors as “a procedure of physiological pulmonary blood flow restoration”. Fifty years later, despite several modifications to the original procedure, this concept is still being used to palliate numerous congenital defects with a functionally single ventricle.

In essence, the aim of the Fontan procedure is to separate the systemic and pulmonary venous returns, restoring the circulation to be “in series”, but without a sub-pulmonary ventricle. It is usually a completion of the original procedure, this concept is still being used to palliate numerous congenital defects with a functionally single ventricle.
A number of modifications has been made since, and the ventriculisation of the right atrium as described in Fontan’s original description has been superseded by other reparative techniques where baffles and conduits are placed to assist the flow of blood to the pulmonary artery. In Australia, between 2010-2018, almost 70 per cent of patients undergoing a Fontan operation received an extracardiac Fontan (see Figure 1C), with the remainder receiving a lateral tunnel Fontan (see Figure 1B).5 The year of a patient’s surgical repair can give a clue to the operative technique: repairs performed up to the year 1990, were mostly AP Fontan, repairs performed in the 1990s would have likely received a lateral tunnel Fontan and almost all repairs after 2000 would have had an extracardiac Fontan5.6

There is recent evidence for the superiority of the extracardiac Fontan, with shorter cardiopulmonary bypass times during its creation, superior haemodynamics, and longer freedom from arrhythmias7. This extra cardiac technique also reduces suture lines in the RA and excludes it from higher venous pressures while avoiding the placement of prosthetic material in the atrial chamber8.

Figure 1. Diagram depicting the various types of Fontan procedures
©2019 American Heart Association, Inc.9

There is recent evidence for the superiority of the extracardiac Fontan, with shorter cardiopulmonary bypass times during its creation, superior haemodynamics, and longer freedom from arrhythmias. This extra cardiac technique also reduces suture lines in the RA and excludes it from higher venous pressures while avoiding the placement of prosthetic material in the atrial chamber.

PREVALENCE OF PATIENTS WITH A FONTAN CIRCULATION IN AUSTRALIA AND NEW ZEALAND

Currently, there are 1622 patients in the Australian and New Zealand (ANZ) Fontan registry, (4.5 per 100,000 population). Population projections from this data suggest that by 2045, the living Fontan population is expected to reach about 3000 patients (7.2 per 100,000 population). The life expectancy of Fontan patients is uncertain, however the longest ANZ survival data is 93 per cent at 20 years for patients with extracardiac Fontan, 88 per cent at 27 years for lateral tunnel Fontan, 67 per cent at 35 years with AP Fontan. The AP technique is an independent risk factor for worse survival when compared to the extracardiac conduit technique, therefore the survival rate at 35 years for extracardiac Fontan is likely to be better than that of the AP Fontan, once this data becomes available.

The primary diagnosis of the participants in the ANZ Fontan Registry in 2019 is represented in Table 1.5

Table 1. Indication for Fontan surgery in Australia
Data from the Australian and New Zealand Fontan Register 20195.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Primary diagnosis</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>%</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tricuspid atresia</td>
<td>355</td>
<td>21.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Double inlet left ventricle</td>
<td>264</td>
<td>16.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Double outlet right ventricle</td>
<td>230</td>
<td>14.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypoplastic left heart syndrome</td>
<td>193</td>
<td>11.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulmonary atresia with intact ventricular septum</td>
<td>147</td>
<td>9.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unbalanced atrioventricular septal defect</td>
<td>137</td>
<td>8.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Congenitally corrected transposition of the great arteries</td>
<td>128</td>
<td>7.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulmonary atresia with ventricular septal defect</td>
<td>104</td>
<td>6.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ebstein's anomaly</td>
<td>34</td>
<td>2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>0.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Missing</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>0.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total</td>
<td>1622</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

THE PHYSIOLOGY OF THE FONTAN CIRCULATION

The complexity of the Fontan system is best considered in terms of 1) The systemic venous return and the cavo-pulmonary connection; 2) the pulmonary circulation; and 3) the single ventricle.

1) The systemic venous return and cavo-pulmonary connection

As a single ventricle provides the power source for both the pulmonary and systemic circulation, the energy it produces dissipates as blood flows through the systemic arterial, and venous systems. Any remaining energy is used to drive blood through the pulmonary vasculature against the resistance of the pulmonary vascular bed. Therefore, the driving force required to maintain pulmonary blood flow depends on the difference in the pressure between the central veins (CVP) and the common atrial pressure (CAP) (also termed the transpulmonary gradient).

The cavo-pulmonary connection has been described as the “bottleneck” in the Fontan system resulting in upstream systemic venous congestion and downstream decreased flow.11,12 The pulmonary impedance to flow results in chronic systemic venous congestion and hypertension and impaired cardiac output. The end result of this bottleneck is the limited ability to mobilise blood and increase the preload. As the cardiac output is highly dependent on preload and pulmonary resistance in Fontan patients, it is imperative that these are kept within the optimal range (Fontan pressure <20mmHg, transpulmonary gradient <5mmHg and pulmonary vascular resistance <2WU/m²) for an optimal circulation.11,13

Patients with a lateral tunnel or extra cardiac Fontan circulation may have a surgically created fenestration, a small hole or “pop-off” that allows deoxygenated blood to bypass the pulmonary circulation to augment cardiac output, particularly in times of high pulmonary vascular resistance. A fenestration will therefore shunt deoxygenated blood to the systemic circulation which will increase the preload and cardiac output, though at the expense of reducing systemic oxygen saturation.

The negative pressure pulmonary pump contributes to the cavo-pulmonary flow to some degree. Research in Fontan patients has demonstrated that the normal negative pressure inspiration created during breathing work contributes significantly to increase systemic venous blood flow and hence cardiac output, up to 30 per cent in one study.14 In addition, a group from London has also demonstrated that the total hepatic venous flow is highly influenced by spontaneous ventilation, and inspiration markedly increases hepatic venous contribution to the total venous return.15

2) The pulmonary circulation

The original publication by Choussat and Fontan et al, commonly known as the “Ten Commandments”, detailed necessary prerequisites to indicate candidacy for the Fontan operation. Selection criteria including a low mean pulmonary arterial pressure and pulmonary vascular resistance (≤15mmHg and <4 Wood units/m² respectively) were predictive of early success.16 The Fontan circulation is unique, as the PVR not only affects the preload,
Fontan patients are at risk of developing an increase in pulmonary vascular resistance (PVR) which can be multifactorial and is thought to be due to the lack of pulsatility in the pulmonary arteries and the modification of the vascular bed due to reduced nitric oxide production in the pulmonary vessel endothelium17. There is also a higher rate of subclinical thromboembolism, with consequent increased resistance to the already low velocity flow in the pulmonary arteries.

The pulmonary blood flow is increased with inspiration and decreased, or even reversed, during the Valsalva manoeuvre15. Therefore, positive pressure ventilation (PPV) may cause haemodynamic instability in the perioperative period by significantly limiting pulmonary blood flow and thus cardiac output. However, the avoidance of PPV must be weighed against inadequate clearance of CO2, as an increase in CO2 markedly increases PVR which will alter flow dynamics in the pulmonary vasculature and also affect cardiac output.

### 3) The single ventricle

The sole ventricle in a Fontan circulation could either be the anatomically right or left ventricle. Initial palliative procedures in single ventricle patients often leave the ventricle exposed to a chronic state of volume overload. As the circulatory needs exceed the capacity of the Fontan, there is a precipitous decrease in preload to the ventricle, with subsequent reduction in chamber size, wall stress and work. Hence, a ventricle that is used to having a large venous return is now deprived of the preload to which it was accustomed.

As the conservation of mass must occur and the ventricular mass has not changed, there will be a noticeable increase in ventricular wall thickness with the sudden reduction in preload described above18. A resulting decrease in end diastolic volume ensues in a ventricle with reduced ability to fill due to abnormalities of early relaxation. This resultant diastolic impairment could further reduce the pulmonary blood flow and increase the pulmonary artery pressure18.

An important implication is that the ventricle in the Fontan circulation no longer controls the cardiac output, but only pumps the blood volume allowed through the Fontan bottleneck2. As such, any isolated increase in ventricular contractility does not lead to an increase in cardiac output at rest.

### COMPLICATIONS OF THE FONTAN CIRCULATION

Arrhythmias are common in the Fontan population and may arise due to the underlying congenital heart disease or as a result of the surgical procedure itself19. Sinoatrial node dysfunction may be attributed to direct damage to the SA node, atrial suture lines and/or atrial dilatation and hypertrophy as a result of chronically elevated filling pressures20. Any non-sinus rhythm is significantly detrimental to cardiac output and results in further increases in filling pressures and therefore should be treated aggressively.

The frequency of arrhythmias is significantly reduced with the extracardiac Fontan with conversion procedures considered for patients with classical Fontan circulations (AP and lateral tunnel) that are experiencing a significant arrhythmia burden.

Heart failure in the Fontan patient is multifactorial but progressive decline in function is generally related to pre-load limitation rather than contractility and afterload factors2. As previously stated, the absence of a sub-pulmonary ventricle leads to systemic venous and potentially pulmonary hypertension due to the lack of pulsatile flow resulting in a diminished ability to deliver the normal venous return and thus pre-load to the systemic ventricle18. In addition, the afterload is increased due to the single ventricle needing to pump against the systemic flow resulting in a diminished ability to deliver the normal venous return and thus pre-load to the systemic but only pumps the blood volume allowed through the Fontan bottleneck10. As such, any isolated increase in ventricular contractility does not lead to an increase in cardiac output at rest.

### PERIOPERATIVE MANAGEMENT OF THE ADULT FONTAN PATIENT

As more Fontan patients survive into adulthood, anaesthetists will be called on more commonly to manage these patients in the non-cardiac surgical setting. Fontan patients carry a higher perioperative risk, not only due to their complex haemodynamics, but also due to the potential for other significant congenital lesions or syndromes that might impact perioperative management, for example, difficult airway. The Fontan specific complications that develop later in life will also impact their perioperative management and increase their perioperative risk.

Procedures on Fontan patients should be performed in centres that are familiar with these patients and have expertise in managing them preoperatively, intraoperatively and postoperatively. Rapid access to multidisciplinary teams that look after such patients is essential. Significant caution and planning is essential when performing procedures on Fontan patients due to the complexity of their physiology and the potential to rapidly decompensate, particularly during general anaesthesia.

The preoperative assessment of the Fontan patient has several special considerations. It is necessary to understand the original pathology with type and timing of previous palliative Fontan formation surgery, subsequent interventions (for example, pacemaker insertion) as well as current Fontan complications and treatment. According to current guidelines29,30, Fontan patients should be reviewed by adult congenital heart disease cardiologists in the outpatient setting annually unless more frequent assessment is clinically indicated. Consultation with the patients’ hospital cardiologists and access to clinic summaries, recent investigations and current treatments are the minimum requirement for the preoperative assessment these patients31.
Patients’ exercise and functional tolerance can be formally measured using cardiopulmonary testing and recent changes are a very useful addition to the assessment. An assessment of cardiac rhythm by clinical examination and electrocardiogram should be performed in all patients, as tachyarrhythmias, especially seen in those with AP Fontan, are poorly tolerated. Many Fontan patients with a history of arrhythmia may have a permanent pacemaker (epicardial or endocardial) inserted. Generator location, its baseline setting and its response to a magnet should be determined. An intra-abdominal pacing box, if present, may interfere with abdominal surgery, so the surgical team need to be made aware of its location. Abnormal oxygen saturations can be suggestive of elevated pulmonary pressure, collateral formation and/or vascular dysfunction, and warrants further investigation.

Preoperative laboratory examination should include assessment of haemoglobin and iron stores as well as renal and hepatic functions (including coagulation studies). Crossed matched blood should be available for procedures where blood loss is anticipated, because multiple previous transfusions may have resulted in the development of antibodies.

Many Fontan patients will be receiving thromboprophylaxis due to the increased risk of thrombosis. Managing these medications will need to be done on a case-by-case basis and in consultation with the managing cardiothoracic or cardiology-related medications that patients may be taking include diuretics, ACE inhibitors, antihypertensives, anti-arrhythmic drugs and pulmonary vasodilators. These should be continued unless recommended by the patient’s cardiologist, although it may be wise to withhold diuretics during the fasting period to avoid dehydration. Fontan patients should avoid prolonged fasting periods and receive intravenous hydration during fasting to reduce thrombosis risk that the high viscosity brings.

**INTRAOPERATIVE MANAGEMENT**

Due to the rarity of the condition, there are few outcome studies to guide management. As a result, the patient’s previous surgery and an understanding of the anatomy will dictate where and what intravenous access and monitoring can be performed. The use of ultrasound imaging may be required to allow for cannulation of a radial artery for arterial blood pressure monitoring. The presence of an arteriovenous fistula (placed to resolve pulmonary arteriovenous malformations), previous Blalock-Taussig shunt or ligation of a subclavian artery with aortic arch repair, may preclude the vessel being used for monitoring.

The Fontan patient requires high venous pressure to drive non-pulsatile flow through the lungs. Large bore venous access is required for most interventions performed on these patients, particularly for procedures that are associated with volume loss through third space (for example, abdominal or thoracic surgery) or blood loss. Caution should be taken to avoid dislodging catheters or opt for arterial or central lines. Advising subclavian or neck central venous lines for monitoring can be performed. The presence of an arteriovenous fistula from the Glenn Shunt to right atrial junction may be significantly altered in these individuals, for example with development of a Glenn Shunt, and as such placing an intravascular device into these connections run the risk of trauma, stenosis and clot formation and should only be done after careful consideration of risks versus benefits.

In terms of operative management and conduct of anaesthesia, the principles of maintaining pulmonary blood flow and therefore cardiac output in the absence of a sub-pulmonary ventricle is the priority. Therefore, maintenance of adequate oxygen saturations and normocarbia should be ensured, with avoidance of acidosis or excessive positive pressure ventilation that could contribute to an increase in pulmonary vascular resistance. Such strategies should include limiting peak inspiratory pressure (<20 cm H₂O), using low respiratory rates (<20 breaths per minute) and short inspiratory times and avoiding excessive post-expiratory pressure.

Maintaining venous return and preload is also crucial in maintaining pulmonary blood flow, so blood and third space losses should be replaced in a timely manner. It is also essential that anaesthetists are aware of surgical techniques that may decrease venous return due to high intracavity pressures such as laparoscopic, and thoracoscopic procedures.

Where possible, early extubation post procedure should be targeted to minimise complications from mechanical ventilation and re-establish negative inspiratory pressure to improve pulmonary blood flow.

**PREGNANT PATIENTS WITH A FONTAN CIRCULATION**

The WHO Classification of Maternal Cardiovascular Risk defines pregnant patients with a Fontan circulation as grade III risk which infers significantly increased mortality and severe morbidity risk. In regards to planning, expert counselling is suggested due to the substantial risk of pregnancy and delivery. Despite this there is an increase in the frequency of patients with Fontan circulation presenting for pregnancy-related care over the past few decades.

Parturients with a Fontan circulation provide additional challenges to the anaesthetist as the changes of pregnancy compound an already unique physiology. It is imperative to implement a detailed multidisciplinary approach to plan for the safest modality of delivery and clearly document the plan in the patients’ medical records. Some physiological changes of pregnancy are favourable to a Fontan patient (for example, reduction in PVR), while increases in preload, afterload and heart rate could be detrimental in patients with an already poorly functioning circulation.

Where vaginal delivery is suitable, an elective induction of labour under controlled conditions is recommended with consideration of invasive blood pressure and ECG monitoring, especially when neonatal anaesthesia is used. The practical planning of induction should plan for the delivery to occur when adequate staffing is available for assistance. Labouring should be performed in the left lateral position to prevent interruption of venous return. Valsalva during the second stage of delivery should be avoided and a passive second stage is more appropriate with the use of forceps and vacuum to facilitate delivery with the minimal possible physiological stress placed on the mother. Cautious early neonatal anaesthesia techniques can facilitate a passive second stage delivery and suppress the Valsalva reflex of fetal pelvic descent.

Caesarean delivery is based on obstetric indications or in Fontan patients with poor ejection fraction, symptomatic heart failure or arrhythmias requiring a more expedient delivery. A review of literature has demonstrated that both neuraxial and general anaesthesia can safely be performed in these patients, with consideration of the vasodilation and reduction in preload that both techniques cause. Pharmacological uterotonic agents should also be used cautiously and in general oxytocin should be administered as an infusion to prevent systemic vasodilatation and impaired venous return that could occur with bolus administration. Furthermore, prostaglandin analogues as well as ergot alkaloids should be avoided due to the increase pulmonary vascular resistance caused by these medications.

Fluid shifts and autotransfusion from the involuting uterus during the 24 hours following delivery is concern and may place additional strain on a failing Fontan circulation and can result in acute heart failure in the post-partum period. Patients should be monitored in the intensive care setting for 24-48 hours following delivery.

**ANTIBIOTIC PROPHYLAXIS**

Current Australian endocarditis prophylactic guidelines recommend endocarditis prophylaxis in congenital heart disease only in patients with an unrepaired cyanotic defect (including palliative surgery) and adults or patients with residual defects close to the site of a prosthetic patch or device. Prophylaxis should only be given for procedures associated with a high risk of bacteraemia, that is, dental, dermatological, respiratory tract, genitourinary and gastrointestinal tract procedures.

**CONCLUSION**

The prevalence of patients with the Fontan procedure and their survival rate have both significantly increased over the past five decades since the procedure was initially introduced. As a result, more patients with Fontan circulation are presenting for non-cardiac surgery or obstetric management. It is essential that anaesthetists caring for these patients have an understanding of the anatomical, physiological, and pathophysiological changes associated with the Fontan circulation, and the effects anaesthesia has on the complex pulmonary and systemic circulation. Procedures on Fontan patients should be performed in centres that are familiar with these patients and have expertise in managing them preoperatively, intraoperatively and postoperatively. Rapid access to multidisciplinary teams that care for Fontan patients is essential.

**REFERENCES**

Anaesthetic considerations in the patient with Eisenmenger syndrome

Michael H Toon OLY BPharm MBBS (Hons) FANZCA
The Prince Charles Hospital, Brisbane, Queensland

Dr Michael Toon is currently a fellow in cardiothoracic anaesthesia at The Prince Charles Hospital. Among his interests are obstetric anaesthesia, adult congenital heart disease and anaesthesia history and heritage. His previous work in pharmacy specialised in chemotherapeutic compounding and toxicology information. He is indebted to those colleagues who gave time and advice through the preparation of this manuscript.

Cameron Graydon MBBS (Hons) FANZCA CHA
Children’s Heart Hospital, Brisbane, Queensland

Dr Cameron Graydon is a paediatric cardiac anaesthetist at Queensland Children's Hospital. He is interested in data and quality improvement and is doing a PhD in learning health systems. His interest in pulmonary hypertension comes from having trained in cardiac anaesthesia at Papworth and Great Ormond Street Hospitals, the UK centres for adult and paediatric vascular diseases. He has worked for the International Children’s Heart Foundation, undertaking many surgeries for patients with congenital cardiac disease and severe pulmonary hypertension.

INTRODUCTION

Eisenmenger syndrome (ES) comprises a severe phenotype of pulmonary hypertension resulting in right to left flow through an intracardiac or aortopulmonary shunt, usually from congenital cardiac disease. It carries a significant risk of perioperative mortality1. The syndrome is named after Dr Victor Eisenmenger who was appointed Court Physician to King Wakie, Duke of Burgundy from 1895 until the archduke’s assassination in 19142. During his career, Dr Eisenmenger published an article titled “Die Angeborenen Defekte der Kammerscheidewand des Herzens” (the congenital septal defects of the heart) in 18973. This paper described a 32-year-old man with cyanosis and episodes of breathlessness who succumbed eventually to haemorrhage4. More than half a century later, in 1958, British cardiologist Dr Paul Wood defined Eisenmenger syndrome as any condition in which there is a connection between the pulmonary and systemic circulations producing pulmonary vascular disease of such severity that right-to-left shunting occurs at atrial, ventricular or aortic level5. The reported prevalence of the syndrome among adult congenital heart disease varies from 1 per cent in the 2007 Dutch CONCOR registry to 5.7 per cent in the Euro Heart Survey in 20056. Advances in diagnostic procedures and congenital heart surgery have improved pulmonary arterial hypertensive (PAH) in most children with congenital heart disease (CHD); however, a significant proportion of treated patients surviving into adulthood may still develop PAH due to ineffective pulmonary artery banding or residual shunts. Unrepaired shunt lesions often persist in developing countries and patients may present with more advanced disease7. Prior to the 1970s approximately 50 per cent of children requiring intervention died within their first year and less than 5 per cent survived into adulthood. Today, more than 75 per cent survive into adulthood8. When Eisenmenger syndrome does develop, repair of the underlying defect is largely contraindicated9 but patients may lead active lives into early adulthood, though survival into the sixth decade is rare10. Eisenmenger syndrome is particularly challenging for the anaesthetist, especially in the obstetric population, where increased physiological demands are already in play11. While the risk of anaesthesia and childbirth are considerable in patients with Eisenmenger syndrome an understanding of the pathophysiology and likely complications can improve their outlook12.

The purpose of this narrative review is to outline the classification, pathophysiology and latest anaesthetic management for this patient population. We also review the current guidelines related to Eisenmenger syndrome.
Lesions accounting for the development of Eisenmenger syndrome can occur at all cardiac levels with the progression often determined by the underlying defect and genetic predisposition. In Wood’s classic series, 80 per cent of cases that were secondary to a ventricular septal defect presented during infancy while 92 per cent of cases, secondary to an atrial septal defect, presented in adult life. Approximately 50 per cent of patients with large unrepaired ventricular septal defects (VSD) (>1.5 cm), 10 per cent of patients with large unrepaired atrial septal defect (ASD) and almost all patients with unrepaired truncus arteriosus are at risk of developing the syndrome. The pathophysiological classification of CHD with systemic-to-pulmonary shunt leading to PAH is outlined in Table 1.

### Table 1. Classification of CHD with systemic-to-pulmonary shunt

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Simple pre-tricuspid shunts (ASD, total or partial unobstructed anomalous pulmonary venous return)</td>
<td>Patient has a defect on the atrial level associated with a functional atrial septal defect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simple post-tricuspid shunts (VSD, PDA)</td>
<td>Patient has a post-tricuspid defect with a shunt from systemic to pulmonary circulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combined shunts</td>
<td>Patient has both pre- and post-tricuspid shunts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complex CHD (AVSD, TA, TGA with VSD +/- PDA)</td>
<td>Patient has complex CHD with both pre- and post-tricuspid shunts</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Clinical manifestations

Eisenmenger syndrome is a multi-system disease, displaying signs and symptoms of central cyanosis, dyspnoea, fatigue, haemoptysis, syncope and right-heart failure with progressive deterioration of function over time (see Table 2). Survival, while less than that of the general population, is better than that of idiopathic PAH in patients of a comparable functional class. Patients with post-tricuspid shunts are more likely to have a severe pulmonary pressure gradient. The underlying pathophysiology involves an adaptive response to increased stretch, shear stress and pressure on the arterioles that protects against heart failure and pulmonary oedema from excessive left to right shunting. The process involves endothelial responses, vasoconstriction, vascular remodelling and an eventual maladaptive pathology with cancer-like angioproliferation, pulmonary arterial thrombosis, platelet dysfunction, media hypertrophy and fibrosis. Vasoconstriction results from an imbalance between vasoconstrictors (for example, nitric oxide and prostacyclin) and constrictors (for example, thromboxane A2 and endothelin) in the pulmonary circulation and expression of vascular endothelial and fibroblast growth factors promotes vascular remodelling and increased intracellular matrix deposition.

Structural changes within the pulmonary vascular bed begin with extension of muscle into normally non-muscular peripheral arteries. Later, media hypertrophy develops in the proximal muscular pulmonary arteries and finally a reduction in the capacitance and cross-sectional area of the pulmonary vasculature results in an increase in pulmonary vascular resistance (PVR) and mean pulmonary artery pressure. The histological progression proposed by Edwards and Heath in 1958 consists of six grades from medial hypertrophy of small muscular arteries to intimal cellular proliferation, concentric fibrosis, plexiform-glomerular proliferations, aneurysms and fibrinoid necrosis. These irreversible changes result in elevation of PVR and shunt reversal.

### PATHOPHYSIOLOGY

The underlying pathophysiology involves an adaptive response to increased stretch, shear stress and pressure on the arterioles that protects against heart failure and pulmonary oedema from excessive left to right shunting. The process involves endothelial responses, vasoconstriction, vascular remodelling and an eventual maladaptive pathology with cancer-like angioproliferation, pulmonary arterial thrombosis, platelet dysfunction, media hypertrophy and fibrosis. Vasoconstriction results from an imbalance between vasoconstrictors (for example, nitric oxide and prostacyclin) and constrictors (for example, thromboxane A2 and endothelin) in the pulmonary circulation and expression of vascular endothelial and fibroblast growth factors promotes vascular remodelling and increased intracellular matrix deposition.

Structural changes within the pulmonary vascular bed begin with extension of muscle into normally non-muscular peripheral arteries. Later, media hypertrophy develops in the proximal muscular pulmonary arteries and finally a reduction in the capacitance and cross-sectional area of the pulmonary vasculature results in an increase in pulmonary vascular resistance (PVR) and mean pulmonary artery pressure. The histological progression proposed by Edwards and Heath in 1958 consists of six grades from medial hypertrophy of small muscular arteries to intimal cellular proliferation, concentric fibrosis, plexiform-glomerular proliferations, aneurysms and fibrinoid necrosis. These irreversible changes result in elevation of PVR and shunt reversal.

### Clinical relevance

Over the past decades, there has been a shift in the cause of death from primarily peri-procedural and haemoptysis related to (in descending order) heart failure, infection, sudden cardiac death, thrombosis and haemorrhage.

### Oxygen saturation at rest

Oxygen saturation at rest, absence of sinus rhythm and pericardial effusion identified a high-risk subgroup of patients. Interestingly, functional status (NYHA class), RV function (as assessed by tricuspid annular plane systolic excursion [TAPSE] on trans-thoracic echocardiography), routine laboratory data and use of pulmonary arterial vasodilators provided no additional useful prognostic information.

### Table 1. Classification of CHD with systemic-to-pulmonary shunt

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Simple pre-tricuspid shunts (ASD, total or partial unobstructed anomalous pulmonary venous return)</td>
<td>Patient has a defect on the atrial level associated with a functional atrial septal defect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Simple post-tricuspid shunts (VSD, PDA)</td>
<td>Patient has a post-tricuspid defect with a shunt from systemic to pulmonary circulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Combined shunts</td>
<td>Patient has both pre- and post-tricuspid shunts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complex CHD (AVSD, TA, TGA with VSD +/- PDA)</td>
<td>Patient has complex CHD with both pre- and post-tricuspid shunts</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


The incidence of PAH in pre-tricuspid shunts (ASD and anomalies of pulmonary veins) which induce predominantly a volume overload on the right ventricle and on the pulmonary circulation, is lower than those of post-tricuspid shunts which produce a combined pressure and volume overload (mainly large VSD, PDA and atrio-ventricular septal defects). Patients with Down syndrome have a propensity to develop pulmonary hypertension and as a result contribute disproportionately to the incidence of ES, though with early screening and treatment this has decreased. A recent multivariate analysis found that age, pre-tricuspid shunt, lower
The key to the relative longevity of Eisenmenger syndrome patients compared to other forms of PAH lies in the unique physiology related to the shunt and adaptation of the right ventricle. Patients with post-tricuspid (ventricular and aortopulmonary shunts) appear to be more resistant to right ventricular failure and those lesions with a propensity to earlier development of PAH tend towards better maintained RV function, for example atrioventricular septal defects. This could be because the regression of ventricular muscle and capillarisation that would normally occur in post-foetal life in response to lowered pulmonary vascular pressures does not occur and the ventricular off-loading through the shunt helps preserve RV adaptation. The right-to-left shunt provides a mechanism for paradoxical emboli to the systemic circulation, including septic emboli, which does not occur and the ventricular off-loading through the shunt helps preserve RV adaptation. The definitive treatment for Eisenmenger syndrome remains closure of the shunt and lung transplantation or combined heart and lung transplantation, management has evolved over the last several decades from symptomatic treatment, many of which may have proven deleterious, to targeted therapies for pulmonary vasoactive disease.

Table 2. Summary of complications of Eisenmenger syndrome by system (adapted from Chaix et al 2019)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cardiovascular system</th>
<th>Respiratory system</th>
<th>Gastrointestinal system</th>
<th>Haematological system</th>
<th>Urinary system</th>
<th>Neurological system</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Atrial septal defect</td>
<td>Pulmonary arterial</td>
<td>Gallstones (secondary</td>
<td>Haemorrhagic</td>
<td>Hyperuricaemia</td>
<td>Stroke and trans-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valvular heart disease</td>
<td>thrombus</td>
<td>to erythrocyte turnover)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ischaemic attack</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Endocarditis</td>
<td>Pulmonary arterial aneurysms and rupture</td>
<td>Erythrocytosis</td>
<td>Thrombocytopenia</td>
<td>Hyperuricaemia</td>
<td>Brain abscess</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Systolic and diastolic right and left ventricular dysfunction</td>
<td>Haemoptysis</td>
<td>Iron deficiency</td>
<td>Hyperviscosity syndrome*</td>
<td>Gout</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulmonary arterial aneurysms and rupture</td>
<td>Veno-venous collaterals and fistula</td>
<td>Hyperviscosity syndrome*</td>
<td>Thrombosis</td>
<td>Gout</td>
<td>Stroke and trans-ischaemic attack</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haemoptysis</td>
<td>Gastrointestinal</td>
<td>Deficiency of Vitamin K dependent factors, factor V and von Willebrand factor</td>
<td>Deficiency of Vitamin K dependent factors, factor V and von Willebrand factor</td>
<td>Renal Failure</td>
<td>Brain abscess</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Veno-venous collaterals and fistula</td>
<td>system</td>
<td>Increased bleeding tendency</td>
<td>Increased bleeding tendency</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Endocrine system**

- Neuroendocrine tumours; phaeochromocytomas, gangliomas and neuroblastomas

*Symptoms of hyperviscosity syndrome: headaches, dizziness, syncope, tinnitus, diplopia, blurred vision, amniorrhaxis, paraesthesia, mental fatigue, restless legs.

**TREATMENT**

Patients with Eisenmenger syndrome should be followed by a dedicated congenital cardiologist clinic having access to dedicated specialists and a multi-disciplinary team including psychologists. While the definitive treatment for Eisenmenger syndrome remains closure of the shunt and lung transplantation or combined heart and lung transplantation, management has evolved over the last several decades from symptomatic treatment, many of which may have proven deleterious, to targeted therapies for pulmonary vasoactive disease.

Pharmacological treatment historically involved digitals, diuretics, anti-arrhythmics and anticoagulants, none of which significantly modified the natural history of the disease. With the recognition that many patients with Eisenmenger syndrome maintain some degree of pulmonary vasoreactivity, medical therapies (endothelin receptor antagonists; phosphodiesterase inhibitors; inhalational nitric oxide and prostacyclin; calcium channel blockers) aimed at reducing elevated pulmonary vascular resistance have been adopted from clinical experience in treating patients with pulmonary arterial hypertension. While controversial and associated with limited clinical evidence, these targeted therapies have even permitted correction of the underlying defect in selected patients. Closure of the right-to-left shunt has been associated with improved exercise capacity, functional class haemodynamics, quality of life and sometimes survival. Selexipag, a novel oral prostacyclin analogue may be a promising agent.

Consideration can be made for preoperative phlebotomy for autologous blood donation if the haematocrit level exceeds 65 per cent. Phlebotomy with isovolaemic replacement by removal of 250-500ml of blood over an hour while infusing 750ml to 1000ml of saline is usually performed for patients with moderate to severe symptoms of hyperviscosity, including headache, tinnitus, dizziness, paraesthesia, myalgia and poor concentration. Routine phlebotomy can otherwise cause iron deficiency and the microcytic erythrocyte, being less deformable, induces higher viscosity then normocytic erythrocytes at comparable haematocrits. Consideration can be made for preoperative phlebotomy for autologous blood donation if the haematocrit level is above 65 per cent.

Targeted pharmacotherapies remain under-prescribed in Eisenmenger syndrome. These therapies offer improvements in exercise capacity, functional class haemodynamics, quality of life and sometimes survival. Endothelin-receptor antagonists bosentan, sitaxsentan and ambrisentan are selective for the endothelin A receptor while macitentan is a dual antagonist for endothelin A and B receptors. Sildenafil and tadalafil are oral phosphodiesterase-5 inhibitors that augment the effects of nitric oxide by raising intracellular cyclic guanosine monophosphate levels. They have been associated with antiproliferative effects on vascular smooth muscle and improve contractility in the hypertrophied right ventricular myocardium. Targeting the prostacyclin pathway is difficult in patients with Eisenmenger syndrome. Intravenous administration carries the risks of infection, thrombosis and paradoxical emboli, nevertheless epoprostenol has been shown to exert favourable effects on haemodynamics. Selexipag, a novel oral prostacyclin analogue may be a promising agent.
Vaccine strategies are recommended for the prevention of influenza and pneumococcal pneumonia and diuretics should be used for those showing signs of right heart failure with fluid retention. In one study, reports suggest that the presence of structural CHD did not necessarily increase the risk and morbidity from COVID-19 infection. Susceptibility to severe COVID-19 infection may be based on physiological factors, not the complexity of the underlying defect, and are concordant with general population studies showing increased risk for age, male sex, diabetes and renal insufficiency49. Recent studies have found that while COVID-19 mortality in most adults with congenital heart disease is commensurate with the general population and risk factors derived from the general population (age, overweight, diabetes, renal insufficiency and general and multiple comorbidities) are equally important for determining outcome, unrepaired cyanotic defects or patients with Eisenmenger syndrome define a subgroup at increased risk for complicated disease course defined as hospitalisation requiring ventilation, inotropic support or a fatal outcome72,73. Targeted preventative measures are indicated for these patients49.

In 2018 the American Heart Association/American College of Cardiology (AHA/ACC) introduced a classification system based on a combination of anatomical and physiological characteristics to stratify patient functional status and haemodynamic issues. The ACC recommends that patients at an advanced, decompensated physiological condition (physiological state C or D), considered the highest risk cardiac patients, be prioritised for vaccination49. There is no need to test if one vaccine is preferred over another despite the low risk of vaccine-induced thrombocytopenia; however, The Australian Technical Advisory Group on Immunisation (ATAGI) currently recommends the Pfizer COVID-19 vaccine for adults aged 60 years or younger49.

PREOPERATIVE CONSIDERATIONS

The perioperative mortality in this patient population is estimated at 4-18 per cent, therefore a multi-disciplinary approach to patient assessment must be undertaken to evaluate fitness for the proposed procedure. Preoperative evaluation involves experienced physicians in these types of complex cases47. Where possible, surgeries should be limited to those essential procedures and performed in specialised centres by experienced clinicians. The risks and benefits of the procedure should be thoroughly considered; the risks of anaesthesia, surgery and post-operative recovery should be adequately communicated to the patient and/or caregivers to allow appropriate informed consent49.

Preoperatively, an understanding should be attained of the type of cardiac defect, directionality of shunt flow, cardiomyopathy, pulmonary artery pressures, resting oxygen saturation (SpO₂), cardiac function and complications related to prior procedures49. Cardiac imaging including echocardiograms, which are mandated hospitalisation requiring ventilation, inotropic support or a fatal outcome72,73. Targeted preventative measures are indicated for these patients49.

The purpose of this section is to highlight the general principles of management and comment on newer techniques and technologies which may improve anaesthetic-related morbidity and mortality.

The key principle in anaesthetic management is to maintain the balance between systemic vascular resistance (SVR) and pulmonary vascular resistance (PVR). Factors that decrease SVR or increase PVR, such as hypovolaemia, hypoxaemia, hypercarbia, acidosis and sympathetic stimulation should be avoided49. Monitored anaesthetic care (MAC), described as a specific anaesthesia service for diagnostic or therapeutic purposes performed under local anaesthesia along with sedation and analgesia titrated to a level that preserves spontaneous breathing and airway reflexes49, is frequently considered due to a perception of increased safety; however, one recent institutional experience reported 67 per cent of oxygen desaturations and both deaths encountered in their series occurring during MAC49.

Laparoscopic surgery poses the threats of increasing end-tidal carbon dioxide through peritoneal insufflation, increases in pulmonary artery pressure and limitations on ventilation with the possibility of gas embolisation49. Additional causes of decompenated heart failure may include high volume blood loss, exacerbation of pulmonary hypertension, right ventricular (RV) systolic dysfunction and venous air embolism (which could manifest as pulmonary embolus or an already strained RV), or paradoxical air embolism (PAE) entering the coronary or cerebral circulation49. Blood loss can precipitate systemic arterial hypertension and increased right to left shunting, leading to reduced oxygen delivery and impaired perfusion pressure to the right ventricle. The impact is compounded when a higher demand on the ventricle from pulmonary hypertension due to the deleterious combination of hypotension and Bradycardia, especially with bolus dosing49. Attention to lung mechanics in order to avoidate llaxis and high intrathoracic pressures when using intermittent positive pressure ventilation is necessary to avoid deleterious effects on PVR49.

The role of invasive monitoring must be balanced against the increased complications from invasion, vascular damage, paradoxical embolisation, endocarditis and ventricular arrhythmias. Pulmonary artery catheters (PACs) pose the additional risk of pulmonary arterial rupture. In the case of a PAC, thrombolysis determinations of cardiac output may be misleading due to the type and degree of shunt49.

Transoesophageal echocardiography, as an emerging monitoring modality in noncardiac surgery, should be considered where equipment and expertise in obtaining and interpreting images exists49.

Newer technologies including ClearSight™ may be useful adjuncts to standard monitoring. ClearSight™ is an invasive arterial blood pressure monitor based on two methods, the volume clamp method to continuously measure blood pressure and a physical method for initial and frequent calibration49. In a study involving 400 procedures, catheter-related complications were reduced in patients monitored with the ClearSight™ device, although the technology resulted in slight differences relative to current, commercially available, invasive approaches the bias was found to be clinically acceptable. Both invasive and non-invasive approaches were found to have the same percentage error when compared to cardiac output measurements from catheter-based techniques. However, limited clinical experience has been reported for its use in CHD to date49.

INVESTIGATIONS

Non-invasive haemoglobin (Hb) was found to be unreliable compared to laboratory derived values in children with congenital heart disease and particularly in the cyanotic group with the error in co-oximetry derived Hb increasing as oxygen saturation decreases49. Caution is required for accurate measurement of coagulation parameters, haematocrit and blood glucose. When the haematocrit is above 55 per cent the Hb to anticoagulant is excessive for the plasma fraction and will result in inaccuracy necessitating adjustment of the amount of anticoagulant to maintain an acceptable ratio49. Measurement of haematocrit via micro-haematocrit centrifugation results in plasma trapping and falsely raised values requiring use of automated electronic particle counts. Finally, blood glucose measurement can be falsely lowered by the high red blood cell metabolic activity unless a fluoride tube is used.

PREGNANCY

Major hazards encountered by the pregnant patient with Eisenmenger syndrome are increased metabolic and cardiac output demands, peripheral vasodilatation and high placental flow precipitating a fall in systemic pressure, and the heightened risk of thromboembolism to the pulmonary or systemic circulation. Other risks include increased blood volume and decreased cardiac output. The decreased haematocrit due to gestation occurs peripartum where large volume shifts and exhaustion of cardiac reserve combine for the highest risk of cardiopulmonary compensation and death. The desire to utilise uninterrupted pharmacologic thromboembolism prophylaxis has led to some reports advocating for avoidance of central neuraxial blockade.
however epidural anaesthesia facilitates the primary goals of a short labour, and avoidance of strenuous expulsive efforts (forceps or vacuum-assisted delivery) leaving the parturient free from pain, anxiety and sympathetic stimulation. The recommended mode of delivery is vaginally with a higher risk of death for caesarean section.

Avoidance of uterotonic (for example, oxytocin) bolus dosing has been advised due to the risk of changes in SVR, while misoprostol and carboprost should be avoided because of pulmonary vasoconstriction. Many reported cases utilise a slow intravenous infusion of oxytocin post-partum to ameliorate the vasodilatory effect. Considerations also include the timing and place of delivery with some reports advocating for the use of a cardiac operating theatre in high-risk cases due to the increased familiarity of staff with monitoring equipment and drugs utilised. This is obviously not practical in many centres. Close collaboration with obstetric and paediatric colleagues should dictate the timing of delivery with inductions at early gestations of 33 weeks considered when the risk of allowing the pregnancy to continue can outweigh the risk of prematurity or prolonged labour.

Both veno-venous (V-V) and veno-arterial (V-A) extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO) has been described with satisfactory results in pregnant Eisenmenger patients.

Interestingly, due to the reversal of the shunt, oxygenated blood in a V-V ECMO circuit is directly introduced to the systemic circulation, which in the case of pregnancy can maximise foetal oxygenation.

PHARMACOLOGICAL ALTERATIONS

Haemodynamic alterations in Eisenmenger syndrome may be variable pharmacokinetic effects in several important anaesthetic drugs. Right-to-left shunting may prolong inhalational induction time particularly for relatively insoluble agents and intravenous induction may be hastened due to these agents bypassing the lungs. As blood is shunted past the lungs, this not only decreases arm-brain circulation time but removes the potential binding of drugs to the pulmonary endothelium. This pulmonary circulation normally buffers the rate of drug rise for certain substances and may lead to increased fraction in the systemic circulation.

This effect is seen with some local anaesthetics, opioids such as fentanyl and to a lesser extent, intravenous anaesthetics, general anaesthetics. Pulmonary extraction of lignocaine is in the order of 50 per cent and should be considered in the context of intravenous administration and maximum doses. Other local anaesthetics are effected to a lesser extent with prilocaine (40 per cent), mepivacaine (20 per cent) and bupivacaine (12 per cent) demonstrating reduced pulmonary first-pass extraction ratios.

With respect to opioids, pulmonary uptake of fentanyl is great and in the vicinity of 75 per cent and the disappearance from the lungs biphasic with half-lives of 0.22 and 5.78 minutes. This is seen less with alfentanil which has a pulmonary extraction ratio of only 10 per cent and even less for morphine which is limited to 4.7 per cent during loading and steady-state conditions. The first pass pulmonary retention of a single dose of propofol is 28 per cent while thiopental has a first-pass retention of half this at 14 per cent. Coupled with the reduced arm-brain circulation time, caution should be exercised in the administration of propofol in the presence of a significant right-to-left shunt.

There is no substantial pulmonary uptake of muscle relaxants.

POSTOPERATIVE CONSIDERATIONS

Postoperative considerations include venous thromboembolism prophylaxis in the form of mechanical devices, compression stockings and early ambulation; the appreciation and the management of postoperative thrombotic and bleeding diatheses; and meticulous attention to fluid balance, sepsis or inflammatory responses, particularly to avoid postural hypotension and secondary increase in right to left shunting. Caution use of analgesia precipitating hypoventilation and a decrease in afterload should be exercised with a low threshold for observation in an intensive care or high dependency unit setting for patients with a heightened opioid analgesic requirements.

Cardiology consultation for management of pulmonary vasodilator therapy should be sought in the event of prolonged interruption of administration such as periods of invasive ventilation or a postoperative ileus with 50 per cent of patients having a decreased right ventricular output (for example, sildenafil) or inhaled nitric oxide. Blood pressure targets post-operatively should be maintained at the patient’s usual resting values preemptively with a suitable environment for monitoring if instability is expected.

CONCLUSION

While becoming increasingly rare in high income countries due to increased rates of detection and treatment of abnormal or persistent circulatory communications, Eisenmenger syndrome remains a regular and risky dilemma for elective and emergent anaesthetic care. An understanding of the condition, an awareness of the anticipated disruptions, and the principles underlying maintenance of the perturbed cardiovascular physiology assist in promoting successful perioperative management.

REFERENCES


Right ventricular failure – when the right heart goes wrong

Richella-Lea Falland MBBS FANZCA MClinEd
Cardiothoracic Anaesthesia Fellow, Greenlane Department of Cardiothoracic and ORL Anaesthesia, and Cardiothoracic and Vascular Intensive Care Unit, Auckland City Hospital, New Zealand

Dr Richella-Lea Falland graduated from the University of Adelaide and completed her training in anaesthesia in hospitals throughout South Australia. She is currently undertaking a one-year fellowship in cardiothoracic anaesthesia and intensive care at Auckland City Hospital. She has developing interests in cardiothoracic and vascular anaesthesia, transoesophageal echocardiography and the management of complex cardiac patients presenting for non-cardiac surgery.

Kate Drummond MBBS FANZCA MMed
Senior Staff Specialist, Royal Adelaide Hospital, South Australia, Specialist Anaesthetist, Pulse Anaesthetics, Adelaide, South Australia, and Clinical Senior Lecturer, University of Adelaide Medical School, Faculty of Health and Medical Sciences, Adelaide, South Australia

Dr Kate Drummond is a staff specialist anaesthetist at the Royal Adelaide Hospital and works in private practice with Pulse Anaesthetics. She has a master’s degree in perioperative medicine and her special areas of interest include perioperative blood management with a focus on blood conservation, cardiothoracic anaesthesia and transoesophageal echocardiography.

Nicole Wylie MBBS FANZCA MMed
Staff Specialist Paediatric Anaesthetist, Women’s and Children’s Hospital, South Australia, Clinical Lecturer, University of Adelaide Medical School, Faculty of Health and Medical Sciences, Adelaide, South Australia

Dr Nicole Wylie works as a staff specialist at the Women’s and Children’s Hospital in Adelaide, South Australia. Her practice is primarily in paediatric anaesthesia with a special interest in anaesthesia for congenital heart disease. She also has an interest in pharmacology and undertakes research in this area in the paediatric population.

INTRODUCTION

The importance of the right ventricle (RV) was first recognised in 1616, when it was described by Sir William Harvey. However, investigation of the RV remained overshadowed by the study of the left ventricle (LV) until the mid-20th century when cardiac surgeons began to recognise the importance of right-sided heart function in open heart surgery. These early endeavours to explore the RV expanded into the fields of cardiology, critical care medicine, and perioperative medicine. The sum of those efforts characterises what we now know about how the RV plays a pivotal and active role in the passage of blood from the venous system to the pulmonary system. Despite substantial advances in knowledge, significant limitations remain in our knowledge of how to manage patients who present with RV dysfunction.

Right heart failure has been defined as “a clinical syndrome [that arises] due to an alteration of structure and/or function of the right heart circulatory system [and] leads to suboptimal delivery of blood flow (high or low) to the pulmonary circulation, and/or elevated venous pressures – at rest or with exercise”. This article reviews the anatomy of the RV and the pathophysiology of RV failure. The assessment and management of this lesser-known form of heart failure will be discussed with an emphasis on the perioperative period for patients undergoing non-cardiac surgery.

ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY

The RV is the most anterior chamber of the heart. Lying immediately behind the sternum, it is distinct from the LV in terms of its function, physiology and anatomy. It is a thin walled, low-pressure chamber which acts to maintain pulmonary perfusion pressure and to deliver deoxygenated-mixed venous blood to the pulmonary vasculature for gas exchange. It also maintains low systemic venous pressure which prevents systemic organ congestion.

Structurally, it differs from the LV both macroscopically and microscopically. Macroscopically, the RV consists of a thin free wall (2-3mm thick at end diastole) and the interventricular septum (see Figure 1). There are three significant anatomical components: the inlet, consisting of the tricuspid valve, chordae tendinae and papillary muscles; the trabeculated apical myocardium; and the infundibulum or conus, the smooth myocardial outflow region. When viewed in a longitudinal cross section, the RV appears triangular, whereas in a transverse cross-section it has a crescent shape (see Figure 1).
Perfusion of the RV is predominantly via the right coronary artery (RCA) and its branches. In 80 per cent of the population the coronary circulation is “right dominant”. In these cases, the RCA also supplies the inferior wall of the LV as well as the posterior third of the interventricular septum, via the posterior descending artery (PDA) branch. The other 20 per cent of the population has a “left dominant” circulation, wherein the PDA branch arises from the left coronary artery (LCA). In patients with a left dominant circulation, the RCA supplies the RV only and LV perfusion is completely independent of this vessel.

Perfusion of the RV via the coronary arteries occurs throughout both diastole and systole due to the lower pressures observed in the right heart chambers. This contrasts with LV perfusion, which occurs primarily in diastole due to the higher pressures in LV systole and contraction. The lower pressures mean RV stroke work is only 25 per cent of that of the LV, despite the RV ejecting the same cardiac output. RV oxygen demand is also correspondingly lower.

The overall function of the RV is influenced by preload, afterload, and contractility, as well as by pericardial restriction, heart rhythm, and interaction with the left ventricle. The initial RV response to changes in preload or afterload is well described by the Frank-Starling mechanism, with increasing cardiac output achieved by escalating contractility in response to greater myocardial stretch. In the presence of persistent higher loading conditions, the RV is subject to the Anrep effect. In this situation, over 10-15 minutes of sustained increase in stretch, inotropy continuously rises due to an increase in calcium responsiveness within the myofilament. The Starling curve of the RV is flatter than that of the LV and consequently there is a lower variation of RV contractility over a wide range of filling pressures. This means the RV can tolerate a wider and higher range of preload conditions before it fails.

PATHOPHYSIOLOGY OF RIGHT HEART DYSFUNCTION

RV dysfunction can occur due to pressure overload (increased afterload), volume overload (increased preload), or impaired myocardial contractility (see Table 1). Due to its structural characteristics and low muscle mass, a more compliant RV can typically tolerate increases in right-sided venous return (preload) but is less able to tolerate sudden increases in afterload.

Table 1. Causes of acute RV failure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acute left ventricular failure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Right ventricular ischaemia/infarction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acute pulmonary oedema</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronic lung disease/hypoxia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acute lung injury or respiratory distress syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sepsis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chronic pulmonary hypertension</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pericardial disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arrhythmias</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Congenital heart disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valvulopathies (tricuspid regurgitation; pulmonary stenosis)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardiomyopathies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Myocarditis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardiac surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haematological disorders (for example, sickle cell syndrome)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Effect of higher afterload

When RV afterload increases over a prolonged period, the RV responds with progressive hypertrophy and increasing contractility in order to try and maintain adequate cardiac output. A common cause of this is chronic pulmonary hypertension. However, when compensation mechanisms are exhausted, decompensation occurs.
In contrast, acute increases in RV afterload result in the short-term RV compensation of increased end-diasstolic volume (dilation) and contractility. This occurs in acute pulmonary thromboembolic events. However, acute compensations are often insufficient to maintain ejection from the thinner-walled, less-contractile RV in the face of the suddenly increased afterload. Thus, RV dysfunction can rapidly develop. This can also occur in clinical situations when an otherwise healthy RV is required to acutely generate mean pressures exceeding 40mmHg.

**Figure 3. Pathophysiology of acute RV failure**

**Effect of higher preload**

Chronic RV volume overload eventually leads to RV dilation and heart failure. RV dilation can reduce LV preload in three ways. Firstly, the inability to generate sufficient pressure to eject blood through the pulmonary circulation limits left atrial filling. Secondly, an enlarging RV results in an elevated end-diasstolic pressure that eventually exceeds LV end-diastolic pressure. This causes compression and/or lessening of LV filling and ejection. Thirdly, tricuspid annular dilation causes valvular regurgitation (TR) and, with each cardiac contraction, reduces forward flow through the pulmonary vasculature.

The now-dilated and higher-pressure RV chamber causes LV compression as the RV interventricular septum bulges into it. This creates a flattened (or D-shaped) septum, in a phenomenon known as ventricular interdependence, resulting in relative under filling of the LV. This distortion of the LV has harmful effects on the efficiency of LV contraction, which further contributes to a fall in cardiac output.

**Ischaemia**

The dilated RV is at added risk of ischaemia and, with this, further impairment of contractility. Increased RV end-diasstolic pressure impedes coronary blood flow due to a reduced perfusion gradient between the aortic root and the right heart chambers. Consequently, a dilated or distended RV is predisposed to hypotension-related ischaemia.

Furthermore, RV dysfunction causes increased right atrial pressures. This results in a decrease in systemic venous return which is secondary to a lower pressure gradient between the MSFP and RAP, thus precipitating a fall in systemic venous return.

Ultimately, RV dysfunction, regardless of the underlying aetiology, will lead to the development of RV dilation (with used to assess TR), systolic and diastolic failure, and a fall in cardiac output of both ventricles causing systemic hypotension. End-organ hypo-perfusion, and systemic venous congestion eventually occur, with subsequent multi-organ dysfunction (see Figure 3*).

**ASSESSMENT OF THE RIGHT HEART**

**Clinical assessment**

The clinical manifestations of RV failure are non-specific, but it does cause signs of systemic venous congestion. Such signs include increased jugular venous pressure, peripheral oedema, and/or a hepatoglossus reflex. Signs of RV dysfunction can be present and include a third heart sound and/or a murmur of TR, as well as signs of a low cardiac output state which include hypotension, oliguria, and/or impaired renal function may represent evidence of liver congestion or end-organ hypo-perfusion from inadequate cardiac output.

An ECG may be normal; however, evidence of right axis deviation, right bundle branch block, and right ventricular hypertrophy may be present. The S1/Q3/T3 triad of RV strain may also be present in the form of a large S wave in lead I, a Q wave in lead III and an inverted T wave in lead III, especially if the underlying context is acute pulmonary embolism (PE) (up to 10 per cent of patients).

**Cardiac biomarkers**

Elevated natriuretic peptides and cardiac troponin T are non-specific for right heart pathology. However, elevations in these biomarkers can correlate with reduced RV function after a PE when there is also pulmonary hypertension, or following congenital cardiac surgery. Currently, there are no RV-specific biomarkers available for clinical use; however, there is research in this area including the use of these biomarkers for perioperative risk stratification in cardic and non-cardiac surgery. Early studies into the inflammatory biomarkers tumorgenicity 2/soluble ST2 (ST2/sST2) and galectin-3 (GT-3) have demonstrated a correlation with RV dysfunction in some disease-specific states, including pulmonary hypertension and mechanical support.

**Echocardiographic assessment**

The anterior location of the right heart makes transthoracic echocardiography (TTE) an ideal modality to assess RV anatomy and function. Transoesophageal echocardiography (TOE) can also be useful; however, the distance from the probe to relevant structures and a poor Doppler alignment can limit TOE assessment. Importantly, qualitative assessment methods commonly used to assess the RV have only been validated for TTE.

The most used markers of RV function in TTE are tricuspid annular plane systolic excursion (TAPSE), fractional area change (FAC), and the myocardial performance (Tei) index. Other measures include tissue Doppler parameters and tricuspid regurgitant (TR) jet velocity. Often, these parameters are recorded on the TTE report, but little is mentioned about RV function in the report summary. As such, it is important for clinicians to have some basic understanding of the normal values for these parameters to make up their own mind.

TAPSE is a measure of how far the tricuspid annular plane moves downwards (longitudinally) towards the apex of the RV in systole and is an excellent indicator of RV systolic function. As most RV contraction occurs via the longitudinal fibres, TAPSE offers a simple measure of RV function. However, this method assumes that displacement of the basal and adjacent segments is representative of function in other RV regions. A normal value is greater than 16mm.

FAC is a useful measure of overall RV systolic function. Measured in a four-chamber view, it is calculated as the percentage change in area between systole and diastole. A FAC less than 35 per cent is indicative of RV systolic dysfunction.

The Tei index is less commonly used. It is also known as the myocardial performance index (MPI). It is dimensionless and calculated as the sum of isovolumetric contraction time and isovolumetric relaxation time divided by the ejection time. It is a useful marker as it incorporates elements from both systolic and diastolic phases. However, the Tei index relies on a constant R-R interval, so is not useful in atrial fibrillation. Values are obtained using pulsed wave Doppler or tissue Doppler techniques. Normal values are less than 0.40 by pulsed Doppler and less than 0.55 by tissue Doppler.

Tissue Doppler imaging (TDI) uses pulsed wave tissue Doppler and colour-coded tissue Doppler to measure the longitudinal velocity of excursion of certain regions of the RV in systole – mostly common the tricuspid annulus and the basal free wall segment. The systolic velocity is reported as S’, with normal values varying by Doppler type and region. An S’ less than 10 cm/sec should raise suspicion for abnormal RV systolic function.

Measurement of the velocity of TR jet, if present, permits estimation of RV systolic pressure (RVSP) and with the addition of RAP, this measure is equivalent to pulmonary artery systolic pressure (aPAP) in the absence of pulmonary stenosis.

Further review of RV structure and function can be performed using imaging of RV dimensions and geometry, septal positioning and motion, assessment of diastolic function, and strain assessment.
Pre-operative TTE assessment has been shown to predict preoperative cardiac complications in non-cardiac surgery. Lower TASPE and an increased Tei index have predictive value, whereas FAC, ePAP and tissue Doppler parameters do not.12

Bedside TTE or intraoperative TOE can be used to assess acute deterioration of RV function or in unexplained haemodynamic instability and to identify the underlying aetiology. Conditions affecting the RV that can be diagnosed or excluded include acute PE, cardiac tamponade, RV myocardial infarction, acute LV or LV dysfunction, and acute valvulopathies.9

Cardiac MRI (CMR)

Due to the complex geometry of the RV, CMR is the most accurate non-invasive technique to assess the RV. Assessments can include RV mass, volume, and ejection fraction as well as scar burden, myocardial strain, and perfusion and pulmonary pulsatility. Normal RV ejection fractions (RVEF) are higher than LVEF as RV volumes are smaller. A higher percentage of end diastolic volume needs to be ejected to maintain the equivalent stroke volume and cardiac output. RVEF varies between 47-76%.4

Invasive haemodynamic assessment

Pulmonary artery catheters or right heart catheters can be used to assess RV failure when aetiology is unclear or there is treatment resistance. A pulmonary artery catheter (Swan-Ganz) can be “floated” at the bedside or otherwise inserted in the cardiac catheterisation laboratory while performing left heart catheterisation and coronary artery angiography. Accurate assessment of right and left atrial pressure, cardiac output, pulmonary artery pressures and resistance, and mixed venous oxygenation levels – SvO₂ (surrogate ScO₂) – can also be determined.11 While right heart catheter studies are the gold standard invasive assessment of the RV, the procedure is more invasive than echocardiography and is not without hazard.12 Thus, pulmonary artery catheters are generally reserved for cases where the benefit of having the additional information they provide outweighs the risks involved.

PERIOPERATIVE MANAGEMENT OF CHRONIC RIGHT HEART FAILURE OR THE RIGHT VENTRICLE AT RISK

General principles

The management principles of patients at risk of perioperative RV dysfunction include identifying and treating reversible causes. Key concerns are controlling contributing factors (hypoxaemia, hypercapnia, anaemia, acidemia, sepsis, arrhythmias), optimising fluid volume status, maintaining adequate RV perfusion pressure, maintaining positive inotropy, and using pulmonary vasodilators.10

High-risk procedures include those associated with venous air, CO₂, fat, or cement embolism (including orthopaedic procedures and liver transplants). This is because these cause sudden increases in pulmonary vascular resistance and RV afterload.12 Additionally, any procedure which requires rapid, large volume infusion increases the risk of RV dysfunction. Activation of the systemic inflammatory response system can also lead to large volume shifts and RV impairment if there is a need for rapid fluid resuscitation. Laparoscopic procedures require vigilance to the potential negative effects of a pneumoperitoneum on preload, lung volumes, hypercapnia, and acidosis. Awareness of patient positioning and the effects on ventilation and venous return are also important.

In patients with known elevations in pulmonary vascular resistance or RV dysfunction, all attempts should be made to optimise function prior to proceeding to surgery. This includes continuing, where possible, usual medications throughout the perioperative period.

Monitoring

In addition to routine monitoring, further options are tailored to the patient and procedure being performed. Invasive arterial pressure monitoring is recommended to allow early recognition and aggressive correction of systemic hypotension to prevent organ hypopfusion.13

Inserting a central venous catheter should be considered as it can be used to provide inotropic support and measure CVP. While the efficacy of routine CVP monitoring in this group is controversial, CVP trends can guide management and treatment. This is especially the case in prolonged procedures or when large fluid shifts are anticipated.14 Nevertheless, studies have demonstrated a limited relationship between CVP and intravascular volume status and there remains limited evidence for the reliability of CVP, or delta-CVP, in predicting the haemodynamic response to a fluid challenge.15

There may be multiple other roles for the use of CVP catheters. They can monitor for new tricuspid regurgitation (being the development of dominant v wave and sharp y descent) and can facilitate the measurement of mixed venous saturated oxygen as a marker of sufficiency of cardiac output. They can also be used when an increasing CVP may suggest acutely deteriorating RV function.15

A pulmonary artery catheter (PAC) allows direct monitoring of pulmonary artery pressures as well as the cardiac index and SvO₂. Despite this, there is limited evidence for its routine use. Furthermore, its use has been associated with an increase in morbidity and mortality due to arrhythmias and pulmonary vessel damage. This is of particular concern when used in centres unaccustomed to their frequent placement.

Intraoperative TOE allows continuous direct assessment of RV contractility, RV dilation, and the interventricular septum. In the setting of acute deterioration, TOE can aid in identifying precipitating factors such as PE, and guide therapies aimed at optimising preload, afterload, and contractility.

Temperature monitoring and active warming should be used to avoid hypothermia-induced increases in pulmonary vascular resistance and myocardial oxygen demand associated with post-operative shivering.

Anaesthetic technique

The choice of anaesthetic technique is secondary to careful and active conservation of haemodynamic homeostasis with meticulous attention to the management of preload, afterload, and contractility. In addition, pulmonary vascular resistance should be minimised, and RV coronary perfusion maintained. Regional, neuraxial, or general anaesthesia can be used. The choice should be determined by underlying and comorbid disease processes, clinician experience, and patient choice. If neuraxial techniques are employed, blockade should be introduced slowly. Adequate preparation is key in managing haemodynamic perturbations.16

All commonly used anaesthetic agents have potentially negative effects on RV function. Volatile anaesthetic agents reduce RV preload and contractility and can precipitate RV dysfunction. Nitrous oxide and desflurane are associated with increases in pulmonary vascular resistance and should be avoided in at risk patients. Etomidate has been advocated as the induction agent of choice as it has less effect on systemic vascular resistance, myocardial contractility, and pulmonary vascular resistance. However, it is not available for use in Australia but is available in New Zealand. Propofol and thiopentone are associated with reductions in RV contractility and systemic vascular resistance (SVR), but do not affect pulmonary vascular resistance (PVR). These agents can usually be safely used with appropriate dose adjustment.17 Ketamine increases PVR in adult patients. This will increase RV afterload so large doses should be avoided in patients with known or at risk of RV failure.

Adequate use of neuromuscular blocking drugs (NMBDs) should be maintained throughout the case to optimise respiratory mechanics. However, ensuring adequate NMBD reversal prior to extubation is essential.

Opioids should be used judiciously, as large doses will blunts sympathetic tone. This may result in systemic hypotension and reduced RV contractility. Additionally, opioid induced hypoventilation in the post-operative period may result in hypercapnia and associated increases in pulmonary vascular resistance. However, an important postoperative concern is adequate analgesia as this mitigates pain-related and sympathetically-mediated increases in PVR. Non-opioid adjuncts and regional techniques can be used to aid this purpose.
Induction
Adequate pre-oxygenation and gentle bag-mask ventilation will help avoid hypercarbia and hypoaxia while at the same time will ensure intrathoracic pressure is not elevated. Ample sympathetic nervous system blunting is advisable. Typically, this can be done by using opioids, a moderate depth of anaesthesia, and a complete neuromuscular blockade prior to airway manipulation. This helps mitigate increases in pulmonary vascular resistance induced by coughing or straining.

Throughout the induction period, the anaesthetist should have vasopressor agents immediately available to prevent or aggressively treat any post-induction hypotension.

Mechanical ventilation strategies
The optimal ventilation strategy will avoid hypoxaemia, hypercarbia, and respiratory acidosis. When \( P_O_2 \) falls below 60mmHg, \( P_V_R \) worsens due to hypoxic pulmonary vasoconstriction (HPV). Hypcapnia increases pulmonary artery pressures by 1mmHg per 1mmHg increase in \( P_C_O_2 \). These factors can cause haemodynamically significant RV impairment44,45.

Both atelectasis and large volumes should be avoided. \( P_V_R \) will increase at low lung volumes, when collapse of extra-alveolar vessels and terminal airways cause alveolar hypoaxia and HPV. At high lung volumes there is a stretch of the alveolar walls, which is transmitted to airways and thus impedes forward blood flow. \( P_V_R \) is optimised when ventilation occurs at functional residual capacity (FRC)46. Additionally, systemic venous return is impeded when increased airway pressures in turn increase intrathoracic pressure.

Overall, recommendations for optimal ventilation techniques are to use lung protective strategies with tidal volumes of 5-6mL/kg and plateau pressures less than 30cmH2O. Oxygenation should be augmented by increasing \( F_I_O_2 \). However, PEEP should not be increased any higher than 10cmH2O due to the risk of pre-load issues.

Rate and rhythm
The periphereral state can be characterised by rapid changes in intravascular volume because of bleeding and third spaces. Compounding this is a blunted sympathetic neural reflex system secondary to anaesthetic agents. This contributes to vasoconstriction, blood pooling and decreased venous return13.

Patients with RV dysfunction may be preload-dependent. However, excessive volume loading can precipitate RV over-distension and subsequently an increase in RV wall tension. If myocardial fibres become overstretched, a spiral into reduced RV contractility and ultimately reduced systemic cardiac output may occur13. To avoid unnecessary volume expansion, intravenous fluid therapy should be delivered cautiously and transfusion of red blood cells should be minimised unless significant anaemia develops14.

Given the above limitations of CVP monitoring, it can be difficult to assess whether a patient with RV dysfunction is likely to be fluid responsive. One approach to determining this is to assess the haemodynamic response to a passive straight leg raise of 45 degrees. If elevation of the legs produces a 2-5mmHg elevation in CVP and corrects mean arterial pressure, a fluid bolus would be indicated15. Alternatively, in patients with a CPA of less than 12mmHg, a fluid challenge of 250-500mL of intravenous crystalloid can be trialled16. In patients with a dilated RV, induced diuresis may be required for ventricular offloading and reduction in right-sided filling pressures17.

Rate and rhythm
It is generally preferable to maintain a faster heart rate (80-100bpm) to prevent excessive RV distension, minimise LV distortion, and avoid worsening of TR. This will assist in maintaining adequate cardiac output15-17.

These targets should be balanced against the risk of a rate-related increase in myocardial oxygen demand with subsequent exacerbation of an “at risk” RV.

The most common arrhythmias observed in patients with RV failure are atrial tachycardias. This is most likely due to dilation of the right atrium or to chronic remodelling. These are often poorly tolerated and the loss of atrial kick can precipitate haemodynamic instability. If not promptly corrected, arrhythmias can be associated with the development of cardiac shock18. New-onset atrial fibrillation, or flutter, has been associated with increased morbidity and mortality19. Ventricular tachycardia may also occur, most commonly in patients with RV ischaemia, congenital heart disease, and/or in patients who have previously had surgery involving their right ventricle.

Optimising electrolytes, especially potassium (K+) and magnesium (Mg2+) can reduce the rate of new arrhythmia development. Prompt direct current cardioversion (DCCV) is the treatment of choice for haemodynamically unstable patients; however, the success of this technique may be limited in critical illnesses in restoring sinus rhythm and a controlled rate18.

Of the antiarrhythmic pharmacotherapies, amiodarone is the agent of choice. This is because beta-blocker therapy and calcium channel blockers reduce inotropy and may further impair RV function19,20.

Vasopressor therapy
The primary aim of vasopressor administration in RV impaired states is to improve myocardial perfusion of the right ventricle. This may also have an additional effect in optimising interventricular function21,22. The ideal vasopressor increases SVR and either reduces or has no effect on PVR. However, the effects of vasopressor agents on the pulmonary vasculature are complex, and typically related to native α and β effects at different doses23.

Noradrenaline will increase coronary perfusion by increasing aortic root pressure. At high doses of >0.5 microg/kg/min, it can also increase PVR. For this reason, its use is usually limited to doses of <0.2microg/kg/min24. Phenylephrine may be used as an alternative agent, although it has also been associated with increases in PVR and worsening of RV function22,25. Vasopressin of 1-4units/min can be used where noradrenaline therapy has failed as it is not associated with increases in PVR. Indeed, at low doses vasopressin may be associated with a decrease in PVR26.

Inotropic therapy
Inotropic agents including dobutamine, dopamine, adrenaline, levosimendan and phosphodiesterase 3 inhibitors (for example, milrinone) act to improve cardiac output by increasing myocardial contractility27.

Dobutamine, a beta agonist, is the most commonly used inotropic in RV failure. It is given typically at doses of 2-5 microg/kg/min at which it increases cardiac output while simultaneously decreasing pulmonary vascular resistance (PVR)28,29. It may also decrease SVR at the same time and thus require co-administration of a vasopressor agent29.

A low dose dopamine of <5 microg/kg/min has been shown to improve RV function in the setting of pulmonary vascular dysfunction; however, its use is limited by the potential for development of tachyarrhythmias30.

Mitrinone, a phosphodiesterase-3 inhibitor, promotes myocardial contractility while simultaneously reducing RV afterload. Intravenous infusions of 0.25-0.5 microg/kg/min will reduce pulmonary artery pressures and augment RV function. However, this agent usually requires co-administration of a vasopressor agent31. Nebulised milrinone can be used in pulmonary hypertensive crises and has the advantage of pulmonary selectivity, resulting in less systemic hypotension32,33.

Levosimendan is a calcium sensitisser, acting via the troponin C receptor to optimise myocardium responsiveness in calcium. As well as selectively inhibiting PDE III weakly, it also acts on the ATP-sensitive sarcolemma K+ channels of smooth muscle. The overall effects are to improve diastolic function and myocardial contractility without increasing myocardial oxygen demand and to induce ischaemic preconditioning; it also has multiple pleiotropic effects34. The benefits of a reduced PVR, increased RV efficiency, and improved RV-PA coupling can last for several days through the actions of its active metabolite35. The actions of levosimendan are calcium-dependent and thus hypocalcaemia should be aggressively managed and corrected36. Its use in the acute perioperative setting is limited by its cost and the necessary administration via an IV infusion over a period of 24 hours.

Digoxin therapy, a single dose of 1mg, acutely improves cardiac output by 10 per cent in patients with RV failure without affecting heart rate37.

Pulmonary vasodilator therapy
Intravenous pulmonary vasodilators are useful to reduce RV afterload as they mediate PVR which causes an increase in the RV stroke volume. However, their administration can be complicated by systemic hypotension and hypoxaemia from ventilation-perfusion mismatch38. Therefore, these agents should be commenced after optimisation of RV perfusion. Evidence for their use is predominantly in the setting of chronic pulmonary hypertension, cardiac surgery (including heart transplantation) or in patients with mechanical cardiac support39,40.

Prostanoids act via increases in pulmonary vascular prostacyclin I2 levels. They include intravenous epoprostenol, subcutaneous treprostinil, and nebulized iloprost. Endothelin (ET)-1 antagonists (bosentan), produce pulmonary vasodilation by inhibiting an endothelium-derived vasoconstrictor. Sildenafil (a phosphodiesterase-5 inhibitor) is available as an oral preparation.

Other agents associated with PVR reductions are calcium channel blockers, adenosine, magnesium, and glyceryltrinitrate (GTN); however, they are not routinely used for this purpose.

Mechanical support
Mechanical supports include intra-aortic balloon pumps (IABP), extracorporeal mechanical oxygenation (ECMO), and ventricular assist devices (VADs). These may be considered in specialist centres when severe...
RV failure occurs due to a reversible cause, such as RV ischaemia or acute PE. The aim is to prevent multi-organ dysfunction by providing support until the RV recovers11. For many institutions around Australia and New Zealand, this may require transfer to a centre with experience in such techniques. Consideration must be given to provision of elective surgery in these patients with known RV failure in centres where this form of support can be given. There are limited options for long-term RV mechanical support. Using ECMO are only approved for use for one week. Using IABP have been described for managing RV failure; however, they likely improve RV function by augmenting coronary flow rather than providing direct effects on the RV17,18.

Postoperative care
The increased risk to the RV associated with anaesthesia and surgery extends into the postoperative period as the postoperative period is likely the time of greatest risk of deterioration55. Patient factors, surgery duration and complexity, anticipated ongoing fluid shifts, hypovolemia, and vasopressor or inotropic requirements, dictate the level of postoperative care required. For many patients, the most appropriate ward for immediate postoperative management will be an intensive care or high dependency setting.

As in the operating theatre, avoiding atelectasis (with the addition of early chest physiotherapy in the postoperative setting), preventing hypoxia and hypercarbia, maintaining temperature management, and optimising analgesia is crucial in the postoperative period. Thromboprophylaxis should be started as soon as haemostasis is adequate to prevent the development of pulmonary thromboembolic disease.

TREATMENT OF SPECIFIC CAUSES OF ACUTE INTRAOPERATIVE RIGHT HEART FAILURE

Acute right heart syndrome has been defined as “a rapidly progressing systemic syndrome with congestion resulting from impaired RV filling or reduced RV flow output”. It is associated with increased rates of mobility and mortality11.

Acute pulmonary embolism
New onset RV failure is the primary determinant of early mortality in acute PE. A “high risk” or “massive” PE is clinically characterized by hypotension or shock caused by over RV failure. Patients with intermediate risk are “normotensive patients with a high clinical prognostic score accompanied by imaging or biochemical markers of RV dysfunction”11. Normally, the RV can generate a mean pulmonary artery pressure of up to 40mmHg before RV stroke volume falls. Further to this, it requires 50-75 per cent of the pulmonary vasculature to be occluded by emboli before acute RV failure occurs18.

In patients with high-risk PEs, the recommended strategy is to achieve reperfusion using intravenous thrombolysis. However, in the perioperative period this may be contraindicated due to bleeding risk. Alternative therapies, including surgical pulmonary thrombectomy or interventional radiological approaches should be considered19. Surgical intervention is usually reserved for patients with an absolute contraindication for thrombolysis, whereas catheter-directed fibrinolysis or pharmaco-mechanical fibrinolysis are usually reserved for patients with a relative contra-indication20.

Right ventricular infarction
Proximal RCA occlusion causes acute inferior myocardial ischaemia and the RV is most at risk19. Up to 30-50 per cent of patients with this pathology will develop some degree of RV impairment. However, where reperfusion therapy is available, low cardiac output and severe hypotension are uncommon19. The lower oxygen demand of the RV, a superior oxygen extraction reserve capability, the frequent dual vascular supply found in the RV, and increased rates of collateralisation in chronic ischaemic ventricles help protect the RV.

Treatment involves early myocardial reperfusion, preferably with primary percutaneous coronary intervention (PCI)19,20. Prior to revascularisation, the patient remains at risk of ventricular tachycardia, bradyarrhythmia requiring atropine, and a high-grade ativoventricular (AV) block requiring pacing. Nitrates and diuretics can compromise RV preload and should be avoided. Inotropic supports may be required19.

CONCLUSION
Patients with active right heart dysfunction, or with an “at risk” RV, pose a unique set of challenges for the anaesthesiologist in the perioperative period. Failure of this often-overlooked ventricle results in significant morbidity and mortality and as such, its critical contribution in preserving systemic blood flow and organ perfusion should not be underestimated.

A thorough understanding of the physiology and pathophysiology of the RV can enable clinicians to identify patients at risk of RV dysfunction. This in turn can lead clinicians to optimise their patients’ preoperative condition, reduce their risk of peri-operative deterioration, and predict and therefore manage any acute degradation of RV function.

REFERENCES
Management of right ventricular dysfunction after separation from cardiopulmonary bypass

Mumtaz Khan, MBBS (hons). DipCU, FANZCA
Advanced PteEXAM, Fiona Stanley Hospital, Perth, Western Australia

Dr Mumtaz Khan is a consultant anaesthetist in Perth, specialising in cardiothoracic anaesthesia. He is a diploma in advanced perioperative transoesophageal echocardiography from the National Board of Echocardiography USA.

Michael Serric, MBBS
Fiona Stanley Hospital, Perth, Western Australia

Dr Michael Serric is completing his ANZCA provisional fellowship in cardiothoracic anaesthesia, echocardiography and research.

INTRODUCTION

Weaning from the mechanical circulatory support provided by cardiopulmonary bypass (CPB) is a challenging task for the anaesthetist, involving a high level of cognitive workload. Consideration of haemodynamic parameters, performing a transoesophageal echocardiogram (TOE) and communication with the surgeon and perfusionist all occur simultaneously. A challenging task becomes significantly more stressful if the function of the right ventricle (RV) starts to fail as separation from CPB occurs. This may lead to a precipitous spiral of hypotension, further RV dysfunction, progressing to poor left ventricular (LV) function and a decrease in systemic arterial pressure. Right heart failure is a major cause of morbidity and mortality in cardiac surgery and as such needs to be promptly recognised and managed1,2. This article will focus on the risk factors for the development of RV dysfunction following separation from CPB, how to diagnose it in a timely fashion and provide a suggested treatment strategy using a streamlined approach.

FUNCTIONAL ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY OF THE RIGHT VENTRICLE

When the RV fails it is unable to maintain adequate blood flow through the pulmonary circulation to achieve adequate LV filling3. The mechanisms by which the RV fails differs from the LV and is best appreciated by understanding the differences in anatomy. The RV has a thin free wall wrapped around the medial wall of the LV4. During systole, the RV contracts longitudinally from apex to base, whereas the LV contracts circumferentially5. As is well known with the LV, the function of the RV is also affected by RV preload, afterload, contractility and rhythm. Preload is affected by the volume of blood in the systemic vasculature, heart rate, filling pressures of the left and right ventricles6.

During systole, the RV contracts longitudinally from apex to base, whereas the LV contracts circumferentially. As is well known with the LV, the function of the RV is also affected by RV preload, afterload, contractility and rhythm. Preload is affected by the volume of blood in the systemic vasculature, heart rate, filling pressures of the left and right ventricles.

The RV is not only important for its function of pumping deoxygenated venous blood into the pulmonary circulation for gas exchange but also because changes in the RV function directly affect the LV and thus cardiac output and systemic blood pressure. This is known as ventricular interdependence. Ventricular interdependence describes how the size, shape and compliance of one ventricle affects the haemodynamic properties of the other. The main determinants of ventricular interdependence are the interventricular septum, the pericardium, the shared blood supply and continuity of myocardial fibres between the RV and LV6. Diastolic interdependence is primarily due to the pericardium; when the RV enlarges due to pressure or volume overload the intrapericardial pressure increases and shifts the interventricular septum to the left resulting in a decreased LV cavity size and stroke volume. Systolic interdependence is mainly due to the interventricular septum. As is well known with the LV, the function of the RV is also affected by RV preload, afterload, contractility and rhythm. Preload is affected by the volume of blood in the systemic vasculature, heart rate, filling pressures of the LV, intrapericardial pressure and compliance of the RV. Afterload is primarily determined by pulmonary vascular resistance. As previously described, the RV tolerates an increase in preload better than an increase in afterload.

PREOPERATIVE ASSESSMENT OF RIGHT VENTRICULAR FUNCTION

Almost all patients booked for elective cardiac surgery will have a transthoracic and/or TOE preoperatively. Some patients will also have preoperative right heart catheterisation which will identify pressures of the right side of the heart including measurements of right atrial (RA) pressure, RV pressure, pulmonary artery (PA) pressure and pulmonary capillary wedge pressure (PCWP). RV dysfunction will likely be present if the RA pressure is greater than 8-10 mmHg, or PA pressure to PCWP index is greater than or equal to 0.8, and the...
patient has a cardiac index of less than 2.2 L/min/m². Of note, these measurements are in patients who are spontaneously ventilating and not sedated. RV outflow tract obstruction can hinder RV function and can be suspected when the RV to PA pressure gradient is more than 25 mmHg.

RISK FACTORS FOR DEVELOPING RIGHT VENTRICULAR DYSFUNCTION

Certain circumstances can place a patient at increased risk of developing post CPB RV failure. These include pre-existing RV dysfunction, pulmonary hypertension, long CPB times, left ventricular assist device (LVAD) insertion and heart transplantation, particularly where the donor heart has a long ischaemic time or mismatched in size. In fact, RV failure post LVAD insertion has been estimated to occur in 20–40 per cent of cases, highlighting the necessity of quick identification and treatment. Inadequate myocardial protection during CPB is also a risk factor for post bypass RV dysfunction. Protection of the myocardium, while on CPB is provided via the delivery of cardioplegia, and often flooding of the surgical field with carbon dioxide. Importantly, one of the well-known side effects of protamine administration is pulmonary hypertension, leading to an increase in RV afterload.

The blood supply to the RV is via the right coronary artery. Any obstruction to blood flow through the right coronary artery post CPB will affect RV function. There are multiple triggers which can lead to this, with inadequate de-airing of the LV prior to coming off CPB being one of the most common aetiologies. The ostia of the right coronary artery is located anteriorly, and thus small air emboli are more prone to cause obstruction in this vessel. Other causes of decreased flow include failed grafting to the right sided circulation, suturing, damage or occlusion of the right coronary ostia during valve surgery and acute thrombus formation at the ostia or in the lumen of the right coronary artery.

PREVENTION

Management of the RV should be optimised in all patients to prevent dysfunction from developing. Firstly, arterial blood gas and ventilatory settings should be optimised to avoid pulmonary vasoconstriction. These include avoiding hypoxia by having a FiO₂ of 1.0, appropriate ventilator settings to avoid hypercarbia, excessive tidal volumes and PEEP and having a normal arterial pH as acidemia increases pulmonary vascular resistance.

Secondly, pulmonary vasodilators can be started in susceptible patients to manage afterload by decreasing pulmonary vascular tone prior to and after CPB. In our institution, we use inhaled nitric oxide (NO), delivered via the inspiratory limb of the anaesthetic circuit from a specific NO delivery system, with concentrations monitored and controlled in parts per million (ppm). This is generally commenced pre-CPB for patients with pre-existing RV dysfunction, pulmonary hypertension, LVAD insertion and heart transplantation, with a starting dose of 10–20 ppm, increasing to 40 ppm as required. Other options include inhaled milrinone and inhaled prostacyclines such as epoprostenol and iloprost. An advantage of iloprost is that it is easier to administer as it does not need to be given as a continuous infusion, unlike NO and epoprostenol. Intravenous epoprostenol could potentially be used, but may cause bleeding due to its antithrombotic effect; this decrease of platelet aggregation is seen less with inhaled epoprostenol.

Thirdly, it should be ensured that vigorous de-airing of the heart occurs prior to weaning off CPB, as air embolism remains a significant concern in the right sided coronary circulation, as already discussed. Carbon dioxide embolism, which may occur when carbon dioxide is used by the surgeons, appears to be less significant as it dissolves more rapidly than air.

TRANSOESOPHAGEAL ECHOCARDIOGRAPHY ASSESSMENT OF RIGHT VENTRICULAR FUNCTION

The American Society of Echocardiography (ASE) released guidelines in 2010, updated in 2015, to assess RV function. Recommendations include the measurement of RV size, right atrial (RA) size, systolic PA pressure (with RA pressure estimated according to inferior vena cava dimensions) and a measure of RV systolic function utilising at least one of: fractional area change (FAC), tricuspid annulus peak velocity (S) or tricuspid annulus plane systolic excursion (TAPSE); with or without RV index of myocardial performance. It is important to recognise that volumetric quantification of the RV is difficult and visual estimation to assess RV size and function is common. Ejection fraction does not form part of the routine TOE examination of the RV.

The RV can be assessed through both mid oesophageal and transgastric views in both long and short axis. The mid oesophageal views enable interrogation through the tricuspid valve to the RV apex allowing assessment of the apical portion of the anterior RV free wall. In the deep transgastric position, a good representation of the RV inferior wall (in the near field) can be achieved, with anteflexion of the probe developing a view of the RV inflow tract and pulmonary valve.
Other features on TOE that may indicate RV failure include:

- Evidence of raised of RA pressure (increased size, bowing of the inter-atrial septum to the left and dilated inferior vena cava with reduced collapsibility)\(^{10}\).
- An increase in the RV to LV size ratio > 0.6\(^{12}\).
- A flattened or left sided deviation of the interventricular septum, which is usually positioned convex towards the RV\(^{13}\).

TAPSE is the most commonly and easily performed measurement post-CPB. However, its use along with the use of S’ needs thoughtful consideration, as CPB and chest closure has been shown to lead to a decrease in these measurements\(^{17}\).

### IDENTIFICATION OF RIGHT VENTRICULAR FAILURE

As yet there is no proposed consensus definition of perioperative RV dysfunction\(^{14}\). In clinical practice a combination of TOE findings, haemodynamic parameters and visually inspecting the heart are used to identify the development of RV dysfunction intraoperatively\(^{15}\).

Haemodynamic parameters used to assess RV function are the central venous pressure (CVP) as a surrogate for RA pressure and use of a pulmonary artery catheter for PA pressures, PCWP and cardiac index. Findings suggestive of RV dysfunction are a CVP greater than 20 mmHg, the CVP being greater than the PCWP, with a cardiac index of less than 2.1 l/min/m\(^2\)\(^{15}\). A CVP wave form with fused c and v waves implies new tricuspid regurgitation and a failing RV\(^{15}\).

PA pressure monitoring via a pulmonary artery catheter remains the gold standard for monitoring critically ill cardiac patients and identifying pulmonary hypertension. As the RV progressively fails because the ventricle is unable to generate pressure\(^{15}\). Scrutinising the RV pressure wave form is a technique described by Raymond et al as another powerful tool to identify RV dysfunction\(^ {14}\). Continuous RV pressure curve monitoring is achieved by transducing the RV port of a pulmonary artery catheter, if one is present. RV diastolic pressure monitoring is a direct reflection of RV function and allows evaluation of RV outflow tract obstruction\(^ {15}\) (see Figure 2).

### Figure 2. Types of RV pressure (Prv) waveforms

Reproduced with permission from Raymond et al\(^ {14}\).

---

### Table 1. Abnormal RV parameters

Reproduced with permission from Rudski et al\(^ {10}\) and Lang et al\(^ {11}\).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VARIABLE</th>
<th>UNIT</th>
<th>ABNORMAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CHAMBER DIMENSIONS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RV Basal diameter</td>
<td>cm</td>
<td>&gt;4.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RV mid diameter</td>
<td>cm</td>
<td>&gt;3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RV free wall thickness</td>
<td>cm</td>
<td>&gt;0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RV end diastolic volume (females)</td>
<td>ml/m(^2)</td>
<td>&gt; 74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RV end diastolic volume (males)</td>
<td>ml/m(^2)</td>
<td>&gt; 84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RV end systolic volume (females)</td>
<td>ml/m(^2)</td>
<td>&gt; 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RV end systolic volume (males)</td>
<td>ml/m(^2)</td>
<td>&gt; 44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RA major diameter</td>
<td>cm</td>
<td>&gt;5.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RA minor diameter</td>
<td>cm</td>
<td>&gt;4.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RA end systolic area</td>
<td>cm(^2)</td>
<td>&gt;18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SYSTOLIC FUNCTION</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TAPSE</td>
<td>cm</td>
<td>&lt;1.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulsed doppler peak tricuspid annulus velocity</td>
<td>cm/s</td>
<td>&lt;9.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulsed doppler MPI</td>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;0.43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tissue doppler MPI</td>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;0.54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FAC</td>
<td>%</td>
<td>&lt;35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ejection fraction</td>
<td>%</td>
<td>&lt;45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIASTOLIC FUNCTION</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E/A ratio</td>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;0.8 or &gt;2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E/e’ ratio</td>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deceleration time</td>
<td>ms</td>
<td>&lt;120 or &gt;242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OTHER</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RA pressure</td>
<td>mmHg</td>
<td>&gt; 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tricuspid Regurgitation Velocity</td>
<td>m/s</td>
<td>&gt;2.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPAP</td>
<td>mmHg</td>
<td>&gt; 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Longitudinal RV free wall strain</td>
<td>%</td>
<td>&gt;20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A tricuspid regurgitation velocity of 2.8 m/s correlates to a SPAP of 36 mmHg, if assuming a RAP of 3-5mmHg.
outflow obstruction. RV to PA pressure gradient greater than 25 mmHg is indicative of either direct or dynamic outflow tract obstruction. Figure 3 demonstrates this phenomenon.

Figure 3. RV outflow tract obstruction in a patient exposed to milrinone Reproduced with permission from Denault et al.8.

Management of right ventricular dysfunction after separation from cardiopulmonary bypass

TREATMENT OPTIONS

When the RV fails, maintenance of haemodynamic stability depends on LV contraction, atrial contraction, atrioventricular synchrony and perfusion of the RV, and these components must be addressed in order to improve the failing RV.

Right ventricular preload

The volume requirements of the RV will differ depending on the degree of RV afterload. In the setting of normal afterload, fluid loading will assist with maintaining RV stroke volume. If afterload is raised, volume loading can result in the leftward displacement of the RV; ventricular interdependence will come into play, and an environment of reduced LV filling and stroke volume will develop. When weaning off CPB, the CVP and PCWP can assist in deciding appropriate fluid management in conjunction with TOE and direct visualisation. If right sided filling pressures are low, as indicated by a CVP of less than 15 mmHg and a non-dilated RV on TOE, then judicious volume loading should be performed, being mindful not to overload the ventricle. If RV preload is determined to be elevated, preload can be reduced by encouraging venous blood pooling by raising the head of the operating table or starting a GTN infusion to dilate venous capacitance vessels. An effective way to reduce preload is by asking the perfusionist to remove blood into the bypass circuit via the aortic cannula. It is also important to maintain sinus rhythm and treat any high degree atioventricular block with pacing to reduce worsening haemodynamic function. Where a RV is hypertrophied and non-compliant in the setting of pulmonary hypertension, maintenance of adequate systolic function relies heavily on atrial contraction. Thus, atrial epicardial leads should be placed in the patient who has developed post CPB RV failure or considered in the patient who is at risk of developing RV failure in the postoperative setting. Conversion to sinus rhythm by electrical or chemical means should be prioritised as supraventricular arrhythmias are poorly tolerated.

Right ventricular afterload

Pulmonary vascular resistance can increase after separation from CPB because of atelectasis, reperfusion injury, endothelial damage and the release of inflammatory mediators. Before weaning from CPB any physiological parameters that can increase pulmonary vascular resistance should be identified and treated. To reiterate these include avoiding hypoxia by having a FiO2 of 1.0, appropriate ventilator settings to avoid hypercarbia, avoiding excessive tidal volumes and PEEP and having arterial pH within the normal range.

Inhaled pulmonary vasodilators are the treatment of choice to decrease RV afterload, once ventilatory and physiological parameters have been addressed. Options available for inhaled pulmonary vasodilators are the same as those for preventative treatment: NO, prostacyclin, iloprost and inhaled milrinone. Inhaled NO is the most commonly used inotropically in our institution. It is integrated into the anaesthetic machine circuit preoperatively in patients with risk factors for RV dysfunction and can be mobilised easily if unexpected RV dysfunction develops. Inhaled drugs have the advantage of reducing pulmonary vascular resistance with less systemic hypotension and increases in ventilation-perfusion mismatch.

Right ventricular contractility

Decreased RV contractility in acute RV failure occurs because of overstretching of the RV free wall myocytes which reduces the contractile force that can be developed. These contractile forces are further hindered by abnormal cellular metabolism and the post bypass factors which can decrease right coronary perfusion. Vasopressor and inotropic support will be required to maintain haemodynamic stability and prevent the spiral of hypotension and RV ischaemia.

Dobutamine is indicated in the initial management of RV failure to increase RV contractility as well as its lowering effect on pulmonary vascular resistance. Intravenous milrinone is another option, but may produce more profound systemic hypotension than dobutamine, which may lead to decreased coronary perfusion and further impairment of RV function. Hypotension associated with the use of these inotropes can be offset using a vasopressor such as noradrenaline or vasopressin.

In the case of sudden severe RV failure adrenaline should be administered as it has been shown to significantly improve RV ejection fraction. It can be started as an infusion or given as small increments initially. There is emerging evidence that intratracheal milrinone may be a suitable first line choice in sudden severe RV failure. Gebhard et al demonstrated in their centre’s retrospective analysis that when patients developed post CPB RV failure, those who received a 5mg intratracheal bolus of milrinone had an efficacy of 60 per cent in restoring RV function, and thus not requiring further inotropic treatment.
Systemic blood pressure and coronary perfusion

It is crucial to maintain systemic blood pressure to sustain right coronary blood flow while the cause and treatment of RV failure is addressed. Various vasopressor options are available including phenylephrine, noradrenaline, vasopressin and adrenaline. Care should be taken with both phenylephrine and noradrenaline, which have both shown to increase pulmonary vascular resistance (phenylephrine more than noradrenaline). Vasopressin has been shown to have minimal effects in increasing pulmonary vascular resistance while increasing systemic resistance, hence early use of it is beneficial in this setting.

ORDER OF MANAGEMENT

Figure 4 provides a management outline once the presence of RV dysfunction is established. The priority is to assess RV preload. If it is low, a small fluid challenge should be given. Pump blood provided by the perfusionist is the most efficient option in this setting. If the RV preload is elevated, it should be lowered by removing blood from the circulation into the CPB circuit and/or elevating the head of the operating table. If this is inadequate, then a GTN infusion can be commenced. Concurrently, vaspressor support should be commenced or increased. Vasopressin would be the ideal agent. However, cautious use of noradrenaline is also appropriate. RV contractility must be increased using a dobutamine infusion. If dobutamine is inadequate, then an adrenaline infusion or addition of milrinone should be considered. At any stage if there is severe haemodynamic compromise, then small boluses of adrenaline should be administered, along with an infusion. A bolus of 5mg of intratracheal milrinone is also an option in this setting. Raised PA pressures should be treated with an inhaled pulmonary vasodilator. If this fails to regulate the PA pressures, then an intravenous pulmonary vasodilator should be instituted.

Conversely, RV preload should be increased. RA pressure must be increased using a dobutamine infusion. If dobutamine is inadequate, then an adrenaline infusion or addition of milrinone should be considered. At any stage if there is severe haemodynamic instability, a return to CPB should be strongly considered. If these interventions do not promote right coronary blood flow if haemodynamic instability is not improved. If these interventions do not improve RV function and haemodynamic instability, survival options of vena-arterial extracorporeal membrane oxygenation and right ventricular assist device insertion need to be considered.

Figure 4. A guide to the management of RV dysfunction post CPB

Adapted from Haddad et al.

REFERENCES


CONCLUSION

RV failure is a major cause of morbidity and mortality post CPB. Identification utilising haemodynamic monitoring, TOE and visual inspection should be performed for all cases. Due to the difficulties in objectively assessing the RV, a rapid systematic approach to assessment should be undertaken and it is recommended that management follow a similar number of systematic steps. This will promote prompt recognition, treatment and a successful wean from bypass.
The perioperative management of patients with ventricular assist devices undergoing non-cardiac surgery

Richella-Lea Falland MBBS FANZCA MClinEd
Cardiothoracic Anaesthesia Fellow, Greenlane Department of Cardiothoracic and ORL Anaesthesia, and Cardiothoracic and Vascular Intensive Care Unit, Auckland City Hospital, New Zealand

Dr Richella-Lea Falland graduated from the University of Adelaide and completed her training in anaesthesia in hospitals throughout South Australia. She is currently undertaking a one-year fellowship in cardiothoracic anaesthesia and intensive care at Auckland City Hospital. She has developing interests in cardiothoracic and vascular anaesthesia, transesophageal echocardiography and the management of complex cardiac patients presenting for non-cardiac surgery.

David Sidebotham MBChB FANZCA
Anaesthetist and Intensivist, Department of Anaesthesia and the Cardiothoracic and Vascular Intensive Care Unit, Auckland City Hospital, New Zealand

Dr David Sidebotham is a cardiothoracic anaesthetist and intensivist at Auckland City Hospital. He has written and spoken extensively on echocardiography and mechanical cardiorespiratory support. He is an associate editor for British Journal of Anaesthesia Education. He is midway through a BSc (Hon) in mathematics and statistics.

Sara Jane Allen MBChB PgDipMedEd Cambridge FANZCA FCICM
Anaesthetist and Intensivist, Department of Cardiothoracic and ORL Anaesthesia and the Cardiothoracic and Vascular Intensive Care Unit, Auckland City Hospital, New Zealand

Dr Sara Allen is a cardiothoracic anaesthetist and intensivist, working at Auckland City Hospital. She is the Director of Perioperative Echocardiography, and has clinical interests in echocardiography, and mechanical support, as well as training, education, and welfare within anaesthesia and intensive care medicine. Previous publication topics have included the care of transplant and mechanical support patients, EOMO, and transesophageal echocardiography.

INTRODUCTION

Ventricular assist devices (VADs) are mechanical circulatory support devices, which provide temporary or long-term support for patients with advanced heart failure that is not responsive to maximal medical therapy. VADs may be used to support the left ventricle (LV), the right ventricle (RV), or both ventricles. In this article, we use the term VAD to describe implantable, durable continuous-flow devices used to support the LV.

The first VAD was implanted in Australia in 1994, with New Zealand following in 2005. Currently, the health jurisdictions of both countries approve funding of VADs solely as a bridge-to-heart transplantation1. Despite this restriction, the use of VADs is increasing in both countries, and there is a growing cohort of patients supported with VADs who require anaesthesia for non-cardiac conditions. Case series of patients with VADs undergoing non-cardiac surgery, and of patients completing pregnancy while receiving VAD support, report low morbidity and mortality in the immediate periparative period and at 12 month follow-up, confirming non-cardiac surgery can be performed safely in these patient populations2.

In this article, we provide an overview of the perioperative management of patients with VADs presenting for non-cardiac surgery.

BACKGROUND

The physiological goal of a VAD is to reduce LV work and to provide adequate systemic perfusion. These goals are achieved by active unloading of the LV and by returning blood to the aorta under positive pressure.

Devices

In Australia and New Zealand, three devices are used for durable VAD support: the HeartMate II (Thoratec Corporation, Pleasanton, CA), HeartMate III (Thoratec Corporation, Pleasanton, CA) and the HeartWare HVAD (HeartWare International, Inc, Framingham, MA)3. All devices use continuous flow (that is, non-pulsatile) pumps. The HeartMate II uses an axial pump and the HeartMate III and HeartWare HVAD use a magnetically driven centrifugal pump. Functionally, the pumps are similar but the working speeds of the pumps are notably different. The typical pump speed for the HeartMate II is 9000 revolutions per minute (rpm), HeartMate III is 5000-6000rpm and 2500rpm for the HeartWare HVAD.
The devices are implantable and have externalized drivelines, which provide power, data capture and control. The HeartMate II is implanted sub-diaphragmatically whereas the HeartMate III and HeartWare HVAD are implanted within the pericardium. The devices drain blood from the LV apex and return blood to the ascending aorta via inflow and outflow cannulae, respectively.

**Indications**

There are four indications for durable VAD support:

1. As a bridge-to-transplantation in patients with advanced heart failure.
2. As a bridge-to-candidacy for heart transplantation.
3. As bridge-to-recovery in patients with severe heart failure due to a condition where recovery may be anticipated.
4. As destination therapy in patients with advanced heart failure who are ineligible for heart transplantation.

While not approved for such use in Australia and New Zealand, destination therapy is the most common indication for VAD implantation worldwide. The REMATCH trial, published in 2001, demonstrated that while destination therapy improved survival in patients with end-stage heart failure, associated morbidity was high. Subsequently, improvements in device technology have reduced the rate of adverse events. Recent data from the Interagency Registry for Mechanically Assisted Circulatory Support (INTERMACS) shows one-year survival is 82 per cent and five-year survival is 47 per cent. Technological improvements over time may further increase the use of VADs for destination therapy.

**Complications**

Despite improvements in VAD design over the past 20 years, complications are common, resulting in frequent hospitalisations. Approximately 30 per cent of patients require unplanned hospitalisation within the first six months following device implantation. The most common complications are bleeding, infection (particularly involving the driveline), stroke, and right heart failure. Complications may be divided into early (within 30-60 days), and late (after 60 days) (see Table 1).

---

**Table 1. LVAD complications**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Complication</th>
<th>Incidence</th>
<th>Comment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bleeding</td>
<td>32%</td>
<td>• May necessitate surgical re-exploration.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Post-implantation.</td>
<td>20%</td>
<td>• Recurrent bleeding occurs in up to 10 per cent of patients.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Gastrointestinal bleeding.</td>
<td>2-9%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Intracerebral haemorrhage.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infection</td>
<td>33-50%</td>
<td>• Second most common acute complication after bleeding.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Includes driveline and pump pocket infections and endocarditis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Right ventricular failure</td>
<td>15-25%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Post-implantation.</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Late-onset.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thrombotic complications</td>
<td>2-9%</td>
<td>• Reduced rates with strict adherence to anticoagulation regimen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Device thrombosis.</td>
<td>10-30%</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Stroke.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aortic valve insufficiency</td>
<td>&gt; 30%</td>
<td>• Increased incidence and severity with increasing time from implantation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ventricular arrhythmias</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Device malfunction</td>
<td>5-11%</td>
<td>• Due to pump thrombosis or factors relating to VAD hardware.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**MANAGEMENT FOR NON-CARDIAC SURGERY**

Patients with VADs present for a range of non-cardiac procedures and with improving survival, it is likely that numbers will continue to increase. Estimates vary, with 4-33 per cent of patients undergoing non-cardiac surgery during their period of VAD support. Upper gastrointestinal endoscopies account for the majority of non-cardiac procedures, reflecting the increased risk of gastrointestinal bleeding in this patient group and the requirement for anticoagulation (see below).

Traditionally, anaesthesia care in patients with VADs has been managed exclusively by cardiothoracic anaesthetists in centres which implant and routinely manage these devices. However, increasing numbers of device implantations, especially in the USA, has prompted concerns about resource limitations associated with this approach. Increasingly, non-cardiac anaesthetists are managing patients with VADs presenting for non-cardiac surgery. Data suggests there is no difference in outcome from this approach when managed appropriately. Several non-specialist centres have described the training and safety programs they have developed to care for VAD-supported patients. It is still recommended that cardio anaesthetists be involved in patients who require long-term pharmacological support, have major comorbidities, or are undergoing major surgery. In Australasia, given the lower numbers, it is likely that patients will continue to be cared for in cardiac centres with experience in VADs – at least in the short term, however as numbers of patients rise non-cardiac anaesthetists are increasingly likely to be involved in the care of patients supported with VADs.

Notwithstanding the comments above, patients with VADs undergoing non-cardiac surgery are at increased risk of perioperative problems, most notably hypotension. Other common perioperative problems include acute kidney injury, excess bleeding, and arrhythmias.

**PREOPERATIVE ASSESSMENT**

Prior to all non-emergency interventions, patients should be assessed by a multidisciplinary team consisting of the anaesthetist, the proceduralist, a heart failure cardiologist, and a VAD nurse specialist or perfusionist. Other specialists, such as a cardiac surgeon or haematologist, may also need to be consulted.

The preoperative assessment should focus on the patient’s functional status, their organ function (including renal, hepatic, and haematological), medications, and the functioning of the VAD. Any reversible problems, such as electrolyte disturbance, hypovolaemia, and so on, should be corrected prior to surgery. Common medications include diuretics, pulmonary vasodilators (for example, sildenafil), antiplatelet agents, angiotensin converting enzyme inhibitors, angiotensin receptor blockers, warfarin, and antiplatelet agents. Occasionally, patients with pulmonary hypertension and RV failure may be receiving long-term inhaled or intravenous pulmonary vasodilators or inotrope infusions.

Clinical examination of the cardiovascular system is challenging. Arterial pulses are typically non-palpable. Non-invasive blood pressure measurements may require a portable continuous wave Doppler device. Device hum obscures the heart sounds and any murmurs.

Investigations should include a full blood count, electrolytes and creatinine, liver function tests, coagulation studies, an ECG, and a chest radiograph. Greater than usual blood loss should be anticipated, and blood typed and crossmatched for transfusion as appropriate. For all but very minor procedures, an up-to-date echocardiogram should be available. The anaesthetist should particularly focus on RV function, which is frequently impaired.

A high proportion of VAD patients have implanted cardiac defibrillators (ICDs) or pacemakers. Immediately prior to surgery, ICDs and pacemakers should be programmed to an asynchronous mode and the anti-tachycardia and defibrillator functions disabled to avoid triggering by electrical diathermy.

Arrangements should be made for postoperative care in the intensive care unit (ICU) or high dependency unit (HDU). Following minor procedures, care in the coronary care unit (CCU) may be appropriate.

**Anticoagulation**

Patients with durable VADs are anticoagulated with warfarin, with a target international normalised ratio (INR) of 2.5-3.5 for the HeartMate II and 2.0-3.0 for the HeartMate III and HeartWare HVAD. All devices require concurrent use of an antiplatelet agent, most commonly aspirin. However, in the presence of aspirin resistance, a second anti-platelet agent may be added, typically clopidogrel.

For elective surgery, cessation of warfarin five days preoperatively and bridging with an infusion of unfractionated heparin once the INR is below 2.0 is recommended. For emergency surgery, reversal of warfarin to INR below 1.5 may be required depending on the procedure and the patient's history of thrombotic events. Pharmacological reversal of warfarin should be with a factor concentrate such as Prothrombin, not vitamin K, as the patient will require reintroduction of warfarin in the early postoperative period.
INTRAOPERATIVE MANAGEMENT

Monitoring
In addition to standard monitors, patients with VADs should have invasive arterial blood pressure monitoring for all but the most minor procedures. If bleeding is a possibility, large-bore intravenous access should be obtained. Non-pulsatile arterial flow makes arterial line placement challenging; ultrasound-guidance is useful. For minor procedures, non-invasive alternatives to arterial catheterisation may be appropriate. Of the non-invasive methods, intermittent mean arterial blood pressure obtained via Doppler ultrasound is the most reliable. The quality of the pulse oximetry trace may be degraded by non-pulsatile flow; however, satisfactory readings are usually possible. Near-infrared (cerebral) spectrosopy (NIRS), which does not rely on pulsatile flow, is widely used in VAD-supported patients undergoing non-cardiac surgery. NIRS is particularly useful if the pulse oximetry signal is poor. Bispectral index monitoring should be considered, as the usual haemodynamic responses to pain or awareness may be absent or blunted. External defibrillator pads should be placed prior to inducing anaesthesia. In a minority of cases, a central venous catheter (CVC) may be appropriate. A CVC should be considered when large fluid shifts or the use of inotropic agents is anticipated. A pulmonary artery catheter is rarely indicated.

Intraoperative echocardiography has a key role in evaluating the haemodynamic state and for guiding adjustments to VAD settings. Consequently, echocardiography – usually transthoracic or transesophageal echocardiography – is appropriate in most circumstances.

VAD preparation and management
The VAD specialist should interrogate the device prior to surgery, be present throughout the procedure, and remain in close communication with the anaesthetist and proceduralist. In particular, reduced VAD flow (litres per minute) for a given pump speed (rpm) should be immediately discussed.

During transport to the operating room, the patient’s VAD will be powered by batteries (typical battery life is six to 10 hours). Once positioned on the operating table, the VAD should be connected to a uninterrupted power supply. Spare batteries should remain with the patient throughout the case. The effect of the patient’s haemodynamic state on the function of the VAD is discussed below.

Anaesthesia technique
General anaesthesia, sedation, and monitored anaesthesia care are all appropriate techniques for patients with VADs. Major regional techniques and neuraxial blocks are typically avoided due to the risks associated with anticoagulation and the higher incidence of hepatic dysfunction in this patient population.

A wide range of drugs have been safely used for inducing and maintaining anaesthesia and superiority of one agent or combination of agents has not been demonstrated. Irrespective of the drugs used, careful attention to maintaining normotension is essential, as both hypotension (due to excessive vasodilatation) and hypertension can impact performance of the VAD.

Avoiding hypercarbia and hypoxia are important, as both can precipitate abrupt rises in pulmonary vascular resistance (PVR), which can in turn cause acute RV failure in patients with impaired RV function. For this reason, hypoventilation, as a consequence of deep sedation or spontaneous ventilation via a laryngeal mask airway, should be avoided.

Haemodynamic management
Continuous flow VADs are preload dependent and afterload sensitive, meaning the output of the VAD is reduced by low preload and high afterload. Thus, marked changes in blood pressure or intravascular volume status can affect VAD flow and, therefore, the patient’s cardiac output. In particular, sudden hypovolaemia can critically reduce the preload to the VAD precipitating a suction event.

A mean arterial pressure (MAP) target of 60-80 mmHg throughout the perioperative period is appropriate. A MAP persistently below 60 mmHg risks causing or exacerbating end-organ dysfunction – particularly renal dysfunction. A MAP above 80 mmHg can adversely affect VAD performance, resulting in lower flow for a given pump speed. A MAP persistently above 90 mmHg is associated with worsening of aortic regurgitation, pump thrombosis, and stroke. Blood pressure control is achieved by carefully administering vasopressors (for example, metaraminol, noradrenaline) and, less frequently, vasodilators (for example, magnesium, nitroglycerine) rather than adjusting the VAD settings. Indeed, only very rarely should VAD settings be changed during the perioperative period.

Reduced preload to the VAD is most commonly due to hypovolaemia, which is treated in the usual way with fluids and blood component therapy. However, reduced preload to the VAD can also occur due to RV dysfunction. Most patients supported by VADs have existing RV dysfunction and pulmonary hypertension. Indeed, some are in incipient or frank right-heart failure. Factors that affect RV afterload, such as aortic valve stenosis, congenital mitral valve stenosis, and chronic atrial fibrillation, contribute to right ventricular failure. Increased PVR limits VAD performance, and while inotropic support and right heart venting can improve RV function, the risk of acute right heart failure due to high PVR is high.

VADs are typically dilated and the RV poorly contractile. The ventricular and atrial septa will be displaced markedly leftward. If the cause is hypovolaemia, the RV will not be excessively dilated, relative to what is normal for that patient, and the ventricular and atrial septa not particularly displaced from the normal position.

Suction events occur when low preload to the VAD causes the LV to “suckdown” on to the inflow cannula. Typically, the low flow alarm on the VAD is triggered, and the patient becomes acutely hypotensive. Suction events can also trigger malignant ventricular arrhythmias. With echocardiography, the LV appears dramatically reduced in size, the ventricular septum is displaced markedly leftward and there may be severe turbulence at the origin of the inflow cannula.

Initial treatment involves acutely reducing VAD pump speed to release the suction and then slowly increasing pump speed over 30-60 seconds. Subsequent treatment depends on the cause – either fluid for hypovolaemia or an inotrope for acute RV failure.

Haematological management
Depending on the procedure, the bridging heparin infusion may be continued throughout the intraoperative period (uncommon) or stopped two to four hours before surgery (common). Patients with VADs have high rates of bleeding complications. In a study by Morgan et al, 36 per cent of patients supported with VADs undergoing non-cardiac surgery required a red blood cell transfusion perioperatively, with the need for transfusion strongly associated with not reversing warfarin prior to surgery. Other series report red blood cell transfusion rates of 4-41 per cent.

The increased bleeding risk is not only related to anticoagulant therapy. Patients with continuous flow VADs develop acquired von Willebrand syndrome and factor XIII deficiency. Acquired von Willebrand syndrome occurs due to device-related circulatory shear stress, which induces glycoprotein unfolding and enzymatic cleavage – resulting in the loss of high molecular weight von Willebrand factor multimers. While not routine, administration of desmopressin should be considered in procedures at high risk of substantial blood loss. Additionally, patients with continuous flow VADs are at risk of development of gastrointestinal arteriovenous malformations, which can lead to gastrointestinal bleeding during the perioperative period.

Antibiotic prophylaxis and infection control
The decision within the device can be catastrophic, potentially leading to persistent sepsis and arterial embolisation. Explanation of the device is occasionally required. Therefore, meticulous attention to aseptic technique is mandatory. For surgery involving the gastrointestinal tract, broad spectrum antibiotics and consideration of the addition of an antifungal agent is appropriate. A combination of vancomycin and cephalazolin is frequently used for other procedures.

Wherever possible, surgical preparation and draping should exclude the externalised driveline entry site, to avoid contamination.

SURGICAL CONSIDERATIONS
As with other implanted electrical devices, bipolar diathermy should be used in preference to monopolar diathermy to avoid potential electromagnetic interference. When there is no alternative to monopolar diathermy, the grounding pad should be placed as far as possible from the pump and driveline.
Damage to the drainer can cause the device to malfunction or cease to function, which may be catastrophic. Therefore, patient positioning should be done in a coordinated and cautious manner, with a nominated person (usually the VAD specialist) responsible for the safety of the drainer, and the power source43-45. The theatre team should be aware of the effects of patient positioning on VAD function. Raising the head of the bed can lead to reduced preload to the VAD. Similarly, lowering the head of the bed increases intrathoracic pressure and augments RV filling, adversely affecting RV function, which in turn can reduce preload to the VAD. Prone positioning should be avoided if possible. However, there are reported cases of successful prone positioning for neurosurgical procedures31. Pneumoperitoneum can increase LV afterload. A simple rule of thumb is to assume surgical pneumoperitoneum may adversely affect both VAD preload and afterload, potentially reducing pump flow or precipitating a suction event.

In the presence of severe hypotension, the anaesthetist should immediately confirm the problem is real and inform the VAD specialist who should inspect the patient (colour, pupils), the ECG, the capnography trace, and listen to the VAD hum. The VAD specialist should report the pump speed and device flow, noting any changes. A rapid assessment tool for the unresponsive patient with a VAD has been developed by the American Heart Association (AHA)46. While not designed for patients in the operating room, the tool is easily adapted to cardiac arrest. Chest compressions are recommended in the absence of supporting evidence47,48. However, the AHA guideline recommends chest compressions be commenced for a sustained MAP less than 50 mmHg and/or an end-tidal carbon dioxide partial pressure less than 20 mmHg. If chest compressions are administered, an echocardiogram should be performed in the immediate post-resuscitation period to check the position of the inflow cannula and function of the device.

ADVANCED CARDIAC LIFE SUPPORT

Diagnosis of cardiac arrest can be challenging due to the monitoring issues outlined above. There may be uncertainty as to the primary cause. The two most likely causes of cardiac arrest or near cardiac arrest are sustained malignant ventricular arrhythmias and suction events. Causes unrelated to the heart and VAD must also be considered, such as hypoxaemia, tension pneumothorax, and anaphylaxis. Only rarely is intraoperative cardiac arrest caused by device malfunction, such as damage to the drainer, loss of power, or pump failure. However, VAD-related causes must be considered when the operative site is close to the device.

In the presence of severe hypotension, the anaesthetist should immediately confirm the problem is real and inform the VAD specialist who should inspect the patient (colour, pupils), the ECG, the capnography trace, and listen to the VAD hum. The VAD specialist should report the pump speed and device flow, noting any changes. A rapid assessment tool for the unresponsive patient with a VAD has been developed by the American Heart Association (AHA)46. While not designed for patients in the operating room, the tool is easily adapted to cardiac arrest. Chest compressions are recommended in the absence of supporting evidence47,48. However, the AHA guideline recommends chest compressions be commenced for a sustained MAP less than 50 mmHg and/or an end-tidal carbon dioxide partial pressure less than 20 mmHg. If chest compressions are administered, an echocardiogram should be performed in the immediate post-resuscitation period to check the position of the inflow cannula and function of the device.

POSTOPERATIVE CARE

Most patients are able to be safely extubated at the completion of non-cardiac surgery and discharged to the post-anesthesia care unit. Ongoing postoperative care is most appropriately provided in the ICU/HUDU or CCU. Specific postoperative considerations for patients with VADS include optimisation of intravascular volume status, prevention of hypoxaemia and hypercarbia, prevention of nosocomial sepsis, and the provision of adequate pain relief. Analgesia can lead to sympathetic nervous system suppression and hypercarbia, and chest splitting – all of which can adversely affect VAD performance. Any change in the functioning of the VAD – in particular, reduced flow for a given pump speed – should be urgently investigated with an echocardiogram. If present, ICDs and pacemakers should be interrogated and returned to preoperative settings in the immediate postoperative period. Prior to reprogramming the ICD, the patient should remain connected to an external defibrillator.

The appropriate time to reintroduce anticoagulant and antplatelet agents reflects a balance between the risks of surgical bleeding and pump thrombosis. The decision should be made by the multidisciplinary team with input from different specialists. There is a growing body of evidence showing that non-cardiac anaesthetists are able to safely manage this patient population, assuming they have an adequate understanding of the relevant perioperative issues and access to appropriate support.

The key aspects for anaesthetists are: (1) managing the haemodynamic state; (2) understanding the dynamics of VAD performance – particularly the causes of reduced pump flow and the impact on the patient monitoring; (4) managing perioperative anticoagulation; and (5) appreciating the importance of strict aseptic technique. Anaesthetists unfamiliar in managing patients with VADS are encouraged to consult colleagues with specific expertise, notably anaesthetists and cardiologists experienced in mechanical circulatory support. VAD nurse or perfusion specialists are another valuable resource.

REFERENCES


Coagulation and blood

Transfusion implications in a COVID-19 era
Michelle Roets, David Sturgess, Melinda Dean

Direct acting oral anticoagulants – pharmacology and perioperative considerations
Kate Drummond
Transfusion implications in a COVID-19 era

Michelle Roets MBChB, DA, FCARCSI, FANZCA, MSc
Consultant anaesthetist, lead of the intraoperative cell salvage (ICS) service, Royal Brisbane and Women’s Hospital (RBWH), Queensland
Dr Michelle Roets is currently a PhD student with the University of Queensland (UQ), studying the cost and immunological benefits of ICS.

David Sturgess MBBS, PhD, PGDipCU, FRACGP, FANZCA, FCICM, AFRACMA, GAICD
Associate Professor, Eminent Staff Specialist and Director of Anaesthesia Surgical Treatment and Rehabilitation Hospital (STARS) and Mater Research Institute, The University of Queensland
Associate Professor David Sturgess is a dual-qualified anaesthetist and intensive care physician. One of his core research interests is characterisation of the inflammatory response to surgery and critical illness.

Melinda Dean BAS, PhD
Senior lecturer in Biomedical Science at the University of the Sunshine Coast and Adjunct Research Fellow at Australian Red Cross Lifeblood
Dr Melinda Dean’s research is focused at the interface of immunology and haematology with expertise in the fields of innate immunology, inflammation, blood transfusion and erythrocyte structure and function.

INTRODUCTION
Severe acute respiratory syndrome coronavirus 2 (SARS-CoV-2) resulting in COVID-19 has had major consequences internationally. Originally a third of COVID-19 patients in the UK were estimated to die1. By 17 July 2021, according to the WHO (World Health Organization) dashboard, there were 188,655,968 confirmed cases and 4,067,517 deaths related to COVID-192. The consequences to transfusion practice, treatment and blood product supply implications were assessed by Stanworth et al (Lancet 2020) during a systematic review of published literature (considering more than 9000 citations and including 121 citations)3. Other implications of transfusion alternatives, and the ability to use viscoelastic testing in addition to standard laboratory measurements when managing transfusion and coagulation in COVID-19 patients were considered in this review.

COVID-19: COAGULATION IMPLICATIONS
Even though respiratory failure remained the most relevant feature of COVID-19, abnormal coagulation and fibrin metabolism were of interest. COVID-19 patients (compared to controls) presented with lower antithrombin levels and prothrombin time and higher D-dimer values, fibrin/fibrinogen degradation products (FDP) and fibrinogen. Higher D-dimer and FDP values and shorter thrombin times were associated with poorer prognosis4 and increased mortality5. Anecdotal reports described frequent clotting in ECMO circuits, when used to treat patients with COVID-19 related respiratory failure6. Anaemia and thrombocytopenia were uncommon but if present associated with worse outcomes.

Coagulation abnormalities and disease severity were closely related. Lin et al (2021) in a meta-analysis (1341 cases across 13 studies) found that thrombocytopenia, high D-dimer and high fibrinogen levels on admission predicted worse outcomes7. Similarly Malas et al (Lancet 2020, 8271 cases across 42 studies) found thromboembolic events were increased in those with severe disease and associated with a higher mortality rate8. Al-Samkari et al studied the incidence of venous thromboembolism (VTE), disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC) and haemorrhage in critically ill COVID-19 patients (n=144). The overall thrombotic complication rate was 9.5 per cent. D-dimer level is commonly assessed in critically ill patients. Both D-dimer and fibrinogen increases were statistically significant predictors of thrombotic complications and increased D-dimer levels predicted non-survivors. DIC occurred in three patients (International Society for Thrombosis and Haemostasis definition)9. It is worthwhile to note that others found a higher incidence of DIC10. Importantly the way venous thrombo-embolism and disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC) were defined differed across studies and should be considered when comparing results. In a study from France, even though thrombotic complications were common (n=150) only four (3 per cent) were complicated by haemorrhage11. Realistically haemorrhage events associated with overall severe inflammatory response in critically ill patients were not unique to COVID-1912. Even though fewer cases experienced thrombocytopenia and reduced fibrinogen, those were associated with major haemorrhage events.
Viscoelastic testing

Despite ongoing guidance and recommendations to continue standard coagulation testing (prothrombin time (PT), activated partial thromboplastin time (APTT), fibrinogen and platelet count) the use of viscoelastic testing as an immediate measure of clotting ability and clot strength was increasingly valued. Various technical methods developed by different manufacturers advanced viscoelastic testing since its original description by Herbert in 1848. Even though these advancements ensured progress the use of different technologies made comparisons across research projects challenging. During our review, to assess the value of viscoelastic testing in the management of COVID-19 patients, we considered methods commonly used in Australia: Rotational thromboelastometry (ROTEM®) (ROTEM®; TEM International, Munich, Germany) and thromboelastography (TEG®) (TEG®, Haemonetics, Braintree, MA).

Reports where viscoelastic testing were used to direct assessment and therapy in COVID-19 patients presented interesting findings. Most studies evaluated relevant differences in clot formation, strength and lysis. Hypercoagulability, described as accelerated clot formation, clot strength and reduced fibrinolysis (more common stages critically ill COVID-19 patients), can potentially be predicted by early evaluation of Rotational thromboelastometry (ROTEM®) and Krouse et al compared thromboelastometry and standard laboratory tests in severely ill COVID-19 patients and in others with severe sepsis. Relatively reduced fibrinolysis was observed in the COVID-19 group. These authors recommended the combination of ROTEM® measurements and D-dimer concentration to predict disease severity and direct higher intensity anticoagulation.

Hartman et al in 2021, conducted a systematic review including 15 publications, to assess the value of thromboelastography (TEG® hemostasis analyzer) in the management of COVID-19 patients. TEG® could identify a hypercoagulable state and predict thrombotic complications in patients with COVID-19. In a study of 21 COVID-19 patients increased fibrinogen and D-dimer levels were found with normal international normalised ratio (INR), partial thromboplastin, and platelet levels. These changes suggest an inflammatory and hematologic disease process different from traditional DIC. The role of therapeutic anticoagulation in critically ill COVID-19 patients, in terms of the optimal pharmaceutical agent and dosing, when balancing potential haemorrhagic and thrombotic risks, remains controversial. Most agree that future studies are needed targeted at subgroups of COVID-19 patients to direct coagulation therapy and ensure a definitive strategy.

THE IMPLICATIONS TO OTHER BLOOD PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS AND BLOOD SUPPLY

The WHO guidance on maintaining a safe and adequate blood supply during the COVID-19 pandemic outlined the primary measures for consideration as follows: 1) mitigating the potential risk of transmission through the transfusion of blood and blood components, 2) mitigating the risk of staff and donor exposure to SARS-CoV-2, 3) ensuring an adequate supply of critical material and equipment, 4) communication, and 5) collection of convalescent plasma.

As a consequence of the COVID-19 pandemic, blood product requirements became uncertain while reduced in demand subsequent to reduced elective surgery. Transfusion requirements in COVID-19 patients were low (mostly observational data). Changes were therefore introduced to allow group O positive use for male patients over 16 years of age and female patients over 50 years of age. Laboratory practices were not changed, but allowance made to not return unused blood products (when in contact with COVID-19 patients) to the blood bank inventory. In cases requiring the management of transfusion reactions, the blood product would be sent to microbiology instead of to the blood bank.

Risk of COVID-19 transmission

The risk of transmission of transmitted infection (TTI) of SARS-CoV-2 was determined to be low. To date, there have been no reports of SARS-CoV-2 TTI. Although the blood phase of SARS-CoV-2 infection has not been fully characterised, SARS-CoV-2 infection is associated with low or absent viral RNA in blood (vRNAemia) negating the requirement for the introduction of SARS-CoV-2 RNA screening test for blood donors. From previous experience other respiratory viruses and MERS-CoV are not detected in blood transfuends.

Standard pre-donation screening and associated deferrals were the primary measures to maintain the safety of the blood supply during the pandemic. Further, in Australia, donors were asked three questions about their wellbeing, recent travel, and whether they had been diagnosed with COVID-19 or in close contact with someone who had. Donors with a fever were not allowed to register for their donation. On the day of donation, eligible donors completed a non-contact temperature check. Donors who returned from overseas or had been in close contact with someone diagnosed with COVID-19 were required to wait 28 days before donating blood.

A similar approach was used in New Zealand. Vaccinated individuals in Australia were eligible to donate seven days after receiving their vaccine, provided they felt healthy and well. The National Blood Authority National Blood Supply Contingency Plan was not activated during the pandemic as relevant trigger inventory points within the plan were not reached.

Convalescent plasma (CPP)

During the pandemic CCP, from recovered SARS-CoV-2 infected individuals, was collected in many countries as a potential therapeutic option to combat the severity of COVID-19. The rationale was to use plasma from those recovered in the hope that neutralising antibodies against SARS-CoV-2 could lower or eliminate the viral load in patients with COVID-19. Clinical benefit was evident from case series. CCP could be collected at different stages after recovery (>14-28 days or >28 days) using different products (apheresis plasma, whole blood-derived plasma).

Australian Red Cross Lifeblood commenced collection of CCP from recovered individuals in May 2020 (from men only, in line with standard risk reduction strategies for transfusion-related acute lung injury). Neutralising antibody titre was determined post donation with titre ≥1:80 suitable for clinical trial use and ≥1:40 suitable for fractionation to manufacture COVID-19 immunoglobulin. In addition to use in clinical trials, compassionate use of CCP was approved in Australia for two immunosuppressed patients with prolonged PCR positivity and symptomatic COVID-19 that were unable to mount an antibody response. Collection of CCP ceased in Australia on 31 March 2021 due to the limited requirement, lack of ongoing evidence supporting the benefits of convalescent plasma and the successful control of the pandemic (which would also comprise as well as the number of individuals with antibodies to derive a suitable product). In addition, subsequent to the vaccine rollout and strong antibody responses, passive antibody products could be derived from vaccinated individuals should the need arise.

PERIOPERATIVE IMMUNE MODULATION

While previously perhaps underappreciated since the start of the current COVID-19 pandemic the study of immunity has become truly relevant and important. The immune system is however complex and modulated by many factors during surgery, including anaesthesia and transfusion. Even though transfusion ensures the survival of many trauma patients, subsequent adverse outcomes, for example infection, increasingly affect patient outcomes. Trauma accounted for more than five million deaths per year internationally (WHO). Postoperative sepsis, organ dysfunction, and mortality (up to 5-8% of cases) were considered advanced complications of both surgical procedures and production and monocyte HLA-DR expression. Altered TNF-α, monocyte surface mCD14 and HLA-DR expression were described as immunoparalysis (“a hallmark of altered immune status in patients with a systemic inflammatory response syndrome”). Even though the exact mechanism remains unclear, increased nosocomial infections and organ impairment, reduced overall survival, following surgery for lung and bowel cancer, may be the consequence of immune modulation. To ensure homeostasis, a delicate balance between pro- and anti-inflammatory activation is required. Dysregulation of the inflammatory response can result in ongoing inflammation or immune suppression associated with increased and pre-transfusion testing in biosafety cabinets. Transfusion services at the Royal Brisbane and Women’s Hospital (RBWH) changed minimally in preparation for potential COVID-19 cases. Donor availability was considered a potential concern, especially the availability of group O negative blood for emergency use. Changes were therefore introduced to allow group O positive use for male patients over 16 years of age and female patients over 50 years of age. Laboratory practices were not changed, but allowance made to not return unused blood products (when in contact with COVID-19 patients) to the blood bank inventory. In cases requiring the management of transfusion reactions, the blood product would be sent to microbiology instead of to the blood bank.
risk of post-operative sepsis and multiorgan dysfunction. The type of anaesthetic may affect the cellular response, reduce systemic infection rates and improve prognosis.

Other perioperative medications for example dexamethasone and antimicrobial drugs (a large and growing field of study) are important. Macrolide antibiotics, such as azithromycin, an antiviral and antiparasitic drugs are among those with known immune modulatory effects. The degree of immune modulation also correlates with the extent of the surgical trauma, patient comorbidities, the type of surgery and disease process (for example, cancer surgery), coexisting infection, impaired nutritional status, pain, psychological stress, surgical inflammation, hypotension and hypothermia.

### TRIM

Transfusion related immune modulation (TRIM) describes a delayed immune response following ABT or ICS exposure associated with postoperative infection risk, cancer recurrence and other adverse outcomes. Since the 1970s many aimed to confirm the mechanism of TRIM and various theories were studied. Alterations of the immune system after trauma and surgery result in activation of antigen-presenting cells such as monocytes and dendritic cells as well as HLA-DR expression and the subsequent susceptibility to postoperative infection. It may be possible to reduce immune modulation and subsequent immunological suppression by using intra-operative cell salvage (ICS) instead of allogeneic blood transfusion (ABT). During a recent prospective observational study at the Royal Brisbane and Women’s Hospital (RBWH) an in vitro model was used to evaluate immune competence (2020) following ABT or ICS exposure. Intracellular cytokine production, co-stimulatory and adhesion molecule expression on dendritic cells and monocytes and the modulation of the overall leukocyte response were assessed. Exposure to both ABT and ICS suppressed dendritic cell and monocyte function. This suppression was however less marked following ICS, confirming improved immune competence.

### INTRAOPERATIVE CELL SALVAGE

ICS is a blood conservation technique that allows extravasated blood to be collected from the surgical field, anticoagulated, processed and returned to the patient. The processed blood is then used as a blood substitute. It is associated with a lower risk of transmission of infective agents to the patient. Though favoured by specific surgical sub-specialties including vascular, major orthopaedic, urology and plastic surgery. New risks and considerations therefore compelled some changes to our existing ICS protocol. Considering additional staffing and equipment would potentially be necessary to meet the increased demand.

During the COVID-19 pandemic ICS became a viable option: to provide an alternative blood supply with potential immunological benefits. The incidence of haemorrhage during surgery in COVID-19 positive patients did not increase substantially. It was therefore unlikely that a cell salvage service would be overwhelmed as a consequence. It is however important to consider that the increased burden relevant to personal protection equipment and infection prevention precautions would also apply to cell salvage staff.

ICS may also, in patients with confirmed or suspected COVID-19 disease, provide an immediate blood supply during urgent cases across a variety of sub-specialities: vascular, cardiothoracic, obstetrics and gynaecology, orthopaedic, spinal, general, urology and plastic surgery. New risks and considerations therefore compelled some changes to our existing ICS protocol. Considering additional staffing and equipment would potentially be exposed to SARS-CoV-2, ICS should only be used if essential, where clinically indicated and when significant haemorrhage is expected. The requirement of ICS should be discussed with the anaesthetist and surgeon responsible for care.

### COVID-19 specific ICS equipment

The ICS machine (autotransfusion device) should be stored outside and only taken into the COVID-19 theatre when required. The equipment should be cleaned with the specific product recommended by local infection control policy for cleaning of medical equipment (for example CLINEL® wipes), before and after use, similar to other equipment used in theatre (for example the ultrasound machine). All consumables should be used according to the relevant manufacturer’s guidance and after use discarded into clinical waste bags or bins, like other used intravenous tubing and giving sets. It is recommended that autotransfusionists use a checklist (see Table 1), with commonly used items, to prepare before the start of each case. These items can be kept on a separate trolley, available to take into the room once ICS processing is required. Ensuring all the required items are taken into theatre, when the autotransfusionists enter, will reduce the number of times equipment gets transferred or requested into the COVID-19 theatre. An ICS consumable trolley, with backup equipment, should be kept outside the COVID-19 theatre and required items handed into the theatre.

### COVID-19 specific autotransfusionist role

The autotransfusionist (trained ICS staff member) should only be inside the COVID-19 theatre for the duration of time required to complete the process (from collection until ICS blood for re-infusion is provided to the anaesthetist) at a false positive results with little added benefit. In line with microbiology advice this practise ceased in 2015. Serial testing (patient samples) required for standard clinical management during cases where major blood loss occur are done independent of the use of ICS.

The standard ICS procedure

At the start of the surgery, the sterile ICS suction tubing is handed to the scrubbed nurse in theatre, in a sterile fashion, who then returns the vacuum port for connection onto the relevant port on the ICS reservoir. When preparing the anticoagulant solution, commonly 30,000 IU of heparin is introduced to one litre of intravenous (IV) normal saline (0.9 per cent NaCl). When heparin is contraindicated Acid Citrate Dextrose (ACD) can be used instead. It is important to consider that each manufacturer and autotransfusion device may require different wash program settings when using ACD instead of heparin.

ICS reservoir and the collection set is primed with anticoagulant (according to the specific manufacturer’s guidance) before the collection of salvaged blood can proceed.

Most manufacturers provide separate consumables to allow setup for collection and for processing (if required). Suction pressure is preferably kept below <150 mmHg to reduce the amount of red blood cell haemolysis. Once the collection of salvaged blood reach 500 ml (or sooner if deemed clinically necessary), the autotransfusionist will start processing collected blood. Collected salvaged blood within a re-infusion bag, with an applicable label, is provided to the anaesthetist team for re-infusion.

The involvement of a well-trained autotransfusionist is essential to: Manage specific autotransfusion device with an applicable label, is provided to the anaesthetic team for re-infusion.

### THE IMPLICATIONS TO AN INTRAOPERATIVE CELL SAVAGE SERVICE DURING COVID-19

During the COVID-19 pandemic ICS became a viable option: to provide an alternative blood supply with potential immunological benefits. The incidence of haemorrhage during surgery in COVID-19 positive patients did not increase substantially. It was therefore unlikely that a cell salvage service would be overwhelmed as a consequence. It is however important to consider that the increased burden relevant to personal protection equipment and infection prevention precautions would also apply to cell salvage staff.

ICS may also, in patients with confirmed or suspected COVID-19 disease, provide an immediate blood supply during urgent cases across a variety of sub-specialties: vascular, cardiothoracic, obstetrics and gynaecology, orthopaedic, spinal, general, urology and plastic surgery. New risks and considerations therefore compelled some changes to our existing ICS protocol. Considering additional staffing and equipment would potentially be exposed to SARS-CoV-2, ICS should only be used if essential, where clinically indicated and when significant haemorrhage is expected. The requirement of ICS should be discussed with the anaesthetist and surgeon responsible for care.

### COVID-19 specific ICS equipment

The ICS machine (autotransfusion device) should be stored outside and only taken into the COVID-19 theatre when required. The equipment should be cleaned with the specific product recommended by local infection control policy for cleaning of medical equipment (for example CLINEL® wipes), before and after use, similar to other equipment used in theatre (for example the ultrasound machine). All consumables should be used according to the relevant manufacturer’s guidance and after use discarded into clinical waste bags or bins, like other used intravenous tubing and giving sets. It is recommended that autotransfusionists use a checklist (see Table 1), with commonly used items, to prepare before the start of each case. These items can be kept on a separate trolley, available to take into the room once ICS processing is required. Ensuring all the required items are taken into theatre, when the autotransfusionists enter, will reduce the number of times equipment gets transferred or requested into the COVID-19 theatre. An ICS consumable trolley, with backup equipment, should be kept outside the COVID-19 theatre and required items handed into the theatre.

### COVID-19 specific autotransfusionist role

The autotransfusionist (trained ICS staff member) should only be inside the COVID-19 theatre for the duration of time required to complete the process (from collection until ICS blood for re-infusion is provided to the anaesthetist) at a
distance (1-1.5 m) from the patient. At the end of the case, the autotransfusionist would clean and discard used items and discarded blood, similar to all other equipment and products used in the COVID-19 theatre.

### Table 1. Consumable checklist: The ICS COVID-19 case trolley

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Consumables for collection:</th>
<th>Consumables for processing:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1000 ml Normal Saline (0.9%)</td>
<td>2 x 1000 ml Normal Saline (0.9%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICS reservoir and collection set</td>
<td>Centrifuge/bowl set</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICS pack with sterile suction tubing</td>
<td>Cell salvage reinfusion bag</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Label for heparin solution</td>
<td>Label for salvaged/processed blood product</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5 ml syringe</td>
<td>Paper autotransfusion document</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drawing up needle</td>
<td>Pen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## ADDITIONAL INTERESTING FACTS

Associations between blood group type and infectious diseases such as tuberculosis, malaria, norovirus, retrovirus, chikungunya virus and Helicobacter pylori have previously been described. Analysis of ABO blood group and COVID-19 disease severity indicated group O may be associated with a lower risk of SARS-CoV-2 infection and group A may be associated with a higher risk of SARS-CoV-2 infection and severe disease. Further research is required to confirm these outcomes and to define mechanisms, it is important to note that ABO blood group may play a role in SARS-CoV-2 Infection and COVID-19 pathogenesis.

## CONCLUSION

COVID-19 may be associated with coagulation and fibrin metabolism abnormalities in infected patients. Anecdotally, evidence suggests that higher D-dimer and fibrin degradation values and shorter thrombin times were associated with poorer prognosis and increased mortality; however, more research is required to validate haematological biomarkers for prognosticating COVID-19 severity. Anaemia and thrombocytopenia were uncommon but if present associated with worse outcomes. Blood donation was categorised as an essential activity throughout the pandemic including periods of lockdown. Increased social, physical and travel restrictions presented a challenge to maintain sufficiency of the blood supply but this was largely offset by changes in elective surgery.

Donating and receiving allogeneic blood products during the COVID-19 pandemic is associated with minimal risk. Standardised protocols using viscoelastic testing to guide coagulation and platelet therapy in COVID-19 patients have been developed to maintain supply sufficiency. Blood donation was safe and effective during the pandemic. However, changes in transfusion practice were needed to ensure continuing supply sufficiency.

## ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The authors would like to acknowledge information received towards this publication from: The RBWH ICS group (David Cullingham, Trisha Bushell, Warick Fawkes, Russini Stapleton, Yves Long, Barry Elliott, Cassie Hohnke, Lee Elliott, Kym Webster, Peter Freeman, Vicki Swaine (Director Anaesthetic Healthcare Practitioners)) and Sue Williams (supervising scientist, pathology Queensland).

## REFERENCES

Direct acting oral anticoagulants – pharmacology and perioperative considerations

Kate Drummond MBBS FANZCA MMED
Senior Staff Specialist, Royal Adelaide Hospital, South Australia; Specialist Anaesthetist, Pulse Anaesthetics, Adelaide, South Australia; Clinical Senior Lecturer, University of Adelaide Medical School, Faculty of Health and Medical Sciences, Adelaide, South Australia

Dr Kate Drummond is a staff specialist anaesthetist at the Royal Adelaide Hospital and works in private practice with Pulse Anaesthesia. She has a master’s degree in perioperative medicine and her special areas of interest include perioperative blood management with a focus on blood conservation and cardiothoracic anaesthesia and transoesophageal echocardiography.

INTRODUCTION

Originally known as novel oral anticoagulants, dabigatran, rivaroxaban and apixaban have over the past 10 years become the anticoagulant of choice for several clinical conditions. These now not-so-novel drugs are well tolerated and often preferred to warfarin due to their lower risk of bleeding in the community, stable pharmacokinetics and ease of use for both patients and prescribers.

Better termed direct acting oral anticoagulants (DOACs), as this describes their mechanism of action, these drugs present both advantages and challenges for the perioperative clinician. This article reviews the pharmacology of, current indications for, and the perioperative management of the three DOACs available in Australia.

PHARMACOLOGY

Dabigatran – Direct thrombin inhibitor

Dabigatran etexilate is a potent, competitive, and reversible inhibitor of both free and clot-bound thrombin (factor IIa)\(^1\). Thrombin plays a pivotal role in clot formation. Insufficient thrombin activity will lead to bleeding, whereas excess thrombin activity will result in thrombosis\(^2\). Thrombin, produced by cleaving prothrombin, activates clot formation by activating factors V, VII and XI, by catalysing the conversion of fibrinogen to fibrin; and by stimulating platelet aggregation. All these functions are inhibited by dabigatran\(^1\). It is formulated as a prodrug that is hydrolysed into active dabigatran by non-specific microsomal carboxylesterases. Active dabigatran binds to the thrombin molecule’s active site which rapidly prevents clot formation.

Importantly, unlike warfarin, dabigatran has minimal drug interactions as it does not use the cytochrome P450 enzyme pathway for elimination. However, dabigatran levels may be increased by P-glycoprotein (P-gp) inhibitors (for example, amiodarone, clarithromycin, and venepamil)\(^4\). It has poor oral bioavailability, hence its formulation as a non-crushable capsule. It has four active metabolites and is predominantly renally cleared (see Table 1)\(^1\). Dose adjustment is required in the elderly and patients with renal impairment but not with hepatic impairment. Dabigatran can be removed with haemodialysis.

Apixaban and rivaroxaban – Factor Xa inhibitors

Both apixaban and rivaroxaban are direct inhibitors of free and clot bound factor Xa. Factor Xa is essential in generating thrombin from prothrombin. Factor Xa can be activated by both the intrinsic and extrinsic pathways and, once activated, binds with factor Va on the surface of platelets to form prothrombinase. Prothrombinase is responsible for cleaving prothrombin into thrombin. Each molecule of factor Xa generates around 1000 molecules of thrombin which then convert fibrinogen to fibrin\(^5\).

Factor Xa inhibitors bind selectively to factor Xa and unlike heparin do not need antithrombin to generate their pharmacological effect. Both apixaban and rivaroxaban are active drugs with good oral bioavailability and high plasma protein binding. They are both renally and faecally excreted and are less likely to accumulate in renal failure compared with dabigatran (see Table 1)\(^1\).
There are three main indications for the use of DOACs. Firstly, prevention of stroke in patients with non-valvular atrial fibrillation (AF); secondly prophylaxis of venous thrombosis after orthopaedic surgery; and thirdly treatment or prevention of recurrence of deep venous thrombosis (DVT) and/or pulmonary embolus (PE) (see Table 2). Additionally, more recently, rivaroxaban has been TGA-approved in Australia for the prevention of major cardiovascular events (a composite of stroke, myocardial infarction and cardiorespiratory death) in patients with coronary artery disease (CAD) or peripheral vascular disease (PVD) but is not currently available on the PBS for this fourth indication (see Table 2).

Non-valvular AF is the most common indication for DOACs. In this group, dabigatran has been shown to be superior to warfarin in preventing stroke with an overall lower rate of bleeding complications, although gastrointestinal (GI) bleeding rates were slightly higher. Rivaroxaban is non-inferior to warfarin at preventing strokes and has reduced rates of intracranial and fatal haemorrhage when compared with warfarin. Rivaroxaban, however, also has a higher rate of GI bleeding when compared with warfarin. Apixaban is also superior to warfarin at preventing strokes and has a reduced rate of bleeding complications compared with other DOACs.

All three DOACs have been shown to be superior to enoxaparin (40mg/day) at preventing venous thromboembolism (VTE) without an increase in bleeding complications after orthopaedic surgery, although they do not decrease mortality. Rivaroxaban may have slightly higher rates of bleeding when compared to other DOACs in this situation. The use of oral DOACs is also associated with higher patient satisfaction compared with subcutaneous LMWHs. Currently, the use of DOACs for VTE prophylaxis after other types of surgery is not recommended. The routine use of DOACs for VTE prophylaxis instead of low molecular weight heparin (LMWH) in hospitalised medical patients is also not currently recommended. A recent metanalysis showed no benefit in symptomatic patients and an associated higher risk of major bleeding.

All three DOACs are effective in treating confirmed venous thrombosis and embolic events. Multiple phase III trials have demonstrated their efficacy in more than 27,000 patients – more than 11,000 with PE – in preventing recurrent VTE or VTE-related death.

### Table 1. Pharmacokinetics of DOACs available in Australia

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DOACs</th>
<th>Dabigatran</th>
<th>Rivaroxaban</th>
<th>Apixaban</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Brand name</td>
<td>Pradaxa</td>
<td>Xarelto</td>
<td>Eliquis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action</td>
<td>IIa inhibition</td>
<td>Xa inhibition</td>
<td>Xa inhibition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bioavailability</td>
<td>3–7%</td>
<td>60% without food</td>
<td>50–60%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peak plasma level</td>
<td>2 hours</td>
<td>2–4 hours</td>
<td>1–4 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Half life</td>
<td>12–14 hours</td>
<td>Young: 5–9 hours</td>
<td>Elderly: 11–13 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renal excretion</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>35%</td>
<td>25%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protein binding</td>
<td>35%</td>
<td>&gt;80%</td>
<td>87%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interactions with Pgp inhibitors</td>
<td>++</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interaction with CYP3A4</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>+</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 2. TGA approved indications and PBS listing for DOACs available in Australia

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DOACs</th>
<th>Stroke prevention in non-valvular AF</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dabigatran</td>
<td>150 mg, twice daily or 110 mg, once daily in patients with any of the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rivaroxaban</td>
<td>20 mg, once daily or 15 mg, once daily if CrCl 30–50 ml/min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apixaban</td>
<td>5 mg, twice daily or 2.5 mg twice daily for patients with two or more of the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PBS listed</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DOACs</th>
<th>Venous thromboembolism prophylaxis after hip and knee surgery</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dabigatran</td>
<td>Hip: 220 mg once daily for 28–35 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rivaroxaban</td>
<td>Knee: 150 mg twice daily for 10 days or Knee &amp; Hip: 150 mg, once daily in patients with CrCl 30–50 ml/min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apixaban</td>
<td>Hip: 10 mg once daily for 35 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PBS listed</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DOACs</th>
<th>Treatment or prevention of recurrence of venous thrombosis and pulmonary embolism</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dabigatran</td>
<td>Treatment &amp; Prevention: 150 mg twice daily, following treatment with a parenteral anticoagulant for 35 days or Treatment &amp; Prevention: 110 mg, twice daily, in patients with any of the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rivaroxaban</td>
<td>Treatment: 15 mg, twice daily, for 21 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apixaban</td>
<td>Prevention: 20 mg, once daily, after 21 days of DVT/PE treatment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PBS listed</td>
<td>No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DOACs</th>
<th>Prevention of major cardiovascular events in CAD and/or PAD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dabigatran</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rivaroxaban</td>
<td>2.5 mg, twice daily, in combination with 100 mg aspirin, daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apixaban</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PBS listed</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
OFF-LABEL USE

In addition to the above indications, there are increasing numbers of case reports and small studies of DOACs being used for “off-label” indications such as intra-cardiac thrombi (mural and left atrial appendage) and valvular heart disease1,2. A recent retrospective database review of 2320 patients with AF and mitral stenosis showed favourable outcomes for both thromboembolism prevention and adverse events3,4. Currently there are no randomised controlled trials in these patient groups.

There is no indication for DOACs following bioprosthetic (tissue) heart valves as, following an initial three-month period of warfarin (mural and tricuspid only), low dose aspirin alone for thromboprophylaxis is adequate for thromboprophylaxis.

The use of DOACs in patients with mechanical heart valves is contraindicated2. A phase II trial (RE-ALIGN study) comparing dabigatran with warfarin in patients with aortic or mitral mechanical heart valves was terminated early due to an excess of thromboembolic and bleeding events among patients in the dabigatran group2. DOAC use post transcatheter aortic valve replacement (TAVR) has also been associated with an increase in all-cause mortality and bleeding risk when compared with anti-platelet therapy alone and is not currently recommended (GALILEO study)5,6.

DOSE MONITORING OF DOACS

Unlike warfarin, DOACs do not need routine monitoring for dose adjustment due to their predictable pharmacokinetics. It is, however, important to measure the effect of these drugs in some clinical situations, particularly the perioperative period.

Standard laboratory tests are unreliable for monitoring the effects of DOACs. Prothrombin time (PT), activated partial thromboplastin time (aPTT) and thrombin time (TT) have all been used and are affected by DOACs but their sensitivity depends on which DOAC is involved, the dose administered and the reagents used by the individual laboratory7.

TT is highly sensitive to dabigatran. A normal TT excludes the presence of dabigatran. However, very low and clinically insignificant plasma levels will produce a very long or unmeasurable TT making it unsuitable for monitoring7. Partial thromboplastin time (PTT) is useful for monitoring rivaroxaban. A normal PTT indicates that a clinically significant rivaroxaban effect is not likely. In contrast, apixaban has limited effect on PTT so this test should not be used for monitoring the effects of this drug8. An anti-Xa-activity of < 0.1 IU/ml calibrated for low molecular weight heparins has been reported to exclude an increased risk of bleeding in patients taking factor Xa inhibitors (rivaroxaban and apixaban) but is not recommended for routine monitoring of this class of drug4.

Specific plasma drug assays are available for both rivaroxaban and apixaban. The laboratory should be notified which anti-Xa drug the patient is taking so that the correct chromograph assay can be used. Dabigatran levels can be measured using the Hemoctot assay (see Table 3)9. Generally, a plasma level of 50ng/ml or more is considered therapeutic for these drugs.

Drug levels for DOACs are not routinely measured for patients maintained on DOACS due to their stable pharmacokinetics. This is considered one of their major advantages over warfarin. Despite this, there are situations where drug level monitoring may change clinical management, for example, during the perioperative period, if the patient has a major haemorrhage event, or if the patient has a significant change in their renal or hepatic function10. While plasma drug ranges for recommended doses have been measured for some DOACs (for example, apixaban 50-200ng/ml), there are no published target therapeutic ranges for any of the available DOACs on the market11. While higher plasma levels have been shown to correlate with an increased bleeding risk, there are no studies correlating specific plasma drug levels with clinical outcomes12.

Bedside viscoelastic tests (ROTEM and TEG) are affected by DOACs. They will prolong the clotting time for both the EXTEM and INTEM on ROTEM in a dose dependent manner. This is likely to be useful in patients with higher plasma drug levels but is not always reliable. Studies looking at the effect of DOACs on TEG parameters have shown variable outcomes13.

All DOACs are excreted to some degree in the urine, depending on the drug and the patient’s renal function. A urine dipstick test (DOASENSE) can test for the presence or absence of inhibitors of Xa and for direct thrombin inhibitors14. This urine test offers several advantages over plasma drug levels. It is quick, taking only 10 minutes, and accurate, is less invasive than plasma sampling and overcomes difficulties in patients that are difficult to draw blood from15. Urine dipstick testing, however, is not quantitative and although it correlates well with the presence of the drug in plasma, as yet there are no trials validating its use in the context of clinical outcomes in the perioperative period15. It is likely to be of best use in the emergency setting when rapid detection of the presence of the drug in plasma will alter management.

PERIOPERATIVE MANAGEMENT

Elective surgery

Elective surgical patients should have their DOACs held. The duration of time each DOAC should be ceased for before surgery depends on the specific drug, whether the patient is taking a prophylactic or therapeutic dose, the type of surgery and the patient’s renal function (see Table 3). A minimum of two to three half-lives of the drug should be ceased, with a longer period of interruption required for dabigatran if renal impairment is present. Patients undergoing surgery with a high associated risk of bleeding will need their DOAC held for longer than for surgery with a lower bleeding risk (see Table 4).

A significant advantage of DOACs is that there is no role for preoperative bridging therapy in patients on DOACs for non-valvular AF because the half-life of the drugs and therefore the time off treatment is so short. However, if surgery is delayed and the DOAC has been held for more than four days, bridging with LMWH or heparin infusion is recommended16,17.

The PAUSE trial looked at a specific periprocedural cessation pathway for patients on prophylactic doses of DOACs for AF in 3007 patients (see Table 3). In general, holding apixaban or rivaroxaban for 24 hours and dabigatran for 48 hours prior to surgery is sufficient for low risk surgery in patients with normal renal function. Cessation for two to four days will be required for patients with renal impairment or for those undergoing high bleeding risk surgery (see Table 3)18,19. With this approach, major bleeding complications ranged from 0.5-1.8 per cent depending on the DOAC involved20. Some procedures may be able to be performed without ceasing DOACs (for example, cataract, gastroscopy)21. The recommended holding time for DOACs assumes the patient is on the appropriate dose for the patient’s renal function22.

The PAUSE trial also looked at plasma drug levels at the time of surgery. The PAUSE strategy resulted in a plasma drug level below 50ng/ml in more than 90 per cent of patients23. It is reasonable to assume that drug levels below 50ng/ml are safe to proceed with caution with many types of surgery, however, levels below 30ng/ml are recommended for most high bleeding risk procedures24,25.

Patients on therapeutic doses of DOACs for management of VTE or PE are of more concern as they are at an increased risk of recurrence of thromboembolic events even on therapy (up to 3 per cent) and may need longer times off their higher-dose DOAC before surgery. These patients should have careful consideration made to their bridging plan preoperatively, and especially postoperatively when at increased risk due to immobility and alterations in their coagulation profile2. The use of inferior vena cava (IVC) filters or left atrial appendage (LAA) closure devices in this group may be of benefit if anticoagulation must be ceased and bridging is difficult.

Neuropathic anaesthesia is particularly high risk with regard to the ramifications of bleeding related complications and an undetectable (<20ng/ml) plasma level is desired (see Table 3)26,27. The American Society of Regional Anesthesia (ASRA) has published guidelines in 2018 to advise anaesthetists on safe practice regarding cessation of DOACs (see Table 3). In patients on higher therapeutic doses of DOACs for treatment of VTE, neuroaxial blocks should be avoided for at least 72 hours after the last dose of DOACs or even longer with dabigatran in renal impairment (72-120 hours). Measurement of plasma levels can be considered before the 72-hour window to help guide decision making. Patients on lower prophylactic doses of DOACs for the prevention of VTE can safely undergo neuroaxial block 24-36 hours after the last dose28. Patients on dabigatran with ORCi <30 ml/min should not undergo neuroaxial blockade29,30.

Although no safe plasma levels have been published for neuropaual anaesthesia, it is reasonable to conclude that due to the potential catastrophic nature of bleeding complications, an abundance of caution should be taken and neuroaxial block only performed if residual drug levels are undetectable (<20ng/ml). Following neuroaxial block or manipulation of a neuroaxial catheter, DOACs should not be administered for six hours (see Table 3)31.

Patients undergoing peripheral nerve block may be able to undergo their procedure earlier than those undergoing neuroaxial block32.
Table 3. Management of DOACs in the perioperative period. (Note: neuroaxial blockade can be undertaken earlier in patients on lower, prophylactic doses of DOACs)5,23-27

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DOACs</th>
<th>Rivaroxaban 20 mg once a day</th>
<th>Dabigatran 150 mg twice a day</th>
<th>Apixaban 5 mg twice a day</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number of days of interruption</td>
<td>48–72 (CrCl &gt;50 ml/min)</td>
<td>48–72 (CrCl &gt;50 ml/min)</td>
<td>48–72 (CrCl &gt;50 ml/min)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Risk of bleeding in community</td>
<td>High bleeding risk (4-5 half-lives)</td>
<td>High bleeding risk (4-5 half-lives)</td>
<td>High bleeding risk (4-5 half-lives)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blood tests prior to surgery</td>
<td>TT &lt;20 secs – Excludes presence of dabigatran</td>
<td>TT &lt;20 secs – Excludes presence of dabigatran</td>
<td>TT &lt;20 secs – Excludes presence of dabigatran</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safe plasma levels (ng/ml)</td>
<td>Plasma level &lt;20ng/ml</td>
<td>Plasma level &lt;20ng/ml</td>
<td>Plasma level &lt;30 ng/ml</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum 3 days (72 hours)</td>
<td>Plasma level &lt;30 ng/ml</td>
<td>Plasma level &lt;30 ng/ml</td>
<td>Plasma level &lt;30 ng/ml</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standard laboratory blood tests before surgery</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and time (hrs) after regional anaesthesia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and time (hrs) after inadvertent diving to remove regional catheter</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCC (Prothrombinex); 25–50iu/kg</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Idarucizumab (Praxbind)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Andexanet alfa (Andexxa)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-specific PCC (Prothrombinex)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No available in Australia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not available in Australia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not available in Australia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not available in Australia</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4. Surgical bleeding risk classification5

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bleeding risk</th>
<th>Surgery</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>None to minimal</td>
<td>Non-complex dental</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>None to minimal</td>
<td>Ophthalmology e.g. cataract, glaucoma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>None to minimal</td>
<td>Endoscopy without surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>None to minimal</td>
<td>Superficial surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>None to minimal</td>
<td>Wound revision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low to moderate</td>
<td>Endoscopy with biopsy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low to moderate</td>
<td>Multiple or complex dental extraction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low to moderate</td>
<td>Prostate or bladder biopsy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low to moderate</td>
<td>Pacemaker or ICD insertion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low to moderate</td>
<td>Hernia repair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High</td>
<td>Open pelvic, abdominal, and cardiothoracic surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High</td>
<td>Urology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High</td>
<td>Intracranial neurosurgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High</td>
<td>Major orthopaedic and trauma surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High</td>
<td>Major vascular surgery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>High</td>
<td>Posterior chamber eye surgery</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Emergency surgery and bleeding patients

Patients who require emergency surgery or who present with bleeding when taking DOACs can provide challenges for the anaesthetist. Often DOAC history may be unknown or difficult to obtain in the emergency setting. In addition, acute kidney injury is common in this scenario so drug clearance can be significantly altered. In these situations, urine dipstick testing provides a simple and rapid method to ascertain the presence of any of the three DOACs in the blood. If the dipstick test is negative, it is unlikely there is significant DOAC in the plasma and any surgery required can proceed. If it is positive, it will help identify which DOAC is present and should prompt further investigation and management if bleeding is uncontrolled or if surgery cannot be delayed5.

For all patients who present for emergency surgery, the immediate cessation of DOACs should occur. The administration of activated charcoal has been advocated if DOAC administration was less than three hours prior to presentation5. Often a delay of 12-24 hours can reduce the plasma drug levels significantly, especially if on low doses for VTE prophylaxis, provided renal and hepatic function is normal. For patients requiring urgent surgery that can be safely delayed, it may be prudent to wait the appropriate length of time or for safe plasma levels to proceed (see Table 3)3.

For those that cannot wait for surgery, steps should be taken to reduce the risk of major bleeding. Plasma levels above 50ng/ml are generally considered high enough to warrant reversal5. Haemodialysis may be used to remove dabigatran from the plasma but this is ineffective for rivaroxaban or apixaban. Occasionally, there is insufficient time before emergency surgery to wait for laboratory plasma levels, in which case, clinical judgement should be used as to the necessity of reversal. Time since ingestion, renal function and type of surgery should all be taken into consideration when deciding whether reversal is necessary without plasma level results6.

Dabigatran can be reversed using idarucizumab (Praxbind), a monoclonal antibody that binds to dabigatran with very high affinity. It has an affinity for dabigatran that is more than 300 times that of the affinity of thrombin4,6. Idarucizumab is available for use in Australia for the emergency reversal of dabigatran but is not currently listed on the PBS. In the RE-VERSE-AD trial, following administration of 5g of idarucizumab, dabigatran levels were undetectable (<20ng/ml) within minutes and for 24 hours in most patients. This study included both patients with major bleeding (GI, intracranial) and patients who required urgent surgery5. A second dose is occasionally required after 24 hours if there is further postoperative bleeding5. Importantly, in this trial, thrombotic complications occurred in 6-7 per cent of patients within the first 90 days5.

Both rivaroxaban and apixaban can be reversed using andexanet alfa (Andexxa), however as of 2021 it remains unavailable in Australia. Andexanet alfa is a recombinant form of a modified human factor Xa that binds the drug in question but has no active site thus has no effect on coagulation5. It is usually given as a bolus followed by an infusion due to its short half-life (5-7 hours). After administration, thrombin generation levels will return to 96 per cent of normal5.
DOACs can be at least partially reversed prior to emergency surgery or during major bleeding using a prothrombin complex concentrate (PCC) such as Prothrombax at a dose of 25-50iu/kg. DOAC use for reversal of DOACs is off-label and the evidence for its use is limited, although several studies reported that major bleeding can be controlled in around two-thirds of patients. In addition, the use of PCC in the perioperative period is not without risk of thrombotic complications. Bearing these risks in mind, it is often sufficient to proceed to surgery with caution and only treat if major bleeding occurs. Fresh frozen plasma (FFP) should not be used to reverse oral anticoagulants as the concentration of clotting factors is too low to be effective. Other supportive measures such as mechanical compression, blood transfusion, temperature management, antifibrinolytic use and blood pressure control should all be used.

Postoperative resumption of DOACs

Anticoagulant related perioperative bleeding almost always occurs in the postoperative period when either resumption of therapeutic treatment or commencement of prophylactic anticoagulation occurs. When deciding at what time to resume DOAC therapy following surgery, clinicians should consider the risk and ramifications of postoperative bleeding and the indication for the DOAC.

In patients who have undergone surgery with immediate and complete haemostasis, it may be safe to resume DOAC therapy in as little as 6-8 hours. Otherwise, following surgery with a low risk of bleeding, it is usually safe to restart DOACs after 24 hours providing haemostasis has been achieved. The rapid onset after ingestion of DOACs is an advantage in this situation as the duration of time without full anticoagulation is short and bridging anticoagulation is usually not required. This makes the management of postoperative anticoagulation for minor and low risk surgery far easier when compared with warfarin.

For patients who have had surgery with high risk of bleeding, DOAC resumption should not occur for a minimum of 48-72 hours. In some cases, this may need to be even longer if haemostasis in high-risk cases has been difficult to achieve. In these situations, bridging with LMWH or heparin infusion should be considered, particularly for those at high risk of thromboembolism. Commencing with prophylactic doses of DOACs for a short time before surgery and recommencing full therapeutic doses has been advocated by some based on the results from orthopaedic trials but has not been formally investigated for other types of surgery.

For patients who have regional catheters in place, the ASRA guidelines recommend against recommencing DOACs while the catheters are in situ and for at least six hours after their removal. If a DOAC has inadvertently been given, the guidelines suggest waiting for 22-36 hours depending on which drug was given (see Table 3), or measuring a plasma level prior to removing the catheter.

Finally, when considering the resumption of DOAC therapy, postoperatively, it is important to consider acute changes in renal function. It may be necessary to reduce the initial dose to less than the patient's usual preoperative dose until renal function improves.

CONCLUSION

Over the past decade, DOACs have become the anticoagulants of choice for VTE prophylaxis in patients with AF, DVTs, PEs and after orthopaedic surgery and for the treatment of established DVTs and PEs. It is now common to see patients taking these drugs present for surgery and with the indications for this class of drug expanding, this will only increase. Having a good knowledge of the pharmacology and how to manage these drugs in both emergency and elective surgery and in patients experiencing bleeding events, will enable anaesthetists to manage these situations safely and effectively.

REFERENCES

An update on intrathecal baclofen
Corinne Teh, Sharon Keripin

Enhancing powerful medication – applications of the placebo response for pain management
Andrew Watson, Thomas Bruessel

Aue, Ta fia Olai Pain and the faaSamoa
Leinani Aiono-Le Tagaloa, Brenda Cassidy
An update on intrathecal baclofen

Dr Corinne Teh, MBBS BMusA
Resident Medical Officer, Pain Management Unit, The Queen Elizabeth Hospital, South Australia

Dr Teh has an interest in anaesthesia training, pain and perioperative medicine and is currently in a clinical research role of a trial of advanced recovery room care for enhanced recovery after surgery at the Royal Adelaide Hospital, South Australia.

Dr Sharon Keripin, MBBS FAFRM FFPMANZCA
Rehabilitation and Specialist Pain Physician, Pain Management Unit, The Queen Elizabeth Hospital, South Australia

Dr Keripin is currently working as a pain consultant at the Queen Elizabeth Hospital and Royal Adelaide Hospital and in private practice in Adelaide at The International Spine Centre. She is clinical lead for intrathecal baclofen management in South Australia.

INTRODUCTION

Intrathecal baclofen (ITB) is used in the management of severe spasticity and dystonia, commonly seen in patients with cerebral palsy, multiple sclerosis, traumatic spinal cord injuries and acquired brain injury, particularly when more conservative therapies such as enteral baclofen, botulinum toxin (Botox) injections to skeletal muscle and physical therapies have failed1,2. The spasticity can be painful or nonpainful, and can interfere with sleep and functions such as sitting in wheelchair comfortably or showering. The disabling sedation associated with enteral baclofen can be markedly reduced by ITB. In this review we present a recent case of a life-threatening complication of ITB, discuss presentations of complications and their management and we review the role of ITB in current pain management.

RECENT CLINICAL SCENARIO

A young adult patient with cerebral palsy-associated severe spasticity and dystonia managed long-term with intrathecal baclofen via an implanted Medtronic pump on a background of cerebral palsy presented to the Pain Management Unit for dose adjustment from approximately 1200mcg per 24 hours to 1300mcg per 24 hours on simple continuous mode. He had symptoms of a urinary tract infection (incontinence and frequency) and increased agitation and muscle rigidity over the previous 24 hours. Vital signs revealed a sinus tachycardia of 200 beats per minute, hypotension of 90/70mmHg and high-grade fever of 39.1. The patient was admitted to hospital, investigated for fever of unknown origin and treated for presumed sepsis with a likely urinary origin. He deteriorated and required admission to the intensive care unit for supportive care of rhabdomyolysis, acute renal failure and coagulopathy. He subsequently developed seizures and was sedated and intubated. A fluoroscopically guided aspiration of the intrathecal pump withdrew approximately 0.1-0.2mL of blood possibly indicating a complication related to the catheter interrupting the administration of baclofen to the intrathecal space. The patient was clinically in severe baclofen withdrawal although exclusion of meningitis could not be definitively proven. He was transferred to a quaternary centre intensive care unit for neurosurgical input and placed on nasogastric baclofen replacement of 40mg qid with stabilisation. The intrathecal catheter and pump were removed on day six post-admission without obvious fault in either device.

The diagnosis of baclofen withdrawal was masked by the clinical picture of sepsis thus treatment of withdrawal was delayed. The baclofen withdrawal mechanism remains unexplained though intermittent catheter kinking was the presumed problem because of looping subcutaneously. Due to previous complex spinal surgeries and scarring, future pump placement may be complicated. Thus, a pump replacement is still for further discussion, while the patient’s dystonia is managed with oral anti-spasmodic medications (baclofen 30mg qid, diazepam 2mg tds and levetiracetam) and Botulinum toxin injections.

PHARMACOLOGY OF BACLOFEN

Baclofen is a GABA agonist acting on the receptors in the spinal cord and reduces spasticity through presynaptic inhibition3. Intrathecal baclofen avoids systemic side effects associated with oral baclofen such as sedation, confusion, and lethargy4. The intrathecal dose required is less than 1 per cent of that delivered via oral route due to direct delivery to the central nervous system (CNS)5. Figure 1 is an illustration of typical placement of the pump under the skin of the abdomen with the catheter tunnelled under the skin and inserted into the CSF space.

ITB therapy can significantly improve quality of life for patients with painful and non-painful spasticity. However, as with any implanted device, there are risks of complications which should be carefully weighed against...
An update on intrathecal baclofen

The clinical presentation of intrathecal baclofen withdrawal or overdose can overlap with many other diagnoses and often can present initially as a change in mental state in an already highly disabled patient. As either withdrawal or overdose can be life threatening, in addition to a high index of suspicion, careful evaluation clinically and urgent investigations are warranted. The variation in clinical presentation of ITB overdose/withdrawal can result in delayed diagnosis and subsequent delay in life saving treatment. Table 1 outlines the presentation of intrathecal baclofen overdose and withdrawal; and its differential diagnosis.

| Differential diagnoses of intrathecal baclofen withdrawal or overdose |
|------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|
| Mechanism        | Abrupt increase in CNS GABA-β transmission | Abrupt decrease in CNS GABA-β transmission | Systemic inflammatory response syndrome and end organ dysfunction | Dysautonomia |
| Causes           | Incorrect programming | Incorrect programming | Infection | Dopamine-receptor blocking agents (e.g. Antipsychotics, metoclopramide) |
|                  | Pump failure | Catheter problems | Pump failure | Withdrawal of dopamine agonists (i.e. SSRIs, or MDMA) |
|                  | Human factors | Human factors | Human factors | |
| Time frame & severity | Within minutes | 1–2 days | Variable | Acute |
| Haemodynamics    | Autonomic instability | Tachycardia Hypotension/ lable BP | Tachycardia Hypotension | Tachycardia Autonomic instability |
|                  | Autonomic dysreflexia | Autonomic dysreflexia | Autonomic dysreflexia | Autonomic dysreflexia |
| Temperature      | ↑↓ | ↑ | ↑ | ↑ |
| Mental status    | Decreased conscious state | Agitation | Delirium | Mental status change |
|                  | Delirium | Delirium | Delirium | Mental status change |
|                  | Stupor/Coma | Stupor/Coma | Stupor/Coma | Stupor/Coma |
| Muscle activity & neurological | Flaccidity | Hyporeflexia | N/A | Increased muscle rigidity |
|                  | Hyperreflexia | Hyperreflexia | Hyperreflexia | Hyperreflexia |

INTRATHECAL BACLOFEN OVERDOSE AND WITHDRAWAL

The clinical presentation of intrathecal baclofen withdrawal or overdose can overlap with many other diagnoses and often can present initially as a change in mental state in an already highly disabled patient. As either withdrawal or overdose can be life threatening, in addition to a high index of suspicion, careful evaluation clinically and urgent investigations are warranted. The variation in clinical presentation of ITB overdose/withdrawal can result in delayed diagnosis and subsequent delay in life saving treatment. Table 1 outlines the presentation of intrathecal baclofen overdose and withdrawal; and its differential diagnosis.

| Differential diagnoses of intrathecal baclofen withdrawal or overdose |
|------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|
| Mechanism        | Abrupt increase in CNS GABA-β transmission | Abrupt decrease in CNS GABA-β transmission | Systemic inflammatory response syndrome and end organ dysfunction | Dysautonomia |
| Causes           | Incorrect programming | Incorrect programming | Infection | Dopamine-receptor blocking agents (e.g. Antipsychotics, metoclopramide) |
|                  | Pump failure | Catheter problems | Pump failure | Withdrawal of dopamine agonists (i.e. SSRIs, or MDMA) |
|                  | Human factors | Human factors | Human factors | |
| Time frame & severity | Within minutes | 1–2 days | Variable | Acute |
| Haemodynamics    | Autonomic instability | Tachycardia Hypotension/ lable BP | Tachycardia Hypotension | Tachycardia Autonomic instability |
|                  | Autonomic dysreflexia | Autonomic dysreflexia | Autonomic dysreflexia | Autonomic dysreflexia |
| Temperature      | ↑↓ | ↑ | ↑ | ↑ |
| Mental status    | Decreased conscious state | Agitation | Delirium | Mental status change |
|                  | Delirium | Delirium | Delirium | Mental status change |
|                  | Stupor/Coma | Stupor/Coma | Stupor/Coma | Stupor/Coma |
| Muscle activity & neurological | Flaccidity | Hyporeflexia | N/A | Increased muscle rigidity |
|                  | Hyperreflexia | Hyperreflexia | Hyperreflexia | Hyperreflexia |

COMPLICATIONS OF INTRATHECAL BACLOFEN

Complications relating to catheter factors appear more commonly than complications related to the implanted device (pump). Many catheter-related complications have been reported including: fracture, disconnection, kink, migration, laceration, leak, granuloma formation at tip and iatrogenic injury to catheter by procedures. Drug delivery pump complications have been reported due to programming failure or pump failure – electronic/battery failure and MRI magnets may unexpectedly stop the pump. Human factors have also been reported – refill failure (subcutaneous injection), prescribing error or pharmacy error and (delay) timing of refill and programming error.

Although infection of local and deep tissue, meningitis and abscess formation have been reported, this form of complication remains rare. Other sources of infection such as urinary tract infection and pneumonia are relatively common in this population.
An update on intrathecal baclofen

**REFERENCES**

Enhancing powerful medication – applications of the placebo response for pain management

Andrew Watson BHB, MBChB, DRACOG, FRACGP, MTMMPH, FANZCA, Dip Clin Hyp
Senior Staff Specialist in Anaesthesia and Pain, Calvary Bruce Public Hospital and The Canberra Hospital

Dr Andrew Watson is a senior consultant with special interests in teaching and communication. He is a lecturer at the Australian National University Medical School. His main focus is on developing a range of practical, evidence-based communication skills and strategies to maximise our performance and the effects of the powerful therapies we prescribe, for both novice and highly skilled practitioners.

Thomas Bruessel, Dr med, FANZCA
Department of Anaesthesia, Perioperative Medicine and Pain Management, Canberra Health Service, ACT

Professor Thomas Bruessel is the Director of the Department of Anaesthesia, Perioperative Medicine and Pain Management at Canberra Health Services and Chair of Anaesthesia at the Australian National University. He has strong interests in regional anaesthesia, neuroanaesthesia and neuro medicine.

INTRODUCTION

Our communication and the expectations we create make a powerful contribution to the response patients get to our strongest analgesics. This article will explore the rich and rapidly expanding placebo literature to focus on the underlying neurobiology of these responses and practical strategies to maximise the effects of our treatment.

A placebo is often described as an inert substance devoid of clinical effect, with its use outside of clinical trials banned by the Helsinki declaration and associated with trickery and deception. However, the effect of placebo and patient-medical team interactions are far from inert. As we will explore further, many trials and expert opinion suggest these account for 30 per cent of the analgesia experienced from our most powerful medications. Understanding and optimising this is a huge focus in pain management, illustrated by the fact that the International Association for the Study of Pain (IASP) has a special interest group devoted to placebo, and it has been identified as a significant gap in contemporary medical education. In clinical trials, the response to inert substances can be due to: the placebo effect, spontaneous resolution of symptoms/regression to the mean, and study flaws such as biases and false positives. This review explores the changes attributed solely to the placebo effect.

The placebo effect is a psychobiological phenomenon resulting from different mechanisms and pathways activated by patient expectations which can be shaped by our communication and learning or conditioning, including classical Pavlovian conditioning. Excellent studies investigating the role of these in enhancing therapy, or in the case of nocebo – often described as placebo’s evil twin – reducing the efficacy of our treatments, will be reviewed in this article. The neural networks activated or inhibited are often shared with those responding to reward, fear or anxiety.

THE NEUROBIOLOGY OF PLACEBO RESPONSES TO PAIN

Before discussing the mechanisms of the placebo effect, it is useful to briefly review our basic pain pathways and one of the key differences between pain and most of our other senses – the extensive modulation of the incoming signal before it arrives in the brain for processing.

Nociception is triggered from the activation of nociceptors by noxious stimuli, classically mechanical, chemical or thermal. These signals pass along a-delta or c fibres to the spinal cord, where they ascend or descend 1-2 levels before synapsing in the ipsilateral dorsal horn. Extensive modulation occurs in the dorsal horn such that signals are amplified, damped, or in some cases do not ascend to the brain at all. Powerful descending inhibitory neurons synapse here, as do some less well-known descending excitatory pathways. Interneurons activated by a range of inputs, not just nociception, also synapse here and as Mosely and Butler note, the nociceptive synapses in the dorsal horn are “hugged by glial cells”. These glial cells occur in similar numbers to neurons and are actively involved in modulating synaptic activity, responding to a range of stimuli – including neurohormonal and inflammatory mediators.

The second-order neuron decussates and ascends from the dorsal horn to synapse with third-order neurons, largely at the thalamus, projecting widely in the brain not just to the somatosensory cortex but also with strong connections to areas of the brain involved with processing reward, fear and anxiety.
Pain is an output, the end result of this processed nociceptive input, and its definition as “an unpleasant sensory and emotional experience” is a core part of both old and new IASP definitions of pain. It functions as an alarm and has a complex crucial role in protecting us from danger, alerting us to injury, interrupting thoughts and allowing us to withdraw from the stimuli. It enables us to interact with higher pathways to lay down a strong memory to avoid that threat in the future and allows us to modify the strength of the incoming nociceptive signal depending on other sensory and emotional cues – such as being able to dampen this input while escaping from danger.

MECHANISMS OF THE PLACEBO EFFECT

Studies utilising a range of different technologies have explored the activation of the brain in response to painful stimulation and how this is altered when a placebo is administered, as well as looking at nocebo. Other studies have looked at a range of biological mediators involved in these responses.

Neuroimaging and EEG studies

EEG and laser evoked potential studies have demonstrated reduced amplitudes of event-related potentials to experimental pain stimuli with the administration of placebo analgesia. The majority of neuroimaging studies exploring placebo analgesia, fMRI and PET scans also found reduced activity in classic pain processing areas of the brain, including the thalamus, insula, somatosensory cortex and mid-cingulate regions, after placebo administration in response to painful experimental stimuli.

PET scanning after placebo analgesia shows the activation of the cingulo-frontal brain and subcortical midbrain regions (such as the periaqueductal grey (PAG) and amygdala, along with further connectivity analysis supporting the theory that activation of a descending inhibitory pain pathway is one important mechanism of placebo analgesia). Activation of the prefrontal cortex in these studies, correlated with a positive placebo analgesic response in people with degenerated or disconnected frontal lobes such as in Alzheimer’s disease, showed a loss of verbally-induced placebo analgesia. fMRI studies indicate dorsal horn activity in response to nociceptive stimulation is substantially reduced under placebo and rises under expectations of increased pain (nocebo).

Thus, neural processing in response to expectations has reduced the nociceptive input reaching the brain in response to a noxious stimulus. The brain’s response to the input that does reach it is also reduced, as measured by EEG, fMRI and PET scanning.

NEUROTRANSMITTERS

Endogenous opioids

Endorphins were the first and best-studied compounds involved in generating placebo analgesia. Levine et al., in a small study, demonstrated that naloxone could block the placebo response generated by positive verbal expectations. Subsequent studies have further substantiated these findings and identified other neurotransmitters involved in the placebo response (21)(28)(29).

PET studies with opioid receptor-specific radiotracer ligands have shown reduced µ opioid receptor availability with the administration of placebo in expectation of a painful stimulus and that these changes were blocked by administration of naloxone. Lipmann, showed an increase in endorphins in the CSF for chronic pain patients who were placebo responders. Cholecystokinin (CCK) antagonises the antinociceptive effect of opioids, administration of CCK inhibits our response to opioids. The CCK antagonist proglumide enhances our response to opioids; Benedetti and others have shown the proglumide also enhances the placebo response to verbal expectations.

Placebo-activated endogenous opioids have also been shown to produce respiratory depression. Benedetti induced mild respiratory depression by administering buprenorphine in the post-operative phase. When administering a placebo after conditioning with buprenorphine, the same mild respiratory depression was seen, which was reversed by naloxone. Pollo found they were able to generate a placebo response with a reduction in heart rate and B adrenergic activation from conditioning which was blocked by naloxone.

Endocannabinoids

In 2011, Benedetti and others used ketorolac cream to condition a response to a noxious stimulus before substituting it for a placebo cream. The placebo response they generated was inhibited by the cannabinoid 1 receptor antagonist rimonabant but not naloxone, indicating that endocannabinoids are also involved in the generation of a placebo response. In the same study, an additional placebo response was generated by strong verbal cues of improved analgesia in the subjects who had been conditioned with ketorolac and this additional analgesic effect was blocked by naloxone, but the analgesic response was not blocked at all in the subjects who had ketorolac conditioning alone.
**Practice tip 1:**
Informing a patient we are administering powerful medication to help their pain can greatly enhance its effect, doubling it in several clinical and experimental trials.

**The nocebo effect**
Verbal and non-verbal cues and phrases such as: “this is the worst part,” or “a little bee sting” prior to cannulation or other procedures increase the pain and discomfort of the procedure.16,42 Lang et al.10 and others demonstrate the strong warning of undesirable or painful experiences prior to a noxious stimulus resulted in greater pain while sympathetic language also increased anxiety afterwards. Phrases such as “try not to move…”, “this won’t hurt”, “it might sting a little”, “don’t worry” inadvertently focus our attention and guide us to the effect we are trying to avoid, providing the opposite effect we are striving for.41 In the same way, if I ask someone to try not to think of an elephant ice skating, they are likely to immediately form this image in their mind.

Pain is a nocebo word increasing hyperalgesia. For example, Cyna and others gave a group of women PCA’s to use after a caesarean section and instructed them to use these for bothersome symptoms.44 One cohort was asked to rate their pain score out of 10, the other to rate comfort out of 10. The group asked to rate comfort used less PCA medication than those asked for their pain scores.

Nocebo cues (such as handing a bag for potential emesis) and phrases such as a “sting” prior to cannulation or “burning” prior to administration of propofol will also increase pain.43,45 Staff will often explain this as “being honest”, and yet many patients do not perceive propofol as painful and may associate a sting with tissue injury and even anaphylaxis. We cannot truly know how another person will feel, and hence framing a therapeutic experience in a negative emotional context is likely to reduce the efficacy of our treatment and cannot be described as honest.

**Practice tip 2:**
Look for the negative suggestions used commonly in medical practice and form alternatives.


**The roadmap metaphor**
If one was to jump into a taxi and ask the driver to drive without stating a destination, it is hard to predict where one would end up. In stressful and unfamiliar environments where there are gaps in information about what to expect (which is how many people find operating theatres), the mind will create its own map, which can lead to an unwanted destination.

An example of this is a recent study in pain which found that acute anxiety prior to the procedure (state anxiety) was a strong predictor of post-operative pain, much more so than having an anxiety disorder (trait anxiety).47 An example may be calling someone by their first name, which will often be a positive step in establishing rapport (the doctor being perceived as warm), but for some patients can be interpreted as less professional and thus associated with less competence. Strategies to increase both warmth and competence, such as asking someone what they would like to be called, magnify trust the most.

**Practice tip 3:**
Simply telling people we are administering “powerful analgesia” or explaining the purpose of the procedure without emotional context, especially if using positive suggestion, is honest and will lead many people to a more pleasant experience.

**Trust and rapport**
Patients report more beneficial health behaviours, fewer symptoms, higher quality of life and more satisfaction with care, the higher their trust in the health professional.48 Perceived warmth and competence are two key factors identified in multiple studies contributing to this increased trust in clinicians. Competence has been described as “the doctor gets it” (expert in the condition being treated) and warmth as “the doctor gets me”.49 Kapitckuk demonstrated that increased rapport resulted in a more powerful response to sham procedures. The strategies to increase rapport included: active listening, attentive behaviours, touch and social cues - such as being told Dr X is great.

In another study, enhanced care (increased warmth) using similar strategies and avoiding being interrupted by mobile phone calls increased the magnitude of analgesia in the group who were placebo responders; in the cohort who did not respond to placebo, they made no difference to analgesia51.

Context and cultural factors will contribute to how the patient interprets the doctor’s verbal and non-verbal cues. An example may be calling someone by their first name, which will often be a positive step in establishing rapport (the doctor being perceived as warm), but for some patients can be interpreted as less professional and thus associated with less competence. Strategies to increase both warmth and competence, such as asking someone what they would like to be called, magnify trust the most.

Perhaps the most important factor in establishing this rapport is active listening.45,46 Listening for the content or facts, listening for the meaning this has for the patient and reflecting back to ensure that we have understood correctly and that the patient knows we have understood them.

**Practice tip 4:**
Perceived warmth and competence enhance the effects of placebo analgesia and reduce pain.1

**Optimism**
Selzmann’s prize-winning work showed the benefits of optimism in health care, including that optimists survived longer post myocardial infarction than pessimists and that the difference was as great as that between smokers and non-smokers.48,49 Patients of optimistic doctors survived longer than those of pessimistic doctors, though pessimists were more often correct.

An optimist gives themselves credit for good news, does not take the blame, assumes good things last, and that positive developments spill into other areas of life. A pessimist assumes blame, that poor outcomes are due to their actions, assumes things won’t change and that a global impact of negative events will impact everything they do.48

**Practice tip 5:**
Engendering optimism in our patients by reframing their perceptions, focusing on things they do well and areas they have control over, and shifting negative assumptions of permanence to being less certain or temporary is another tool to enhance care.

**Social learning**
The information we take in from our environment and a range of social cues shape the response to placebo. Subjects in a trial were randomised to either receive a placebo, or receive a placebo after witnessing a group of actors first taking this and mimicking a very positive experience.50 The subjects who witnessed the actors had a much more powerful response to the anxiolytic placebo. This is an example of social learning. Other environmental cues associated with enhanced response to placebo include office staff telling patients the doctor is great and seeing another patient leave the consulting room happy.50,51 Rudeness is associated with poor performance in both cognitive and practical tasks.51

Comfortable rooms, brochures, pictures and positive stories of the experience of other patients are all social cues to enhance the effects of our powerful therapies.
Practice tip 6:
The cues and suggestions from other staff, patients and the environment, will also magnify or diminish the effects of our powerful therapeutics.

The props
Studies have shown red pills provide a larger placebo response for energy, blue pills for calm62. Injections were more effective than pills63 and expensive therapy also enhances this response. Ian Harris’ book, Surgery the Ultimate Placebo64, describes one of the problems of surgical training is that trainees never see the powerful effects of sham surgery and hence never learn to question their own practice.

The change from a regular medication to a generic medication can have a great negative effect on patients and provoke a host of side effects63–65. How this change is introduced makes a big difference in the efficacy of the medication and its side effects. Interestingly, side effects from medication have been shown in trials to increase the response to placebo, possibly by convincing patients they are taking the active drug.

Recent studies exploring sham surgeries versus actual surgeries have published much evidence that surgery versus partial meniscectomy66 in the NEJM and percutaneous coronary intervention in stable angina67 in The Lancet. Both interventions were for pain, neither showed an advantage for active treatment over placebo, and both demonstrated the powerful expectations we generate from surgery – for both patients and practitioners.

Choice
Some studies have demonstrated a link between patients having choice and an increased response to placebo. For example, when a group of patients were told to expect a 25%, 50%, 75% or 100% response to a trial drug (which was a placebo), only the group that was told that there was a 75% chance of benefit showed a significant response68. This may show a distrust of absolute guarantees, such as a 100% response to medications.

Which patients do well?
In the US (but not in European trials), the placebo effect has increased with time69. Reasons put forward include direct advertising to consumers via the media and more patient contact, and positive interactions with trial staff aimed at stopping people dropping out from trials. The stronger the placebo effect, the larger a trial has to be to demonstrate a response to therapy and hence the more expensive a trial becomes to show a positive result. This sparkered research to identify the cohort that responds well to placebo with the hopes of excluding them from trials facilitate shorter, cheaper and easier clinical trials.

One fascinating outcome of this and similar research was the discovery of placebo effects associated with more powerful placebo responses61 and that these are also often associated with the power of the medications.

The placebo response, our learning and expectations magnify the pharmacological effects of the powerful, proven medications we use.

Trials linked to a strong placebo response, including an internal control (the belief that a patient can influence their own environment or destiny)70, expectations of a positive response and optimism, were not essential to getting a placebo response. However, those believing they had little influence over what happens to them, as well as those with impaired frontal lobe connectivity (including Alzheimer’s disease)71, have reduced responsiveness to placebo. Of interest, some genetic factors associated with the body’s endorphins have been studied and are also associated with increased or reduced responsiveness to placebo72–74.

The cohort that responds best to an active drug is also the cohort that gets the strongest response to placebo. Expectations and learning (the meaning of a health encounter) magnify the effects of our powerful medications.

CONCLUSION
The language we use and the expectations shape we have a powerful effect on enhancing or reducing the effectiveness of the medications we use. The interaction we have with patients is far from inert and is a powerful tool to enhance analgesia. A rapidly increasing placebo literature demonstrates multiple pathways are involved in generating this response, including endocannabinoid, endorphin and dopaminergic systems and the role of conditioning in developing these responses.

Many common medical cues and phrases such as informing people that an injection “will hurt” or is “just a little bee sting” reduce the effectiveness of our therapies and create hyperalgesia. These are often justified in the mistaken belief they are “honest.”

Simple steps such as explaining the purpose of the medications we are giving, reframing suggestions, and replacing negative suggestions with positive ones make a huge difference to the analgesia people experience. These can be magnified or reduced by other factors such as trust and rapport with the doctor, cues from the wider environment, a sense of control and optimism.

For those interested in the placebo effect, I refer you to a range of excellent reviews by researchers such as Kapchuk75, Schediweg75 and Australia’s Damien Finiss76.

For those interested in practical, focused strategies to enhance communication, I refer you to the book Handbook of Communication in Anaesthesia and Critical Care by Cyna A, Andrew M, Tan S and Smith A; and the excellent workshops they run at ANZCA meetings while courses such as the South Australian Diploma in Hypnosis offer an even more advanced toolkit to use in a perioperative setting.

REFERENCES
Enhancing powerful medication – applications of the placebo response for pain management

170
Australasian Anaesthesia 2021 – Pain

171
Australasian Anaesthesia 2021 – Pain


Aue, Ta fia Ola! Pain and the faaSamoa

Satualafaagilagi Leinani Aiono-Le Tagaloa MBChB, FANZCA, FFPMANZCA
Pain Specialist, Auckland Regional Pain Service; Anaesthetist, Auckland Hospital, New Zealand

Satualafaagilagi Dr Leinani Aiono-Le Tagaloa was born and brought up in Samoa (previously Western Samoa). In New Zealand she began surgical training then completed anaesthetic training. Having a FANZCA, she undertook an obstetric anaesthesia fellowship and assistant professorship in the United States. Upon returning to New Zealand, Satuala undertook a further fellowship in pain medicine and since obtaining her FFPMANZCA has split her work week between chronic pain at the Auckland Regional Pain Service and anaesthesia at Auckland Hospital. She serves ANZCA on the New Zealand National Committee and as an examiner for the Faculty of Pain Medicine. She is the founding president of the Pasifika Anaesthetists in Aotearoa.

Brenda Cassidy, FANZCA, FFPMANZCA, MBBS
Consultant anaesthetist in children’s anaesthesia at the Women’s and Children’s Hospital and pain specialist at the Queen Elizabeth and Royal Adelaide hospitals and Aware Women’s Health in Adelaide, SA and visiting specialist at the Alice Springs Hospital, NT

Dr Brenda Cassidy is the section editor for pain management for Australasian Anaesthesia.

INTRODUCTION BY DR BRENDA CASSIDY

I have for some years as the pain sub-editor, invited authors to write about the pain experience of the Indigenous Australasian cultures. It is with special thanks from me to Satuala that what follows is hopefully the first of a series of articles about pain in these cultures. Since our last edition of Australasian Anaesthesia, the International Association for the Study of Pain has expanded the definition of pain from the now well accepted 1979 definition to include six notes. I am taking the opportunity to list them here prior to this article about pain in Samoan culture.

*Pain:
An unpleasant sensory and emotional experience associated with, or resembling that associated with, actual or potential tissue damage.

Notes:
1. Pain is always a personal experience that is influenced to varying degrees by biological, psychological, and social factors.
2. Pain and nociception are different phenomena. Pain cannot be inferred solely from activity in sensory neurons.
3. Through their life experiences, individuals learn the concept of pain.
4. A person’s report of an experience as pain should be respected.
5. Although pain usually serves an adaptive role, it may have adverse effects on function and social and psychological well-being.
6. Verbal description is only one of several behaviours to express pain; inability to communicate does not negate the possibility that a human or a nonhuman animal experiences pain.1,2

Pain is learnt over a lifetime of experience and can be expressed in many ways. The more we as healthcare workers learn of pain in cultures within our region and show respect for all cultures, the more we can minimise the impact of pain on wellbeing in our communities.

The following article by Satuala is written such that the learning occurs during the development of the narrative. I encourage our readership to embrace the Samoan teaching style that is storytelling in nature and by the end urges the reader to ask questions of the author and of themselves.
“Aue, ta fia ola! Aue, alofa mai!” Amidst the screams of indescribable pain, I could make out words as I ran towards the emergency room, words that shocked me, words that I had not heard uttered before in this hospital. It was three in the morning, another weekend on call for me, as I rounded the emergency room and the operating theatre in this small town in the middle of the North Island of New Zealand. The weekends were long; 96-hour stretches of duty as a surgical registrar, often with only snatched moments of sleep and hurriedly grabbed mouthfuls of food. In many cases, and at times I felt more like I was hallucinating the scenes that played before me. I wondered briefly if this was the case as I heard the screams rise again – undoubtedly in my mother tongue, this time piercing the sleep-deprived fog that was my brain so that there could be no denying that I was in fact hearing someone crying out in pain. Crying out in pain in both male Samoan. Crying out in absolute agony. The two impossibilities crazed together as I reached the resuscitation cubicle. The thrashing body on the stretcher, surrounded by burly orderlies and blue-suited policemen, all trying to keep the patient still so that the precious IV lines did not get ripped out. The mangled mess of what used to be legs, tightly wrapped in a MAST suit, and the tatau on what was visible of the man’s torso. I had barely registered these before the cries rose again. I responded without a second thought, throwing out a challenge and an answer to the cry for help, to the cry for life. “Sole! O le a le mea ua le lele ai!” The man turned towards me and gasped, “Tuafafine!! Alofa maia, alofa maia, fai! I seen that fia ola!” I caught the hand that he stretched towards me and looked full into his eyes. “Ta le lelei. Afi a fia ola, tapuai mai! Sei fai le gaulega a fomai. Tapuai maia!”

Instantly he was silent, and still. Eerily the rest of the assessment was carried out to the accompaniment of the tersely delivered orders for blood, X-rays, massive transfusion, and anaesthetic management. It was as if the pain had suddenly and abruptly gone.

What had happened? I wondered that as I walked out of the hospital several hours later, wiped out after helping to stabilise the massive bleeding from a double above-knee amputation and was about to transport the now intubated patient to a tertiary centre for ICU admission and ongoing care. What had he been vocalising as he lay there screaming in pain? What had risen in me? What had I done? Why had I thrown out that challenge, and why had it had such a dramatic effect? I had spoken instinctively and intuitively when I heard those Samoan words, and the words had pierced me with some horror, for it did not fit in with my training or what I had learned about doctor-patient communication. Yet I could not shake the feeling that something had occurred at a very visceral level, that belied the appearance of careless indifference, and in our exchange, he somehow found a superhuman courage to bear unendurable pain.

I needed answers to what happened, and I turned to my mother for them. My mother, the late Alofa Dr Fana’a Le Tagaloa, had spent her whole life first studying linguistics, and then studying, archiving, preserving, teaching, and living the faaSamoan (culture and traditions); the gagana Samoa (the language of our people). It is to her that I owe everything I am, and everything I know about the faaSamoan. She wept when I told my story to her.

Through the lens of our culture and traditions this is what had happened:

“Aue, ta fia ola!” “Ta fia ola – literally “I want to live!”. But there is a depth of meaning beyond the literal words. It is an entreaty, an entreaty for deliverance from certain peril. Aue! – hard to translate, it is a deep heart cry of distress, a word common to many Polynesian languages that finds its way into the expression of mourning, of grief for great loss, of absolute wretchedness. It is to her that I owe everything I am, and everything I know about the faaSamoan. She wept when I told my story to her.

And with those words he was silent, concentrating on drawing upon every last ounce of will he had to bear the pain without crying out, putting himself into my hands, into the hands of the healers who could save his life, no longer in distress in his spirit even though physically nothing had changed.

In order to explain the significance of this connection, first I need to explain an important concept in the faaSamoan – one that underpins this and every other relationship and interaction in our world. This is the concept of the Va. On one level it simply means a gap, a parting of two elements that need to sit side by side, or a space that can squeeze through. It has often been translated in English to “the space between us,” in order to convey its meaning in the context of human relationships. But it is far more than just a space. It is a deep mutual respect and regard, a haven where one human being offers another the honour of not treading harsh and inappropriate words or actions in a way that will bring harm. It defines the code of behaviour that is necessary for healthy and harmonious interactions – where language is carefully chosen, and actions are deliberate and considered.

Every interaction between one human being and another takes place in the Va. All relationships, from the family circle to the wider community, have the Va in one form, or another as the conduct, that govern the appropriate way to communicate and show respect for each other. We are urged to Tausi le va, care for the space between us; to keep the peace, adhere to the right conduct, and respect others at all times.

The story I have told is a beautiful example of the Va in action. I did not need to be a blood relative in order to be called sister; the deep application of the brother-sister Va was activated because in our society the right and respectful way for a man to treat a younger woman is as her sister; and the only way to respond to that is to honour it.

The sister-brother Va or relationship in the Samoan culture is arguably our most sacred, an enduring covenant that is binding and eternal between them. In fact, the sister is called faaagaiga, covenant, and every Samoan male is brought up to cherish his sister and to defend and protect her, with his life if need be. It is a relationship of mutual honour and sacrifice, for in our ancient traditions the sister is the physician and healer, the conveyor of blessing or curse, the life giver. Through childbirth, and the imposition of the Western construction of modern life, it has been seen that the traditional healer has been lost, but it has not taken away the bond and the expectation that exists in the circle of this communion. The simple truth is this: when you are in need, your sister will rescue you; when you need courage, she will call forth from you the strength that will enable it. To carry such a weight of responsibility confers a deep and abiding respect. It is the bond of the sister, and the authority to speak with directness and force when the situation calls for it.

I instinctively knew that, even though my Western-trained brain later recoiled at my seemingly harsh and inappropriate words.

My patient also knew and recognised that. He did not hear my words as unkind or cruel. Where the English translation implies heartlessness, the Samoan words convey kinship, relationship, and the offer of something beyond physical help; the offer of courage. He received the challenge and paused only to activate the covenant from me, his sister-healer, his faaagaiga. Once assured of this he was silent, because to bear adversity with fortitude, with silence, is the highest attribute of courage that a Samoan can show. He was familiar with this, had I known him there before; and I knew this because of his tatau.

The tatau, the beautiful Samoan man’s half-body tattoo, is a living testament of courage in the face of pain. Traditionally, the lagimalofie, or rite of passage of the sami, is performed. The fa'amatonutau is marked from childhood to very old age, and it has experienced a renaissance and taken on a slightly different meaning, that of identification with being Samoan, but the message of the ability to bear pain is no less significant. It is tapu (taboo, un神圣) to cry out during the ritual of tatau, but one does not face this challenge alone. Those close to the recipient will offer exhortations and prayers, be present physically, and lend the strength of their full support, for we believe that any undertaking as great as this requires the assistance of the sister, and the authority to speak with directness and force when the situation calls for it.

And my reply? One of the reasons I berated myself as I reflected on the events of the night, unanae, was the seeming callousness of my response to a fellow human, a fellow Samoan’s suffering.

“Aue! O le a le mea e le teale le ai!” A very similar transaction takes place when one goes to see a doctor, to receive treatment for an illness. There is an unspoken, subconscious contract between patient and healer, where the patient, along with their family members, lend their tapuai to the doctor, believing implicitly that this will assist in the process that will bring life, healing, and deliverance from pain. The doctor also promises to do their best, not only in the application of their
knowledge, skill and craft. It is equally as important to bear witness, to truly see and hear a patient’s narrative, to validate their suffering, and to acknowledge their courage in enduring it. When the doctor demonstrates that living connection and willingness to truly hear, the Samoan patient will respond by giving the greatest gift they can, the courage that bears and endures pain.

As I journeyed through pain training, I came across the concept of placebo, not as “sham” treatment as I had understood it throughout medical school, but as the effect of the context in which a therapy was delivered, and a meaningful part of the treatment. It was fascinating to discover that the ways in which a treatment is delivered could account for up to 30 per cent of its effectiveness, and that the converse was also true: nocebo, the negative effect of the way in which treatments are delivered, could work to reduce the therapeutic benefit. I was intrigued. I had carried the memory of that night deep inside me for many years, and now I saw that the impact of that interaction had its basis in something very deeply human. Speaking his language, knowing what to say and do, being the right person at the right time enabled man to do the impossible and deal with the burden of extreme pain in a way that brought dignity and meaning to his suffering. In the language of placebo, our interaction induced a powerful positive expectation, with an overwhelmingly positive result for him. I was very privileged to have been explicitly taught the faaSamoa and gagana Samoa, our traditions and language, and to have been so immersed in it that I knew what to do and say without needing to cognitively process my reaction, when the moment arose.

I wanted to be able to do this for all my patients, and to be able to explain to my colleagues how to reach Samoan people who are in pain, using an understanding of our culture as a tool. But how could I possibly explain and teach something that I had absorbed and grown in? How could I make explicit something that was visceral and subliminal? And how could I ever learn the nuances of culture and language of the dozens of different people groups that I encountered each day? Surely such a task is impossible! Again, I found the answer in the research on placebo mechanisms. The doctor-patient relationship as described by Benedetti (2013) sounded very much like what I had observed and learnt as a Samoan: the role of the doctor is not only to be proficient in technical skills. It is equally as important to bear witness, to truly see and hear a patient’s narrative, to validate their suffering, and to acknowledge their courage in enduring it.

Nowhere is this more evident than in our response to a patient in pain, whether it is the acute pain of trauma and surgery, or the complex multi-faceted beast that is chronic pain. The IASP defines pain as “An unpleasant sensory and emotional experience associated with, or resembling that associated with, actual or potential tissue damage.” If our interactions with our patients can so powerfully influence their experiences, we may in fact hold one of the keys to the treatment of pain, in paying attention to the context. And just maybe we can influence the development of persistent pain, particularly post-surgical pain, as well.

Aue, ta fia ola! Aue alofa mai! I want to live; have compassion on me! It could be said that this is the unspoken wish of every person seeking help for the pain and suffering they feel when ill, no matter how they express it. As doctors we must learn to hear it and learn how to respond, being aware that how we respond will make a world of difference.

Soifua ma ia manuia.
Obstetrics and gynaecology

Nitrous oxide use on the labour ward: Efficacy and environmental impact
Alice Gynther, Fiona Pearson, Forbes McGain

Epidural labour analgesia: Current trends, advances, and future techniques
Victor Chen, Harriet Wood

Labour epidural injustice
Ian Maddox
Nitrous oxide use on the labour ward: Efficacy and environmental impact

Alice Gynther MBBS, FANZCA
Western Health, Melbourne, Victoria
Dr Alice Gynther is an anaesthetist at Western Health with interests in obstetric anaesthesia and environmental sustainability in healthcare.

Fiona Pearson, MBBS, MRCP, FRCA
Sunderland Royal Hospital, Sunderland, UK
Dr Fiona Pearson is a consultant anaesthetist who recently served as the Obstetric Anaesthetists’ Association’s trainee representative. In addition to obstetric anaesthesia, she has an interest in environmental sustainability.

Forbes McGain FANZCA, FCICM, PhD
Departments of Anaesthesia and Intensive Care, Western Health, Melbourne, Victoria
Associate Professor Forbes McGain, Department of Critical Care, University of Melbourne, and School of Public Health, University of Sydney. He is keenly involved in the Doctors for the Environment Australia (DEA), advocating for a more environmentally sustainable healthcare system.

INTRODUCTION

You are attending a call for a patient who has requested a labour epidural. As you enter the birthing room you see a distressed woman breathing heavily on the nitrous oxide mouth-piece. The midwife tells you the woman has received intramuscular (IM) morphine about two hours prior. As you set up your equipment you wonder “just how effective is nitrous oxide for labour pain?”

The analgesic, anxiolytic and amnestic properties of nitrous oxide (N₂O) have been utilised in dentistry and surgery as far back as the mid-1800s making it one of the oldest anaesthetic agents still in use. Its low blood:gas coefficient and the second gas effect made it ideal for use with early volatile agents such as halothane and enflurane. The intraoperative use of N₂O has reduced over time, in part due to concerns regarding an association with adverse cardiovascular events. This was subsequently refuted by the ENIGMA-II trial. The introduction of agents with lower solubility, such as sevoflurane, and total intravenous anaesthesia (TIVA) also contributed to this trend. N₂O has been used for labour analgesia in Australia since the 1950s and is still commonly used to manage labour pain.

WHERE IS NITROUS OXIDE USED WITHIN OUR HOSPITALS?

Surprisingly, there is a paucity of data about where N₂O is being used in modern healthcare systems. Unlike some countries, in Australia the ambulance service does not use N₂O, administering the potent analgesic methoxyflurane instead. It is also uncommon to use N₂O to provide sedation for endoscopy procedures in Australia, whereas it is commonly utilised for this purpose in the United Kingdom (UK). Observational studies of N₂O use in Australian hospitals are nearing completion at Western Health, Melbourne, and King Edward Memorial Hospital, Perth. We have recently participated in an audit at two connected hospitals (Sunshine/Joan Kirner hospitals) to ascertain the relative proportion of N₂O use in different hospital areas; labour ward (6000 births per year), operating theatres (11 theatres including paediatrics), and the paediatric emergency department. Preliminary results indicate the majority of N₂O is used on the labour ward with very minimal theatre use and, concerning, a significant amount is likely being lost due to leaks from cylinder manifolds and pipelines. A N₂O mitigation project in NHS Lothian (Scotland) found cylinder manifold leaks to be a common problem.

In the Joan Kirner hospital labour ward (Melbourne, Australia) in 2020, 62 per cent of women used N₂O, and 40 per cent of these also received epidural analgesia; figures in keeping with the national average. The Australian Institute of Health and Welfare reported that 53 per cent of women used N₂O for labour analgesia making it the most commonly used analgesic, with regional anaesthesia being used by 40 per cent of labouring women and systemic opioids by 14 per cent. Although there is much variation in N₂O use in anaesthesia both within and between nations, N₂O may be used more widely outside of operating theatres worldwide.
HOW EFFECTIVE IS NITROUS OXIDE FOR LABOUR ANALGESIA?

A literature search was conducted using MEDLINE, Cochrane and Embase databases with the following MESH terms and keywords: nitrous oxide (Entonox®, laughing gas), (labor* or labour*, obstetric), (women or woman or pain*), remifentanil, morphine, pethidine (meperidine), fentanyl, desflurane, sevoflurane, methoxyflurane (penthrox), (epidural analgesia/anaesthesia), neuraxial, placebo/placebo effect, (analgesics, opioid), PCA, transcutaneous electric nerve stimulation, massage.

Overall evidence for efficacy

A 2014 systematic review assessed available literature concerning N2O for labour analgesia and maternal satisfaction1. The authors noted insufficient strength of evidence for N2O with respect to labour analgesic efficacy and low strength of evidence for satisfaction. Out of 58 publications included, they noted a paucity of good quality studies (n=2), concluding that further research was needed to establish the efficacy and adverse effects of N2O in labour7.

Nitrous oxide versus placebo

With the exception of one study showing no difference in pain scores8, randomised controlled trials (RCTs) comparing N2O to placebo (compressed air or oxygen) or no treatment found statistically significant mild reductions in pain intensity in N2O groups9, N2O was associated with significant increases in nausea, vomiting and dizziness in a number of studies8.

Nitrous oxide versus epidural analgesia

Level I and II studies comparing N2O to epidural analgesia found uniformly lower pain intensity scores in the epidural groups9,12. Although a majority of trials reported higher satisfaction scores in epidural groups12, an exception was a cross-sectional study assessing women at two months post-partum which found more women rated their birth experience as positive/very positive with N2O compared to epidural analgesia14. However, this study also found N2O to be associated with a negative birth experience on second regression analysis14.

A study to assess efficacy and satisfaction with labour analgesia interviewed 6242 women following vaginal delivery15. Of women who received epidural anaesthesia (either solely or as conversion from N2O), 92 per cent rated their analgesia as “highly effective”, and >95 per cent rating “high” satisfaction with anaesthetic care. Of those using N2O alone, only 52 per cent reported “high effectiveness” but 93 per cent still reported high satisfaction14. The authors identified that satisfaction does not solely depend on analgesic efficacy.

Nitrous oxide versus volatile agents

A 2012 Cochrane review of inhalational agents for labour analgesia concluded that flurane derivatives (enflurane, isoflurane, sevoflurane) resulted in superior pain relief compared to N2O but no difference in maternal satisfaction15. Flurane derivatives are no longer routinely used for labour analgesia due to their propensity to cause sedation. Four RCTs of lesser methodological quality compared N2O to methoxyflurane in labour14, with one trial finding methoxyflurane resulted in statistically significant superior analgesia14. The remaining trials found no significant differences between agents. In one of these, more women preferred N2O which the authors attributed to differences in the breathing apparatus used15.

Nitrous oxide versus remifentanil patient-controlled analgesia

A double-blinded RCT of 20 patients comparing remifentanil patient-controlled analgesia (PCA) with intermittent N2O inhalation during the first stage of labour reported superior analgesia in those receiving remifentanil PCA16. Larger studies of remifentanil PCA in labour have found episodes of desaturation are common, necessitating one-on-one midwifery care, continuous monitoring, and provision of supplemental oxygen as required17. Outside of clinical trials, there have been case reports of maternal respiratory depression due to remifentanil PCA18.

Nitrous oxide versus intramuscular opioids

Randomised controlled trials comparing N2O to parenteral pethidine found lower pain intensity scores in N2O groups19. No studies comparing N2O with intramuscular morphine or subcutaneous fentanyl boluses were found.

Effect of nitrous oxide on maternal request for epidural analgesia

Although N2O is very commonly used for labour analgesia in Australia, New Zealand and the UK, it was only used in three centres in the USA before 201119. Since then, its use has rapidly increased to more than 500 birthing centres and hospitals20. An impact study was conducted before and after N2O (as self-administered Entonox® (50:50 N2O:O2)) was introduced as an option for labour analgesia in a hospital with more than 7000 deliveries per year. Among 18 per cent of women in the “post group” using N2O, the epidural rate did not change significantly (77 per cent pre-N2O and 74 per cent post-N2O)20.

In summary, the analgesic effect of N2O appears greater than placebo and pethidine but inferior to volatile anaesthetics, remifentanil PCA and epidural analgesia. In some studies, it is associated with a positive birth experience/satisfaction. The RANZCOG patient information on N2O nicely summarises that it “helps take the edge off pain, makes women feel in control of their pain relief and provides them with something to focus on to get through each contraction”21.

THE ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT OF NITROUS OXIDE

Nitrous oxide use on the labour ward: Efficacy and environmental impact

Effect of nitrous oxide on maternal request for epidural analgesia

Although N2O is very commonly used for labour analgesia in Australia, New Zealand and the UK, it was only used in three centres in the USA before 201119. Since then, its use has rapidly increased to more than 500 birthing centres and hospitals20. An impact study was conducted before and after N2O (as self-administered Entonox® (50:50 N2O:O2)) was introduced as an option for labour analgesia in a hospital with more than 7000 deliveries per year. Among 18 per cent of women in the “post group” using N2O, the epidural rate did not change significantly (77 per cent pre-N2O and 74 per cent post-N2O)20.

In summary, the analgesic effect of N2O appears greater than placebo and pethidine but inferior to volatile anaesthetics, remifentanil PCA and epidural analgesia. In some studies, it is associated with a positive birth experience/satisfaction. The RANZCOG patient information on N2O nicely summarises that it “helps take the edge off pain, makes women feel in control of their pain relief and provides them with something to focus on to get through each contraction”21.

THE ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT OF NITROUS OXIDE

Nitrous oxide use on the labour ward: Efficacy and environmental impact

Effect of nitrous oxide on maternal request for epidural analgesia

Although N2O is very commonly used for labour analgesia in Australia, New Zealand and the UK, it was only used in three centres in the USA before 201119. Since then, its use has rapidly increased to more than 500 birthing centres and hospitals20. An impact study was conducted before and after N2O (as self-administered Entonox® (50:50 N2O:O2)) was introduced as an option for labour analgesia in a hospital with more than 7000 deliveries per year. Among 18 per cent of women in the “post group” using N2O, the epidural rate did not change significantly (77 per cent pre-N2O and 74 per cent post-N2O)20.

In summary, the analgesic effect of N2O appears greater than placebo and pethidine but inferior to volatile anaesthetics, remifentanil PCA and epidural analgesia. In some studies, it is associated with a positive birth experience/satisfaction. The RANZCOG patient information on N2O nicely summarises that it “helps take the edge off pain, makes women feel in control of their pain relief and provides them with something to focus on to get through each contraction”21.

THE ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT OF NITROUS OXIDE

Nitrous oxide use on the labour ward: Efficacy and environmental impact

Effect of nitrous oxide on maternal request for epidural analgesia

Although N2O is very commonly used for labour analgesia in Australia, New Zealand and the UK, it was only used in three centres in the USA before 201119. Since then, its use has rapidly increased to more than 500 birthing centres and hospitals20. An impact study was conducted before and after N2O (as self-administered Entonox® (50:50 N2O:O2)) was introduced as an option for labour analgesia in a hospital with more than 7000 deliveries per year. Among 18 per cent of women in the “post group” using N2O, the epidural rate did not change significantly (77 per cent pre-N2O and 74 per cent post-N2O)20.

In summary, the analgesic effect of N2O appears greater than placebo and pethidine but inferior to volatile anaesthetics, remifentanil PCA and epidural analgesia. In some studies, it is associated with a positive birth experience/satisfaction. The RANZCOG patient information on N2O nicely summarises that it “helps take the edge off pain, makes women feel in control of their pain relief and provides them with something to focus on to get through each contraction”21.

THE ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT OF NITROUS OXIDE

Nitrous oxide use on the labour ward: Efficacy and environmental impact

Effect of nitrous oxide on maternal request for epidural analgesia

Although N2O is very commonly used for labour analgesia in Australia, New Zealand and the UK, it was only used in three centres in the USA before 201119. Since then, its use has rapidly increased to more than 500 birthing centres and hospitals20. An impact study was conducted before and after N2O (as self-administered Entonox® (50:50 N2O:O2)) was introduced as an option for labour analgesia in a hospital with more than 7000 deliveries per year. Among 18 per cent of women in the “post group” using N2O, the epidural rate did not change significantly (77 per cent pre-N2O and 74 per cent post-N2O)20.

In summary, the analgesic effect of N2O appears greater than placebo and pethidine but inferior to volatile anaesthetics, remifentanil PCA and epidural analgesia. In some studies, it is associated with a positive birth experience/satisfaction. The RANZCOG patient information on N2O nicely summarises that it “helps take the edge off pain, makes women feel in control of their pain relief and provides them with something to focus on to get through each contraction”21.

THE ENVIRONMENTAL IMPACT OF NITROUS OXIDE

Nitrous oxide use on the labour ward: Efficacy and environmental impact

Effect of nitrous oxide on maternal request for epidural analgesia

Although N2O is very commonly used for labour analgesia in Australia, New Zealand and the UK, it was only used in three centres in the USA before 201119. Since then, its use has rapidly increased to more than 500 birthing centres and hospitals20. An impact study was conducted before and after N2O (as self-administered Entonox® (50:50 N2O:O2)) was introduced as an option for labour analgesia in a hospital with more than 7000 deliveries per year. Among 18 per cent of women in the “post group” using N2O, the epidural rate did not change significantly (77 per cent pre-N2O and 74 per cent post-N2O)20.

In summary, the analgesic effect of N2O appears greater than placebo and pethidine but inferior to volatile anaesthetics, remifentanil PCA and epidural analgesia. In some studies, it is associated with a positive birth experience/satisfaction. The RANZCOG patient information on N2O nicely summarises that it “helps take the edge off pain, makes women feel in control of their pain relief and provides them with something to focus on to get through each contraction”21.
on a 20 microgram bolus delivered every five minutes\textsuperscript{41}, and remifentanil PCA calculations were based on a 40 microgram bolus delivered every two minutes, both with two litres.min\textsuperscript{-1} supplemental oxygen via nasal prongs\textsuperscript{41}. Epidural regimens studied were 0.1 per cent bupivacaine with 2 mcg.ml\textsuperscript{-1} fentanyl 30 ml.hr\textsuperscript{-1} and 0.1 per cent ropivacaine with 2 mcg.ml\textsuperscript{-1} fentanyl 34 ml.hr\textsuperscript{-1}\textsuperscript{14,45}. A 20 L loading dose of epidural solution and 1 per cent lidocaine (lignocaine) 10 mL for skin infiltrative anaesthesia were included in the calculations.

Carbon emissions for the local anaesthetics, fentanyl, and remifentanil were taken from LCA data by Parvatker et al\textsuperscript{45}. As Parvatker et al only considered GHG emissions relating to the active pharmaceutical product\textsuperscript{45} their result was 25 per cent lower than that by McAlister et al\textsuperscript{40} whose LCA of morphine from poppy farming included product sterilisation and packaging. We based our morphine calculations on the higher CO\textsubscript{2}e. It is worth noting that the values used for the local anaesthetics, fentanyl, and remifentanil will be greater once packaging and sterilisation are taken into account.

Carbon equivalents for individual components (mouthpiece, needles, syringes, tubing and contents, sterile single-use draisons, gloves and epipods for insertion) were estimated from the weight, primary material and established GHG emission factors\textsuperscript{47-49,45}. The GHG emission factor relating to the electricity required to power the epidural and PCA pumps was taken from Australian (Victorian) figures based on approximately 75 per cent electricity being generated via coal\textsuperscript{50}. It was assumed that all disposables would enter the clinical waste stream and be treated by high temperature incineration and that packaging would be treated as domestic waste, processed by low temperature incineration\textsuperscript{45}.

This figure shows the total CO\textsubscript{2}e emissions for each form of labour anaesthesia. Intermittent use of N\textsubscript{2}O (with oxygen) for four hours during labour is associated with a CO\textsubscript{2}e similar to driving almost 1500 kilometres in an average car (0.168 kgCO\textsubscript{2}e/km)\textsuperscript{49}, compared to 6 kilometres for epidural analgesia (0.1 per cent bupivacaine with 2 mcg/mL\textsuperscript{-1} fentanyl 34 mL.hr\textsuperscript{-1}\textsuperscript{41,45}). A 20 L loading dose of epidural solution and 1 per cent lidocaine (lignocaine) 10 mL for skin infiltrative anaesthesia were included in the calculations.

Carbon emissions for the local anaesthetics, fentanyl, and remifentanil were taken from LCA data by Parvatker et al\textsuperscript{45}. As Parvatker et al only considered GHG emissions relating to the active pharmaceutical product\textsuperscript{45} their result was 25 per cent lower than that by McAlister et al\textsuperscript{40} whose LCA of morphine from poppy farming included product sterilisation and packaging. We based our morphine calculations on the higher CO\textsubscript{2}e. It is worth noting that the values used for the local anaesthetics, fentanyl, and remifentanil will be greater once packaging and sterilisation are taken into account.

Carbon equivalents for individual components (mouthpiece, needles, syringes, tubing and contents, sterile single-use draisons, gloves and epipods for insertion) were estimated from the weight, primary material and established GHG emission factors\textsuperscript{47-49,45}. The GHG emission factor relating to the electricity required to power the epidural and PCA pumps was taken from Australian (Victorian) figures based on approximately 75 per cent electricity being generated via coal\textsuperscript{50}. It was assumed that all disposables would enter the clinical waste stream and be treated by high temperature incineration and that packaging would be treated as domestic waste, processed by low temperature incineration\textsuperscript{45}.

WHAT CAN WE DO TO REDUCE AND/OR MITIGATE NITROUS OXIDE EMISSIONS?

Reduce nitrous oxide use

Ensuring that midwifery, obstetric and anaesthetic staff are aware of the environmental impact of N\textsubscript{2}O is crucial. Raising awareness of nitrous oxide’s GHG effects may change the way it is utilised, as we have seen in the case of desflurane use in anaesthetics\textsuperscript{35}. While some hospitals solely use Entonox® (50:50 N\textsubscript{2}O:O\textsubscript{2}), others have delivery systems with a blender allowing up to 75 per cent N\textsubscript{2}O to be delivered. Inhaling 75 per cent N\textsubscript{2}O during labour results in the release of 5.1 kgCO\textsubscript{2}e per minute compared to 3.4 kgCO\textsubscript{2}e per minute for 50 per cent. A study comparing 50 per cent, 60 per cent and 70 per cent N\textsubscript{2}O in 501 parturients reported no significant difference in analgesic efficacy\textsuperscript{53}. A smaller study suggested that there was a positive association between higher N\textsubscript{2}O concentrations and degree of pain relief\textsuperscript{54}. In the absence of a consensus, high concentrations of N\textsubscript{2}O should be avoided where possible.

An important factor affecting women’s birth experiences is perceived involvement in medical decision-making\textsuperscript{55}. In addition to perinatal aspects such as parity, fetal presentation and augmentation of labour, psychosocial experiences can play a significant role\textsuperscript{35}. In order to support women’s autonomy and help them make informed choices regarding their labour anaesthesia, we have a duty to explain the risks and benefits of the different analgesic options. As climate change is a threat to public health\textsuperscript{33}, the carbon footprint of N\textsubscript{2}O is arguably a “risk” worthy of inclusion in such discussions. Ideally such discussions would occur during antenatal classes, that is, well prior to childbirth itself. This knowledge, coupled with the lack of good evidence for nitrous oxide’s analgesic efficacy, may reduce the number of women choosing to use it for labour.

Pain perception and intensity during labour is highly variable and can be influenced by a multitude of factors. In addition to perinatal aspects such as parity, fetal presentation and augmentation of labour, psychosocial experiences can play a significant role\textsuperscript{35}. Women may choose non-pharmacological interventions, aimed at helping them cope with labour pain (the “working with pain paradigm”) or may request pharmacological interventions with the intention of relieving it (the “pain relief paradigm”). The relationship between patient satisfaction and analgesic effectiveness was explored in a qualitative study of 678 women using N\textsubscript{2}O during labour\textsuperscript{22}. Only 28 per cent described “high” analgesic effectiveness despite 90 per cent reporting high satisfaction\textsuperscript{22}. Patient satisfaction was attributed to the N\textsubscript{2}O providing a distraction/ dissociation from pain, helping them cope with labour (distinct from providing analgesia) and encouraging them to focus on their breathing. Continuous midwifery support and adoption of hypnobirthing techniques would

The impact of each element of labour anaesthesia is shown in Figure 2. For nitrous oxide, GHG emissions relating to the direct CO\textsubscript{2}e emissions from the gas itself is the largest contributor to its carbon impact. For all other forms of labour anaesthesia, the CO\textsubscript{2}e of the drugs is minimal and it is either the oxygen (for remifentanil PCA) or equipment (syringes, and so on.) required that is associated with the highest environmental impact.
be an alternative way of providing this support. A systematic review on maternal satisfaction with childbirth identified that caregiver support and quality of care-giver relationship were two of the major factors highly associated with satisfaction\(^\text{58}\). The remaining two factors; personal expectations and involvement in decision-making can be addressed with informed discussions as previously mentioned. Non-pharmacological methods of managing labour pain could also be considered. Cochrane reviews have shown that acupuncture versus sham can improve maternal satisfaction with labour analgesia\(^\text{60,61}\) (albeit with no change in pain intensity), and there is low quality evidence that massage reduces pain in the first stage of labour compared to standard care\(^\text{62}\). RCTs have found no difference in analgesic efficacy between N\(_2\)O and transcutaneous electric nerve stimulator (TENS)\(^\text{63}\).

Bolus opioids, remifentanil PCA and epidural analgesia all have a favourable carbon impact compared to N\(_2\)O. While remifentanil PCA and epidural offer improved analgesia compared to N\(_2\)O and bolus opioids, they are not available in all birth settings. Advising women that low concentration epidural solutions result in less motor block and reduction compared to previous regimens\(^\text{64}\), may allow some women to avoid the risks associated with epidural analgesia. wherever possible, if a woman requests epidural analgesia, offering this early in labour could reduce the volume of nitrous oxide consumed.

Methoxyflurane is a potential alternative to N\(_2\)O oxide for labour analgesia and was commonly used for this purpose in the 1960s. Methoxyflurane has a very low GWP of 4 with an atmospheric lifetime of only 54 days\(^\text{65}\) and therefore would result in considerably lower carbon equivalents if used in place of N\(_2\)O. The Penthr\(_\text{ox}\)\(\text{TM}\) hand-held inhaler contains 3\% methoxyflurane and has been used for acute trauma in Australia since the 1970s. More than five million doses have been used without serious adverse effects reported\(^\text{66}\). Penthr\(_\text{ox}\)\(\text{TM}\) has a maximum daily dose of 6\% N\(_2\)O (that is, two “whistles”) which approximates 0.6 MAC-hours\(^\text{67}\). As nephrotoxicity has not been associated with 2.0 MAC hours or less\(^\text{68}\), this constitutes a significant safety margin. While it cannot be used for prolonged periods, it could potentially be used for short-durations, for example, as a bridging analgesic until epidural insertion. In a 2015 study, 6\% women were given methoxyflurane (as Penthr\(_\text{ox}\)\(\text{TM}\)) while having an epidural inserted\(^\text{69}\). Mean pain scores were significantly reduced following inhalation of methoxyflurane. Further studies are required to assess the effects of Penthr\(_\text{ox}\)\(\text{TM}\) on the neonate, within current dose limits.

Reduce nitrous oxide wastage
Nitrous oxide delivery systems with demand valves, that is, only deliver gas during inspiration, ensure that the minimal fresh gas volume required is delivered. While these are commonly used in birthing suites, systems with continuous fresh gas flow (FGF) are utilised in other areas of the hospital including emergency and paediatric departments. When FGF exceeds minute ventilation, this results in considerable wasted/scavenged N\(_2\)O. For example, the delivery system in Paediatric ED identified the average flow rate of N\(_2\)O alone was 7 L/min (if 50 per cent N\(_2\)O, a total of 14 L/min total FGF).

Nitrous oxide can also be wasted due to leaks from the cylinder manifolds, pipework and colour coded Schrader valves. Recent work by NHS Lothian in Scotland has shown that efficient monitoring and management of cylinder manifolds is crucial to detect waste from leaks and out of date cylinders\(^\text{70}\). Current legislation requires that any residual N\(_2\)O in cylinders when they are returned to the supply company must be vented, increasing wastage.

Waste capture and destruction technology
Nitrous oxide destruction systems have been successfully introduced in Sweden, where 84 per cent of climate impact from anaesthetic gases was due to N\(_2\)O. This initiative has helped reduce the carbon footprint of medical gases by half since 2009\(^\text{71}\). Exhausted N\(_2\)O is collected via a facemask and undergoes catalytic splitting into N\(_2\) and O\(_2\). Trials of similar technology have been conducted in the UK, with projections of a 75 per cent reduction in N\(_2\)O emissions if it were to be expanded throughout the health service\(^\text{72}\). A single mobile central destruction unit costs approximately $44,000 which is a considerable investment. For multiple delivery rooms, a central destruction unit is more efficient but requires significant infrastructure changes to include scavenging in delivery rooms.

CONCLUSION
Nitrous oxide is used widely for the management of labour pain in Australia and New Zealand. While the medical literature acknowledges the lack of good quality evidence for its effectiveness, a common theme is that it is safe and convenient, and its use should therefore be encouraged. While it may be innocuous for the pregnant woman and unborn baby, that is certainly not the case for the environment.

ANZCA's statement on environmental sustainability illustrates that as anaesthetists we are “uniquely placed to make a difference against climate change.” According to the ANZCA's statement, “We are uniquely placed to make a difference against climate change.” This is because we are responsible for providing care and analgesia to pregnant women and their unborn babies. However, the high carbon footprint of nitrous oxide (N\(_2\)O) is a significant concern for our profession. Nitrous oxide is a potent greenhouse gas with a global warming potential (GWP) of 298 and a long atmospheric lifetime of 121 years. As anaesthetists, we are responsible for providing care to pregnant women and their unborn babies, and thus have a responsibility to reduce our carbon footprint. To achieve this, we should consider alternative analgesic and anaesthetic techniques that have a lower carbon footprint, such as opioid analgesia, remifentanil PCA, and epidural analgesia. These methods have been shown to be effective in reducing pain during labour and delivery, and may also have a lower carbon footprint compared to nitrous oxide.

In conclusion, as anaesthetists, we have a responsibility to reduce our carbon footprint and mitigate the effects of climate change. We can achieve this by considering alternative analgesic and anaesthetic techniques that have a lower environmental impact, and by working with other healthcare professionals to reduce the use of nitrous oxide in labour and delivery.
Epidural labour analgesia: Current trends, advances, and future techniques

Victor Chen MBBS (Hons.), DipLiibarts, MMED (CritCare)
Anaesthetics Registrar, Mater Hospital, Queensland

Dr Victor Chen is an anaesthesia registrar in Brisbane with an interest in obstetric anaesthesia and pain medicine.

Harriet Wood MBBS FRCA FANZCA
Consultant Anaesthetist, Redland Hospital, Queensland

Dr Harriet Wood moved to Australia in 2016 after 10 years as an anaesthetic consultant in the UK. Harriet is acute pain lead at Redland and maintains a strong interest in education and service development.

INTRODUCTION

It is more than 80 years since epidurals were introduced to provide analgesia in labour. They remain the gold standard of available options for labour analgesia and are the most common neuraxial intervention in childbirth in Australia today. Multiple studies have demonstrated decreased pain scores and increased maternal satisfaction when compared to alternatives such as intravenous opioids. This review evaluates the current evidence for the epidural drugs and delivery systems used during labour with a focus on low concentration anaesthetic solutions. Epidural for caesarean section is outside the scope of this review.

The latest Australian Institute of Health and Welfare (AIHW) statistics show an increase in demand for epidural labour analgesia over the past decade with rates increasing from 28.2% to 36.6%. However, there is a significant regional variation of epidural rates across states and territories with the lowest in the Australian Capital Territory (26.7%) and the highest in Western Australia (45.1%). Overall, in 2018 there were 84,592 epidurals placed in Australia. Rates of epidurals in labour are variable in different countries ranging from 19 to 83% in nulliparous women and 10 to 64% in multiparous women.

EPIDURAL DRUG CHOICE

The amide local anaesthetics bupivacaine, ropivacaine and lidocaine (lignocaine) constitute the most common medications used in infusions of local anaesthetics through the epidural catheter in labour. Bupivacaine was discovered in 1957 and has the highest rate of cardiac toxicity and the lowest plasma concentration required for toxicity of the amide local anaesthetics. Subsequent pharmacological advances gave rise to ropivacaine and also levobupivacaine, as the pure $S$-enantiomer of bupivacaine.

Ropivacaine has been thought to have approximately 60% of the analgesic potency and 66% of the motor blockade potency when compared with bupivacaine; however, this has been challenged by a more recent study and remains somewhat controversial. Meta-analysis has shown that the analgesic, neonatal and obstetric outcomes for ropivacaine and bupivacaine are similar. In 19 of these 23 studies, motor block was more frequent in the bupivacaine group but the concentrations of local anaesthetic and infusion techniques varied such that the analysis could not ascribe any increased motor block being a result of the inherent properties of the drug. A direct comparative study of ropivacaine with fentanyl and bupivacaine with fentanyl, each at 0.1% of local anaesthetic, found that ropivacaine caused reduced motor blockade.

Lidocaine with adrenaline has been commonly used as a test dose to detect accidental intrathecal or intravascular catheter insertion due to its rapid onset and haemodynamic effects. This technique however is becoming less popular due to the risk of motor blockade or total spinal anaesthesia. Furthermore, there is less risk of systemic local anaesthetic toxicity from intravascular catheter insertion with low concentration local anaesthetic preparations. Lidocaine is less suitable for ongoing epidural infusion when compared to longer acting alternatives with inferior quality of analgesia when compared to bupivacaine requiring more frequent bolus dosing, in part due to a shorter duration of action, and shorter time to two-segment regression.

Levobupivacaine was first approved by the Therapeutics and Goods Administration for the Australian market in 2001. As an isolated S-enantiomer of bupivacaine it has decreased cardiotoxicity when compared to racemic bupivacaine. The comparison of efficacy between levobupivacaine to other amide local anaesthetics in epidurals has yielded mixed results. Levobupivacaine has been found to have similar levels of labour analgesia and motor blockade when compared with equal concentration 0.125% racemic bupivacaine and higher concentration 0.2% ropivacaine. The reported minimum local anaesthetic concentration was similar with both levobupivacaine and racemic bupivacaine. In contrast, a study of the epidural analgesic potency of levobupivacaine using up-down sequential dose allocation found efficacy to be similar to ropivacaine with a potency ratio of 1.021.
Low concentration opioids, such as fentanyl, have been added to local anaesthetic preparations due to their ability to reduce total local anaesthetic consumption. There is an inverse relationship between the concentration of fentanyl and motor blockade. This reduction in local anaesthetic consumption has also allowed for the successful usage of low concentration local anaesthetic preparations in labour epidurals, which consequently reduces motor blockade. Fentanyl has the additional advantage of increasing the speed of onset of the initial dose.

Dexamethasone shows some promise for use in epidural infusions, prolonging bolus duration without significant adverse effects. The intravenous route has also provided improvement in pain from dexamethasone and the mechanism of action, dose, and route are not yet clear.

LOCAL ANAESTHETIC CONCENTRATION

Historically, lidocaine 1.5-2% with adrenaline was used for ongoing epidural maintenance. A decade after the introduction of bupivacaine, it was used for ongoing epidural anaesthesia at concentrations between 0.25-0.5%. There has been a movement towards the utilisation of lower concentration local anaesthetics for ongoing analgesia to avoid some of the common side effects such as motor blockade and urinary retention. Concentrations such as 0.1% ropivacaine and 0.0625% bupivacaine, each with 2 mcg/mL fentanyl, are increasingly being adopted for epidural labour analgesia.

The Comparative Obstetric Mobile Epidural Trial (COMET) study demonstrated that lower dose 0.1% ropivacaine with 2 mcg/mL fentanyl when compared with 0.25% bupivacaine resulted in improved foetal outcomes and also decreased instrumental delivery while providing similar levels of analgesia. It was also decreased motor blockade and decreased loss of ability to spontaneously urinate. Interestingly there was no statistically significant difference in total mass of local anaesthetic consumption between 0.1% bupivacaine with fentanyl and 0.25% bupivacaine.

Meta-analysis of similar trials has supported the COMET findings when comparing high concentration local anaesthetics of between 0.175-0.2% ropivacaine and 0.125-0.25% bupivacaine to low concentration anaesthetics of between 0.0625-0.1% bupivacaine and 0.1% ropivacaine. The majority of studies included in the meta-analysis were combined local anaesthetic and opioid techniques but the opioid component was kept constant. This meta-analysis found multiple positives for low concentration local anaesthetics including a decreased rate of assisted deliveries, decreased duration of second stage of labour, decreased motor blockade and decreased urinary retention. Analgesia provided was similar with no difference in maternal pain score. A decreased rate of instrumental delivery was observed with the low concentration local anaesthetic in this meta-analysis, deviating from that found in the COMET study.

There are limited studies available detailing the advantages or disadvantages of “ultra-low” concentration local anaesthetics in labour epidurals with conflicting evidence available. A study of 40 patients comparing 0.056% ropivacaine with 0.05% bupivacaine demonstrated that both concentrations could be used effectively for labour analgesia. Similarly, a study of 0.075% ropivacaine with 2 mcg/mL fentanyl provided comparable and satisfactory analgesia compared with 0.075% bupivacaine with 0.5 mcg/mL fentanyl. A study of 60 patients conducted by Singh, et al comparing 0.05% ropivacaine, 0.1% ropivacaine and 0.2% ropivacaine with 2 mcg/mL fentanyl added to the preparation, found that the 0.05% ropivacaine with fentanyl preparation resulted in decreased quality of analgesia.

Studies for non-labour epidurals have demonstrated that concentrations lower than those described in the included meta-analysis studies by Sultan, et al can be effective in post-operative analgesia. A study of 30 patients undergoing abdominal surgery conducted by Liu, et al, found that analgesia was similar with less motor blockade when comparing 0.2% ropivacaine with 4 mcg/mL fentanyl, 0.1% ropivacaine with 2 mcg/mL fentanyl and 0.05% ropivacaine with 1 mcg/mL fentanyl. Furthermore, a small study of post-caesarean section patients suggested that a 0.25% ropivacaine with 3 mcg/mL fentanyl and 0.5 mcg/mL adrenaline could provide comparable analgesia to 0.2% ropivacaine while preserving urinary function and ambulation.

There is surprisingly little information available to choose one initial bolus dose over another, but the benefits of low concentration agents remain. In the volumes 5 to 10mL, the volume and concentration has been found to not be a significant factor for onset. A dose response study for epidural ropivacaine, published in Anesthesiology in 2001 found an ED50 of 18.4 mg and extrapolated an ED95 of 55.9 mg ropivacaine for successful initiation. However, their “success” was based on a 50% reduction of pain within 30 minutes, which most would consider slow and insufficient pain relief for a clinically satisfactory epidural. The study found that a ropivacaine dose of 30 mg produced a 50% reduction in pain within half an hour in 80% of patients. Fentanyl or other low dose opiates within the loading dose speeds onset and improves quality of the block, as previously described, and should be included in the first dose.

Other studies have found an initial dose of between 22mg and 36mg ropivacaine to be effective. Further studies are required to determine the ideal volume, concentration, drug mass and speed of bolus of the initial loading dose. A double-blind prospective study found no benefit to giving the initial dose via the Tuohy needle rather than the epidural catheter.

DRUG DELIVERY SYSTEMS AND REGIMEN

The method of epidural drug delivery has changed significantly over time with techniques ranging from physician or midwife boluses, continuous epidural infusion (CEI), mandatory intermittent boluses (MIB) given manually, or programmed intermittent boluses (PIB) via a pump, and patient-controlled epidural analgesia (PCEA). PCEA is preferred by patients when compared to alternatives such as continuous epidural infusion. PCEA benefits include a decrease in motor blockade and decreased total local anaesthetic consumption. PCEA also reduces anaesthetic workload by significantly decreasing the requirement for clinician boluses while delivering similar analgesia, patient satisfaction and obstetric outcomes. PCEA is most frequently used in combination with either PIB or CEI.

Programmed intermittent boluses consist of delivery of a defined amount of local anaesthetic via a pump after a defined period of time; benefits compared to continuous epidural infusions include superior analgesia45. It is theorised that a larger bolus under pressure spreads better throughout the epidural space compared to a slow continuous infusion. In porcine models, an intermittent bolus of 1 mL over 1 second resulted in spread over 15.2 cm of the epidural space as opposed to a continual infusion of 1 mL over 30 minutes which resulted in spread over 8.9 cm. Although the porcine model was chosen due to similarities with human neural anatomy, there hasn’t been significant differences in height of the block when comparing CEI and PIB in human randomised controlled trials.46,47

Intermittent bolus techniques result in decreased breakthrough pain and a corresponding trend towards improved maternal satisfaction. A decrease of local anaesthetic required, by approximately 1.7 mg/hour of bupivacaine equivalents, is seen in patients with PCEA plus intermittent boluses compared to PCEA alone.48 There is also a trend towards a reduction in both the second stage of labour and total time of labour, however there was significant variation between studies.49 There is an associated decrease in instrumental deliveries in nulliparous women with intermittent bolus techniques with no difference in caesarean section rate50,50. Caesarean section rates are unchanged for women with either type of epidural, compared to those without.

There have been other potential benefits of intermittent boluses demonstrated in trials. Wong, et al found that there was an increased amount of time before patients requested the first mandatory bolus of local anaesthetic in the PIB group compared to the CEI group.45 This was reflected by a greatly reduced local anaesthetic dosage requirement of 7.8 mg/hr ropivacaine in the PIB plus PCEA group compared to 13.8 mg/hr in the CEI group. There have been some conflicting trials where no difference in motor blockade with intermittent bolus techniques was found; however, these findings were not associated with a decrease in local anaesthetic consumption. A recent meta-analysis supports an overall trend towards decreased motor blockade nevertheless this was not statistically significant.

There has been work to delineate the best time gap between boluses and the optimal volume for a given bolus. Most intermittent bolus regimens used in randomised controlled trials have included low concentration local anaesthetic with intermittent boluses of between 5 to 10 mL every hour, although there were studies that used lower bolus volumes and more frequent boluses. The optimal bolus volume has been investigated, with a biased coin up-and-down sequential allocation study using 0.0625% bupivacaine with fentanyl 2mcg/mL. A volume of 11 mL or higher every 40 minutes was found to be superior to lower volumes. A bolus interval investigation demonstrates that if a mandatory intermittent bolus of 10 mL of low concentration bupivacaine is given, a 40-minute lockout reduces PCEA usage requirements compared to longer timeframes.

Intermittent bolus techniques when compared with continuous infusions may provide workflow related benefit. There is a statistically significant reduction in breakthrough pain with intermittent bolus techniques which could reduce both anaesthetic intervention and review. A recent meta-analysis suggests that there is a statistically significantly reduction in anaesthetic interventions with intermittent bolus technique compared with continuous bolus anaesthetic is given, a 40-minute lockout reduces PCEA usage requirements compared to longer timeframes.
ULTRASOUND GUIDANCE/DIFFICULT ACCESS

Successful access and threading of the catheter into the epidural space has traditionally been via palpation of anatomical landmarks and a loss of resistance technique. A Cochrane meta-analysis published in 2014 concluded that with the generally low-quality evidence available, there is no demonstrable, statistically significant, difference between saline and air, either in effectiveness or with regard to safety71. However, due to concerns previously raised about the risk of injecting air into the CSF, saline is currently the suggested technique for epidural localisation. Identification of the insertion point has traditionally been via the iliac crests and intercostal line transecting through the level of the L4 spinous process or L4/L5 intervertebral space72. Anaesthetists may only be able to accurately palpate a defined interspace in as few as 29% of cases73. The midline is usually determined by palpation of the spinous processes although paramedian approaches can be used as an alternative74.

Predictors of difficult epidural access include depth to space, body mass index and quality of anatomical landmarks74,75. With the increasing prevalence of obesity among Western countries ultrasonography is a potential useful adjunct for successful identification of the epidural space. The two main approaches utilising ultrasonography are pre-procedural ultrasonographic scanning and real-time ultrasound scanning. Pre-procedural scanning allows for accurate identification of the midline, the intervertebral space and also the angulation required to reach the epidural plane. A 2016 meta-analysis76 found that ultrasound provided an accurate estimate of depth to space within 3 mm and also had a statistically significant decrease in number of needle passes required and traumatic insertion of catheter when compared to traditional techniques. A 2013 meta-analysis77 found that ultrasound guidance increased the incidence of successful lumbar epidurals. The benefits of enhanced success may be offset by the additional time taken in straightforward cases.

In real time ultrasound scanning both single and dual operator techniques have been described77,78. The single operator technique uses a spring-loaded loss of resistance syringe, allowing for one hand to hold the epidural needle and the other to hold the ultrasound probe. Although an attractive idea, there are some difficulties related to both techniques. The single operator technique was studied predominantly on normal BMI patients with a median body mass index of 25, furthermore, these were performed in an elective situation with no comment on time to epidural placement. Dual operator techniques can also run into issues with workflow and workforce management of anaesthetic staffing.

There has been ongoing improvement in ultrasound technology with improvements to both probe technology and image processing to deliver improved visualisation of anatomical structures79. Improved visualisation of deeper structures is of increasing importance; there are several new possibilities on the horizon. The advent of smaller ultrasound transmitters allows for both ultrasound-in-needle techniques and also needle-through-ultrasound techniques. The ultrasound through needle technique relies on a 0.7 mm ultrasound transmitter which fits through a 18G Tuohy needle. This allowed for visualisation of both ligamentum flavum and also the dura. A needle through ultrasound transducer has also been performed on human models. Using “A-mode”, this technique relies on changes in acoustic impedance to locate the intervertebral space80. Neither of these techniques have been adopted into routine clinical practice and any benefit is yet to be established.

NEW DEVELOPMENTS AND FUTURE ADVANCES

Complications from epidurals have altered little over recent times. There have been ongoing developments regarding management and insertion of epidural catheters for labour over the last decade. With an eye towards the future, there are several more advances on the horizon.

Epidural technique

An evolution on the existing epidural technique is the dural puncture epidural (DPE) which involves puncturing directly into the intrathecal space with a spinal needle prior to threading of the epidural catheter. It differs at this point from the established combined spinal epidural technique in that no medication is delivered directly into the intrathecal space. It is thought that by puncturing the dura and arachnoid layers, this allows for minor spread of the epidural medication into the subarachnoid space. There have been contradictory findings regarding the benefit of the DPE technique when compared to a traditional approach. Some studies have found that there is an improved onset of analgesia25 whereas other studies have not despite similar study designs.26 Other proposed benefits include a decrease in a needle effect, a decrease in a non-statistically significant decrease in epidural replacement/manipulation25. The potential workload and workflow benefits could be an area which would be worth further exploring.

The clinical implications of any difference in onset of analgesia are also questionable as the median onset of analgesia with DPE was found to be eight minutes as opposed to the traditional epidural taking 10 minutes27.

There was no statistically significant difference in likelihood of achieving satisfactory analgesia at 10 minutes and no difference in maternal satisfaction or motor blockade. The lack of difference in patient satisfaction has also been echoed in a study utilising a 25G spinal needle DPE technique78. Lastly, there is potentially superior sacral needle blockade with a DPE when compared to traditional epidural techniques, however this was only manifested in techniques using 25G needles79,80 with more variable effects with narrower gauge spinal needles81,82.

Epidural equipment

Identification of the epidural space has been traditionally based on the qualitative loss of resistance technique due to the negative pressure nature of the potential space, whether using saline, air or the more historical “hanging drop” technique. Quantitative measurement via a pressure transducer is an emerging technology that allows for objective identification of any change in pressure. This confirms entry into the epidural space with location of a sustained pressure drop83. Quantitative pressure monitoring can be displayed visually or with sound and is an area of ongoing investigation and research.

Near-infrared tracking has also been explored briefly in cadavers for identification of the catheter tip. A near-infrared light is passed within an epidural catheter through the Tuohy needle during epidural insertion. The catheter tip can then be seen on an infrared screen. This technology may be superior to current x-ray radiation which would be associated with alternative methods of identification such as fluoroscopy. The technology is not currently suitable for clinical usage due to poor visualisation in the obese patient and when the catheter enters paramedian or paravertebral locations84. With further advances, this may be a method of interest in troubleshooting an ineffective epidural, but it remains in its infancy.

Spring-loaded epidural loss of resistance syringes are another innovation. The spring-loaded syringe allows for application of constant pressure to a column of saline similar to that applied by the anaesthetist using conventional methods. It also allows for the freeing up of a hand, thus permitting a two-handed technique when advancing the epidural needle. Initial studies have suggested that adoption of this method may result in improved ability to find the epidural space85. The caveat however in this study is that it was performed at a teaching institution with less experienced practitioners, there was no difference in identification of the epidural space along with a small statistically significant but not clinically significant reduction by five seconds in time to thread the epidural catheter86.

There has also been the advent of other loss of resistance syringes which allow for two-handed advancement of the epidural needle. There is potential for decreased time taken for identification of the epidural space and subjective improved control of the epidural needle however this is an area which would benefit from further study. For intermittent boluses using improved characterisation of any change in pressure using the new equipment87,88. One of the limiting factors for intermittent bolus techniques has historically been the availability of suitable equipment. The initial studies of intermittent boluses with PCEA were in part originally delivered via two separate pumps for PCEA and intermittent boluses89. The availability of pumps capable of both PCEA and intermittent bolus delivery will aid uptake of this method.

There has been exploration into the use of computer-integrated control of epidural dosing. This technique relied on integration of maternal PCEA usage into the calculation of an appropriate background CEI rate43. This is an area which further advances in artificial intelligence and data analysis may be of significant benefit. Pattern recognition of patient behaviour who have increasing pain may result in early identification and hence early prevention of breakthrough pain. Future technology may see increased nuance added to computer algorithms with consideration of not only recent doses, but also of labour progress, the pattern of local anaesthetic spread as manifested by dermalomal and motor blockade, and lastly the pattern of patient PCEA usage.

Augmented reality and machine learning

Augmented reality has been beneficial in education and training in other medical specialities, such as general surgery84. There are benefits of computer-aided simulation with improved fidelity that could be applied to training for epidural catheter insertion. Virtual reality allows for simulated epidural insertion along with real time feedback to a trainee regarding time taken, speed through layers, number of re-angulations and also any quantitative pressure monitoring can be displayed visually or with sound. This confirms entry into the epidural space with location of a sustained pressure drop3. Quantitative pressure monitoring can be displayed visually or with sound and is an area of ongoing investigation and research.

Near-infrared tracking has also been explored briefly in cadavers for identification of the catheter tip. A near-infrared light is passed within an epidural catheter through the Tuohy needle during epidural insertion. The catheter tip can then be seen on an infrared screen. This technology may be superior to current x-ray radiation which would be associated with alternative methods of identification such as fluoroscopy. The technology is not currently suitable for clinical usage due to poor visualisation in the obese patient and when the catheter enters paramedian or paravertebral locations. With further advances, this may be a method of interest in troubleshooting an ineffective epidural, but it remains in its infancy.

Spring-loaded epidural loss of resistance syringes are another innovation. The spring-loaded syringe allows for application of constant pressure to a column of saline similar to that applied by the anaesthetist using conventional methods. It also allows for the freeing up of a hand, thus permitting a two-handed technique when advancing the epidural needle. Initial studies have suggested that adoption of this method may result in improved ability to find the epidural space. The caveat however in this study is that it was performed at a teaching institution with less experienced practitioners, there was no difference in identification of the epidural space along with a small statistically significant but not clinically significant reduction by five seconds in time to thread the epidural catheter.

There has been exploration into the use of computer-integrated control of epidural dosing. This technique relied on integration of maternal PCEA usage into the calculation of an appropriate background CEI rate. This is an area which further advances in artificial intelligence and data analysis may be of significant benefit. Pattern recognition of patient behaviour who have increasing pain may result in early identification and hence early prevention of breakthrough pain. Future technology may see increased nuance added to computer algorithms with consideration of not only recent doses, but also of labour progress, the pattern of local anaesthetic spread as manifested by dermalomal and motor blockade, and lastly the pattern of patient PCEA usage.
compared with standard ultrasound techniques44,45. NICE concluded from this limited evidence that there may be benefit to the device in obese patients, however, further studies were needed to confirm this. Accuro is already being used clinically in Australia and further data on its efficacy is required. Although there is an association with the adoption of any new technique, a trend towards improvement in first attempt success and a reduction in number of attempts when compared to a caudal technique after six usages of the Accuro system by trainee anaesthetists46. Other automated identification of spinal anatomical landmarks techniques, such as sSINE, are currently under development, however full results are yet to be published.

Lastly, ongoing advances in equipment safety and standards are of paramount importance. The ongoing implementation of devices with connectors compliant to the international standard ISO80369-6 has been endorsed by ANZCA. In Australia, standard syringes are used for both intravascular injection, intra-thecal and epidural injection. ISO80369-6 is aimed at preventing accidental epidural/intrathecal injection by limiting interconnectivity of syringe types47. As an international standard, it has already seen partial adoption in the united kingdom48. This process has been slowed in part due to interruptions to supply chains and re-prioritisation of healthcare priorities.

CONCLUSION

There is good evidence to support a movement towards the usage of lower concentration local anaesthetics and also intermittent bolus techniques. There are new and exciting developments on the horizon with further advances in both epidural technique, equipment and medication which will decrease patient morbidity and hopefully improve maternal satisfaction and safety.

REFERENCES

Labour epidural injustice

Ian Maddox, BSc, MBChB, MBioeth, FANZCA
Specialist anaesthetist, departments of anaesthesia, pain and perioperative medicine, King Edward Memorial Hospital for Women, and Fiona Stanley Hospital, Western Australia

Dr Ian Maddox graduated from the Universities of St Andrews and Manchester in 1999, before moving to Australia in 2004 where he undertook anaesthesia training. He has interests in obstetric anaesthesia, bioethics, and the history of medicine.

INTRODUCTION

Despite the enthusiasm for other modes of analgesia in labour, it is generally accepted that epidural analgesia provides the most consistently effective pain relief during childbirth. However, practical ethical issues abound around its provision. These extend beyond the commonly experienced disquiet of the anaesthetist regarding informed consent (as the mother urges them to just get the bloody epidural in, ignoring the operator’s desire to provide full disclosure of risk and benefits). We face questions within three of the four pillars of medical ethics – those of autonomy, non-maleficence, and beneficence. Midwives hold it within their discretion to decide when, if at all, to act on a mother’s request for epidural analgesia by calling an anaesthetist. Similarly, the anaesthetist has the power to prioritise other duties, or their own needs, over promptly attending the distressed woman. Additionally, resources may be limited such that, with the best of intentions, neither midwife nor anaesthetist can always promise timely epidural analgesia. These are real issues as revealed by a 2020 UK government inquiry, which, although reported by several media outlets, was never made public. While in Australia and New Zealand midwives and anaesthetists generally provide an excellent labour analgesia service, we can expect, and my experience in Australia confirms, that similar issues to those in the UK exist. Here we must consider the fourth pillar of medical ethics, often neglected in considerations of labour analgesia: justice.

In this article I shall examine how the labouring women requesting epidural analgesia can be the subject of injustice, and how we as anaesthetists may contribute to that injustice. I shall argue that society unwarrantedly regards the acute severe pain of childbirth differently from other situations of acute severe pain. The result is a subtle, sometimes subconscious, and unjust deprioritising of labour epidural analgesia.

HISTORICAL AND MODERN VIEWS ON LABOUR ANALGESIA

On 7 April 1853, Queen Victoria, para seven and 33 years old, inhaled chloroform by open drop method for the 53 minutes of her second stage of labour under the watchful eye of Dr John Snow. Snow described the process in his handwritten notes: “Her Majesty expressed great relief from the application, the pains being trifling during the uterine contractions, and whilst between the periods of contraction there was complete ease. The effect of the chloroform was not at any time carried to the extent of quite removing consciousness.” Victoria herself described it as, “…that blessed chloroform, soothing, quieting and delightful beyond measure.”

Controversy around pharmacological relief of pain in labour began as soon as the technique was practised. Following Queen Victoria’s 1853 delivery, The Lancet declared, in opposition to the Queen’s praise of the drug, “In no case could it be justifiable to administer chloroform in a perfectly ordinary labour...” They may have had some valid concern regarding the safety of chloroform, and we are indeed lucky that John Snow’s reputation was not shattered by an iatrogenic royal death – lucky because the Queen’s experience may have gone some way towards greater acceptance of analgesia in labour, and lucky because it was in the following year that John Snow’s famous work in tracing the London cholera outbreak paved the way for great advances in public health.

The arguments against providing pain relief centred around safety, the physiological benefit of pain, and the diagnostic and procedural benefits of pain (for example, in assisting correct placement of forceps).

Although widely described, religious objections based on Genesis 3:16 (“I will greatly multiply your pain in childbirth; In pain you will bring forth children”) do not in fact seem to have formed a significant part of the objection to analgesia in childbirth. James Simpson published in 1847 a pamphlet entitled Answer to the Religious Objections Advanced Against the Employment of Anaesthetic Agents in Midwifery and Surgery, in which he presented theological more than humane arguments to counter the religious objections. However, this may have been a pre-emptive action rather than a response to a widespread and serious body of opinion.

It will surprise no one that some doctors expressed overt sexism in their objection to chloroform in labour. A Dr Sheppard wrote in 1853, “No female for whom I have any regard shall ever, with my consent, inhale chloroform. I look upon its exhibition as a pandering to the weakness of humanity, especially the weaker sex.”
Religious objections need not be dignified with any rational argument. Objections grounded in historically misogynistic attitudes similarly can be ignored (although I fear, but will not address here, that more subtle sexism still plays a part in attitudes today). Nevertheless, explicit and paternalistic denial of a woman’s request for labour epidural analgesia, based upon both claims of safety and the belief that pain to the mother and child, still persists today. These claims are not sufficient, I argue, to justify that paternalism.

MODERN EXPLICIT OBJECTIONS TO LABOUR EPIDURAL ANALGESIA

“Labour analgesia diminishes childbirth as a rite of passage and undermines the mother’s bond with her child”10. This is how a journalist in 2009 described the views of midwifery professor Dennis Walsh as set out in his paper published that year11. In his manuscript, Walsh discusses the rise in labour epidural use, and argues, with a very long bow, that it is an unwelcome sign of problems in “inadequate service provision and an impoverished teleological conjecture regarding pain in labour fall well short.”

The principle of respect for autonomy underlies provision of epidural analgesia. While many women of childbirth has been cited as a factor both diminishing and enhancing competence11. On the one hand, it is very long bow, that it is an unwelcome sign of problems in “inadequate service provision and an impoverished analgesia. Walsh goes further than the summary statement of the journalist (the first part of which is a value judgement, the second part unevidenced) arguing that his assertion, along with exaggerated and non-causative claims of other harms, carries enough weight to justify challenging the autonomy of the labouring woman. Indeed, Walsh sees respect for autonomy as a barrier to his conception of a good labour. As a factor

Within these empirical arguments for and against the provision of labour epidural analgesia, autonomy is implicitly or explicitly sidelined. To question the assumption of autonomy requires very good arguments, which I deny Walsh and others have, especially when what they propose to deny is something as intrinsically worthwhile as the relief of acute severe pain. The principle of respect for autonomy underlies provision of epidural analgesia. While many women autonomously decline the treatment, paternalistic withholding of analgesia can rarely be defended. Very occasionally, for example in extreme circumstances such as a severe coagulopathy, the principle of non-maleficence might justify denial of labour epidural analgesia. The normal risks and complications of a labour epidural are not reason enough to deny it to the competent woman. Beyond challenging epidural denial through paternalism, we must challenge its denial through injustice.

To confront these objections and cultural expectations directed against an autonomous mother’s wish for effective analgesia, and for society to make decisions regarding distribution of health dollars, we must first argue for the moral value of the relief of pain itself.

THE INTRINSIC VALUE OF THE RELIEF OF ACUTE SEVERE PAIN

A defence of the intrinsic moral value of the relief of severe pain will, as with any claim of intrinsic value, be subject to John Stuart Mill’s assertion that, “Questions of ultimate ends are not amenable to direct proof”19(p7). That is, when we supply a chain of argument to defend a moral position, eventually we arrive at a point where we believe there is good for its own sake – in this case the relief of severe pain. Further discussion of such metaethics is beyond the scope of this article, but I think it reasonable to continue upon the premise that relief of pain per se does not require further downstream benefits to justify its worth.

Illustrating this view that the relief of pain has intrinsic value, popular articles listing the greatest innovations in medicine invariably include anaesthesia20. Although the experience of pain must be subjective, that experience is universal (aside from extremely rare conditions of insensibility to pain), and we have at least some ability to imagine pain that is worse than that to which we have been previously exposed. Severe pain is feared, and obliged to that pain in the form of anaesthesia desired. This is reflected in the prominent position anaesthesia holds in those tables of medical innovation – most people believe belief from severe pain is of great importance. While being careful to avoid an appeal to democracy, human interest in avoiding pain is almost self-evident enough to forego any further discussion. What is important to discuss, however, is how we divide resources amongst treatments for different causes of acute severe pain, as well as other claims upon our health dollars and anaesthetists’ time. In making such decisions we must consider the value we place upon the relief of the pain of childbirth.

HOW THE PAIN OF CHILDBIRTH IS TREATED DIFFERENTLY FROM OTHER CAUSES OF ACUTE SEVERE PAIN

In addition to the explicit and argued objections to epidural analgesia, I suggest that the acute severe pain of childbirth is implicitly regarded differently from other causes of acute severe pain. This is evident in the behaviour of midwives and anaesthetists, institutional policies, and societal expectation, as I shall demonstrate below. The result is a deprioritisation of labour epidural analgesia manifested in, occasionally, outright denial of analgesia, and, more commonly, a tolerance of delays and under-overscoring.

What follows is anecdotal, but anecdotes that most anaesthetists and midwives will recognise:

• Requests for epidurals for two different mothers come through on the duty anaesthetist pager in quick succession. The duty anaesthetist can attend one, but asks a registrar in a theatre double up with a consultant to attend the other. The consultant says the registrar will be down to the labour ward in 30 minutes after completing their in-theatre tutorial on G-proteins; that will be within the audit-acceptable timeframe.

• A man requiring an incision and drainage of a perianal abscess is given general anaesthesia. Were analgesia not provided, the acute severe pain of the surgery would be transient. The physiological stress response to such surgery is not significant enough that anaesthesia provides any benefit other than oblivion to the acute incision.

• A woman has a Colles fracture reduced in the emergency department. For the reduction, analgesia is provided in the form of a Biers block, and conscious sedation with midazolam. Again, if analgesia were not provided, the escalation of the pain would be transient during the reduction.

• Sedation is routinely provided for gastroscopy and colonoscopy. Often in Australia this is provided by an anaesthetist.

In each of these examples we see how the acute severe pain of childbirth can be treated differently from acute severe pain due to other causes. Would any anaesthetist delay attending their endoscopy list to complete a
tutorial, telling the gastroenterologist to continue with the procedure without sedation until we arrive? Similarly, would we delay providing analgesia to reduce the Colles fracture, or incise the abscess, telling the surgeon to carry on until we arrived? Effectively this is what we are doing when we delay providing epidural analgesia in favour of completing other tasks of questionable priority – episodes of acute, severe pain continue for a period where they could have been interrupted.

What judgements, conscious or subconscious are being made here?

ARGUMENTS DEPRIORITISING LABOUR EPIDURAL ANALGESIA

For whatever reasons, in some circumstances it has become acceptable in the Australian health system to delay epidural analgesia in favour of other questionable priorities, at least up to the audit standard of half an hour. Of course, the demands for labour epidural analgesia will often compete with other justifiably higher priorities upon an anaesthetist’s time, including other epidurals, or emergency caesareans for example. But the half-hour audit target has become, in some minds, an acceptable timeframe in all cases, rather than the limit of acceptability in the face of competing priorities.

Is there any justification for claiming that the severe pain of childbirth is experienced differently from, less severely than, other causes of acute pain? Appeals to the nature fallacy – the pain of labour is natural and therefore good, or at least less bad – may play a part in our subconscious thinking. But there is nothing inherently better about something that is “natural” (even if we discard difficulties in defining what is “natural”), and I have argued that there is inherent good in reducing acute severe pain. Some seek to lend a little more respectability to this fallacy by substituting “physiological” for “natural”. In any case, once again we are appealing to a woman’s autonomous desire for prompt analgesia based on our own flawed assertion of the good of “nature”.

It is often said that the pain of labour may be better tolerated than other causes of acute severe pain because of anticipation of the joy resulting from the process – a newborn baby. This may be true for many mothers and could be a factor in prioritising other patients’ needs in competition with the anaesthetist’s time. However, it seems weak justification for, for example, completing a tutorial in preference to providing relief of severe pain. It could be a factor in prioritising other patients’ needs in competition with the anaesthetist’s time. However, it may also make the pain of labour more acceptable to an anaesthetist. Further, can we prioritise, ethically, the “remembering self” over the “experiencing self”? Would it be ethical to, instead of giving an anaesthetic for major surgery, give only small analgesic doses of midazolam, neuromuscular blocking drugs, and peripherally acting adrenergic blockers to modify the stress response to surgery, such that the patient was conscious, in pain and fear during surgery, but had no memory of the events? (Analgesia could be given at the end of surgery, as memory returned). This is an extreme example of prioritising the remembering self over the experiencing self but illustrates that the latter cannot simply be dismissed.

Even accepting that the pain of childbirth is not experienced differently to other forms of acute severe pain, some may argue that the agency of the woman in falling pregnant is relevant in prioritising analgesia; that is, in choosing to have children, she should accept the pain of childbirth. Most anaesthetists would, I think, hesitate to air this view publicly (although it may enter their thoughts when raised from sleep at 3am to site an epidural). I shall not spend long arguing against denial of treatment in any area of medicine based on a perceived culpability on the part of the patient for their suffering. There may indeed be reasonable theoretical arguments for such an approach, but practically such a strategy is fraught, rife as it is with our own biases and value judgements. In childbirth, particularly, we need to be wary of this line of thinking. Unless one is an anti-natalist (who believes that existence is so loaded with misery that it is immoral to procreate) one must accept a certain level of human reproduction. If one accepts this level of reproduction as allowable, then (unless all deliveries are elective caesareans) there can be no valid equation of the pain of labour with the pain of childbirth. It could be asserted that when a mother has multiple children, the argument of culpability is stronger, and the priority given to her epidural diminished. Once more, however, judgements rife with bias and subjectivity are being made against the intrinsic good of relieving acute severe pain – pain that can be ended with our skills. We must be wary that disapproval at the societal and environmental effects of having many children is not translated into a punitive withholding of labour analgesia.

Another psychological intuition working against prompt provision of labour epidural analgesia may be the different moral weight commonly given to acts compared to omissions. As I shall expand on below, this intuition is often flawed.

The acts and omissions doctrine states that, “... in certain circumstances, failure to perform an act, with certain foreseen and bad consequences, is morally less bad than to perform an act which has the identical foreseen bad consequences”22. It has some intuitive validity. Surely, we are not as culpable for the death of a child from starvation in a faraway country for failing to contribute to a charity that would have saved her life, as if we travelled there and actively killed her. Is the minister for health as culpable for the death of a patient as a consequence of underfunding as if he had shot them in the head? Consider some other cases. A specialist anaesthetist is sitting in the theatre in order to give his junior registrar some independence in theatre. When the emergency buzzer sounds and a breathless nurse runs in saying the registrar cannot intubate or oxygenate the patient, he refuses to attend theatre. If the patient dies, how less morally culpable is the specialist than if he had actively killed the patient? Certainly, the gap in culpability between act and omission is substantially narrower than for the gap between failure to give charity and active killing, or between failure to fund a healthcare system adequately and active killing. A further famous example is proposed by the moral philosopher James Rachels:

“Smith stands to gain a large inheritance if something should happen to his six-year-old cousin. One evening while the child is taking his bath, Smith sneaks into the bathroom and drowns the child, and then arranges things so that it will look like an accident.

Jones also stands to gain if anything should happen to his six-year-old cousin. Like Jones, Smith sneaks in planning to drown the child in his bath. However, just as he enters the bathroom Jones sees the child slip and hit his head, and fall face down in the water. Jones is delighted; he stands by to push the child’s head back under if it is necessary, but it is not necessary. With only a little thrashing about, the child drowns all by himself, “accidentally”, as Jones watches and does nothing”

Many would say that Jones is no less guilty than Smith, and the gap in culpability between the act and the omission is zero. What these cases show is that there are differences, sometimes subtle, in conditions that can invalidate the act and omissions doctrine. Even when it appears a clear difference does exist between moral culpability in an act versus an omission, the gap between the two can be less than our intuition suggests. But between acts and omissions the gap can be vast. If we had actively inflicted the pain with a cattle-prod ourselves for that forty minutes of delayed attendance? Other, the situations are not wholly analogous here. Poking someone in a vein to cause a heart attack may have side effects well beyond the pain endured by the victim, including, among many others, fear within the community that they might be next. But my point is to encourage a psychological exercise comparing moral culpability in causing pain and leaving that pain unrelieved, when we have its relief in our immediate power, and are employed for that very reason. While it is a stretch to suggest that the anaesthetist delaying siting an epidural to finish watching a TV show is as guilty as one wielding a cattle-prod, I suggest the gap between culpabilities is narrower than many think.

INSTITUTIONAL DEPRIORITISING OF LABOUR EPIDURAL ANALGESIA

I have argued that individuals deprioritise labour epidural analgesia through common attitudes and flawed arguments. Institutions, too, demonstrate this behaviour.

The UK National Institute of Clinical Excellence (NICE) instructs, “If a woman in labour asks for regional analgesia she has a right to it”. In an accompanying NICE news article, midwife-led care is recommended for low-risk pregnancies. “... the evidence now shows that midwife-led care is safer than hospital care for women having a straightforward, low risk, pregnancy ...” This is because the rate of interventions, such as the use of forceps or an epidural, is lower and the outcome for the baby is no different compared with an obstetric unit23. The news article goes on to say that rapid access to an obstetric unit must be available should an epidural be requested. One justification for recommending midwife-led units is telling – that is, epidural complications can be prevented by not offering epidurals. Would NICE recommend drilling teeth without local anaesthetic because the rate of complications was lower, even if access to a nerve block could be provided on request? For the analogy to be tight, the drilling would have to continue until the patient was being transferred to a site where someone skilled in dental nerve blocks was available. Once again, we see the pain of childbirth treated differently from other causes of pain. Note, the case for midwife-led care in low-risk pregnancies has strengths separate from issues of analgesia. I am certainly not here arguing against such a model of care, but merely pointing out one of its justifications reveals a particular attitude to pain in labour.
The contrasting guidelines of Royal College of Anaesthetists (RCoA) and the Australian and New Zealand College of Anaesthetists (ANZCA) regarding staffing and labour epidural provision demonstrate how institutional policies can affect a mother’s access to effective analgesia. The RCoA’s guidelines state that, “in units offering a 24-hour neuraxial anaesthesia service, the duty anaesthetist should be resident on the hospital site where neuraxial anaesthesia is provided”[25]... In contrast, the joint RANZCOG/ANZCA statement makes no explicit requirement for the anaesthetist to be resident, merely available in a “safe and timely manner”[27]. The practical outcome of this difference is that small remote units in Australia can more easily provide an epidural service compared to similar units in the UK. For example, Esperance Hospital, 700 kilometres from Perth, with around 200-250 deliveries per year offers a 24-hour epidural service. In contrast, an island hospital in the UK, similarly remote in practical terms, with a similar number of deliveries, and similar anaesthesia staffing, does not offer a 24-hour epidural service. One reason for this is the requirement to provide on-site anaesthesia presence, rather than being on-call from home[28]. An overcautious attitude to epidural safety denying some women effective analgesia in the UK, or a blase attitude to epidural safety risking significant harm in Australia? That question is beyond the scope of this article, but it is important to consider if labouring women are not to be the victims of injustice.

CONCLUSION

Hospitals in Australia are mostly well resourced to provide an excellent labour epidural service. Likewise, midwives and anaesthetists in the main strive to provide timely epidural analgesia to labouring mothers who want it. A few health professionals put forward explicit arguments loaded with value judgements (but little evidence) calling to overrule a labouring woman’s autonomous request for an epidural. Beyond these easily refuted arguments, there exists in Australia an attitude towards the pain of childbirth that is not consistent with attitudes to other causes of severe pain. This can manifest itself in delays in providing the most effective treatment for the pain; delays that do not occur in situations outside childbirth. That many women decline analgesia in labour should not influence its provision to those who do desire it. Whether we relive or neglect severe pain should not be a democratic decision, it should be the choice of the individual subject of the severe pain.

The pain of childbirth is unique. Analogies to other circumstances of acute severe pain cannot be faithful to all conditions, but I urge fellow anaesthetists to consider carefully, when called to site an epidural, whether any delay is just.

REFERENCES

28. Personal communication.
Assessment and perioperative medicine

Benefits of anaesthesia preassessment clinics
Saleem Khoyratty, Rishi Mehra, Aaron Paul

Use of mobile applications in perioperative medicine
Josh Szental, Rani Chahal, Gregg Miller

How can anaesthetists talk to patients with obesity?
Natalie Smith, Anthony Hodsdon, David A Story

Preparing the elderly patient for elective non-cardiac surgery
Naomi Osborne, Leena Nagappan, Kevin Kwan

Perioperative melatonin: Too good to be true?
Marli Smit, Dale Currigan
Benefits of anaesthesia preassessment clinics

Saleem Khoyratty FANZCA
Specialist anaesthesiologist at The Alfred hospital and The Austin Hospital, Melbourne, Australia
Dr Saleem Khoyratty has a special interest in perioperative medicine and is currently undertaking a perioperative masters through Monash University.

Rishi Mehra MBBS FANZCA PgDipEcho, NBE Diplomate, MMed (PeriopMed)
Specialist anaesthesiologist at The Alfred hospital, Melbourne, Australia
Dr Rishi Mehra has special interests in perioperative medicine and preadmission screening. Assisted with the formulation, setup and unit co-ordination of the Alfred Perioperative Medicine Short Course and Masters of Perioperative Medicine.

Aaron Paul MBBS(Hons), BBiomedSc, FANZCA
Specialist anaesthesiologist at The Alfred hospital, Melbourne, Australia
Dr Aaron Paul has completed the perioperative medicine short course through Monash University and is undertaking further study in point of care ultrasonography.

All authors are proponents of perioperative medicine and believe preassessment clinics form a vital part of improving perioperative patient care.

INTRODUCTION

Preassessment clinics (PACs) were first suggested by Lee in 1949. These clinics were initially designed as a practical approach to allow for day of surgery presentation. As the transition to same day surgery increased, the requirement for PACs also increased. Now preassessment clinics are a routine part of perioperative care with several models of PAC staffing being used in Australia and New Zealand. These range from nurse-led clinics to those run by physicians/anaesthesiologists.

While the initial drive to reduce day of surgery cancellation perhaps hastened the introduction of these clinics, the opportunity to optimise patients and therefore improve outcomes have increased their widespread use. While preassessment clinics do not regularly change management of the anaesthetic – as highlighted in a tongue in cheek publication – this should not be seen as a failure of them or a reason to negate their use. This article explores the evidence surrounding PACs and their effects on perioperative outcomes. As there are different models of PACs this article looks at the evidence around the different perioperative components of a clinic. Finally, the article will explore some of the future directions for development of PACs.

CANCELLATION OF OPERATIONS

Studies have demonstrated a reduction of greater than 50 per cent in cancellation rates by using anaesthesiologist-run PACs. Specific cohorts of surgical patients have similar findings. Surgical cohorts have included cardiac surgery and vascular surgery. Studies have also found significant reductions in cancellation rates in nurse-led preassessment clinics.

A retrospective cross-sectional descriptive study performed in Sydney, Australia looked at its preoperative service. It analysed more than 12,500 patients presenting for elective surgery over a four-year period. It found a cancellation rate of 0.46 per cent for anaesthesia related reasons. The most common reason was an upper respiratory tract infection which accounted for 33 per cent of their cancellations. The next most common group of reasons were potentially preventable. These included patient non-adherence to fasting guidelines and staff not acting on preoperative investigations. Preassessment clinics may reduce some of these preventable cancellations. Cancellations can also reduce theatre efficiency. Fischer noted that theatre turnover increased by more than 90 minutes when a patient was cancelled for various reasons such as subsequent patient preparedness and fasting status.

MORTALITY

Preassessment clinic is an opportunity to optimise a patient’s medical comorbidities. Optimisation offers the theoretical benefit of allowing patients to better tolerate the perioperative stressors of an operation. There is a lack of high-quality evidence to support this hypothesis and numerous confounders would make this difficult to prove. Evidence however is starting to emerge that there is an association between improved fitness and reduced perioperative complications, but extension to reductions in mortality is lacking.
The impact of PACs on mortality is conflicting with some studies reporting reductions in mortality and others not. A retrospective analysis at a New York Hospital, USA,

12 examined data from more than 64,000 patients. They compared patients who had attended their preassessment service, to those who had not. Propensity score matching was used. In-hospital mortality was low in both groups. However, in-hospital mortality was significantly lower in the group attending PAC (odds ratio, 0.48; 95% confidence interval (CI), 0.22 to 0.96, P = 0.04). While in a single centre study, Carlisle

13 reviewed more than 300 patients at their centre and followed up on the patients for almost 1000 days. Despite being older, having worse renal function and higher American Society of Anaesthesiology (ASA) scores, patients who attended a PAC had significantly reduced mortality (hazard ratio 0.42, hazard ratio 95% CI 0.23 - 0.75, P=0.006). The authors hypothesised that appropriate risk stratification and utilisation of postoperative high dependency beds led to improved outcomes in their cohort of patients. In their study, twice the number of patients who attended PAC utilised a high dependency unit (HDU) bed (24% vs 12%). Cantlay

14 also investigated patient outcomes at their tertiary centre’s preassessment clinic over a six month period. They were able to show a decrease in mortality from 14.5% to 4.8% after implementation for vascular surgery. In this study patient numbers were limited to 118 and included only patients having infrarenal open abdominal aortic aneurysm repair.

Contrary to these studies, a larger multi-centre centre-based database derived study conducted in Ontario, Canada, showed no difference in mortality.

6 This in cohort of more than 370,000 patients, 39 per cent of patients underwent a preassessment by an anaesthetist between 1994 and 2004.

MORBIDITY

The Grattan Institute is an independent Australian institution whose purpose is to develop high quality public policy for Australia’s future. In his publication “All complications count. Using our data to make hospitals safer”

16 the Health and Aged Care Program Director Dr Stephen Duckett provided the following data:

• One in nine patients (approximately 900,000) who go into hospital suffer a complication.

• One in four (725,000) patients who require an overnight stay in hospital suffer a complication.

• If the bottom 90 per cent of institutions reduced their complication rate to the same incidence as the top 10 per cent of hospitals, overall complication rates would reduce by 25 per cent.

• This reduction in complications could save healthcare $41 billion per year.

The reduction in bed days associated with these complications could lead to 250,000 more patients being treated by our healthcare system per year.

A randomised controlled trial in a single tertiary centre in London, UK, showed geriatric patients undergoing vascular surgery had reductions in complications with a comprehensive geriatric assessment compared to routine anaesthetic preassessment for this institution. It should be noted this was a secondary outcome in this trial.

It is assumed by some clinicians that improving preoperative fitness will improve outcomes. Evidence is starting to emerge that this is the case. A randomised controlled trial (RCT) published in 2018 examined patients undergoing elective abdominal surgery. The trial was relatively small with less than 70 patients in each arm. The intervention arm included standard care and prehabilitation in ASA 3 and 4 patients. The intervention was multifactorial and included motivational advice and high intensity training. The study showed strong evidence of an increased anaerobic threshold in the intervention arm (change in end-tidal CO2 135 (218) vs 135 (218) P = 0.0011)

and a reduction in complications by 51% (relative risk 0.48; 95% CI, 0.22 to 0.96, P = 0.04). While in a single centre study, Carlisle reviewed more than 300 patients at their centre and followed up on the patients for almost 1000 days. Despite being older, having worse renal function and higher American Society of Anaesthesiology (ASA) scores, patients who attended a PAC had significantly reduced mortality (hazard ratio 0.42, hazard ratio 95% CI 0.23 - 0.75, P=0.006). The authors hypothesised that appropriate risk stratification and utilisation of postoperative high dependency beds led to improved outcomes in their cohort of patients. In their study, twice the number of patients who attended PAC utilised a high dependency unit (HDU) bed (24% vs 12%). Cantlay also investigated patient outcomes at their tertiary centre’s preassessment clinic over a six month period. They were able to show a decrease in mortality from 14.5% to 4.8% after implementation for vascular surgery. In this study patient numbers were limited to 118 and included only patients having infrarenal open abdominal aortic aneurysm repair.

APPROPRIATE UTILISATION OF POSTOPERATIVE RESOURCES

Appropriate utilisation of intensive care unit (ICU) beds is essential to an effective perioperative service. Most operations, however, do not require this level of support. Working out which high-risk patients are appropriate for ward-based care and which patients require intensive care will contribute to the cost-effectiveness of a perioperative service. The cost per day of an intensive care bed varies from country to country. In the UK it is estimated to be £1087, or approximately $200011. In Australia it is estimated to have a mean daily cost of $434752. This compares to a ward bed per day cost of £23921. Both ward and intensive care beds are a limited resource and should be used appropriately. PACs can utilise a combination of clinical judgement, investigations and risk stratification tools to estimate perioperative risk for a patient.

Swart et al14 investigated the use of a risk stratification tool for 30-day mortality. This risk stratification tool was developed by one of the co-authors and was multifactorial. It involved patient demographics as well as results from cardiopulmonary exercise testing. It was specifically designed for the cohort of patients treated at this hospital. Patients presenting for elective colorectal surgery were divided into either ward-based care (low-risk < 1% risk of mortality), ICU/high dependency unit (HDU) care (high-risk >4% risk of mortality, expected to be cancelled if no bed) or ICU/HDU care but could proceed if no bed (intermediate risk 1-3% risk of mortality). The authors’ primary aim was to see if risk prediction tools could be used to determine the most appropriate postoperative destination. Cost-analysis per day was also quantified. This was done by calculating the number of ward, HDU and ICU bed days for a patient. These values were then multiplied by the UK standard results tariff. Table 1 shows the cost-analysis per day for intermediate risk patients in a HDU bed (68 patients) or in a ward bed (138 patients).

Table 1. Costs per day for intermediate risk (1-3%) patients depending on intermediate postoperative destination. Adapted from Swart et al14

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Intermediate risk patient destination immediately</th>
<th>Average cost per day (£)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>High dependency unit bed</td>
<td>3236</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ward bed</td>
<td>3613</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Requirements for emergency laparotomy in the cohort of patients varied (see Table 2). Cost-analysis showed the cost of an unplanned ICU/HDU admission was greater than the elective use of an ICU/HDU bed in an intermediate-risk patient for elective colorectal surgery in this institution.

Risk stratification tools are continuously developed for specific cohorts of patients. Improvement in these tools combined with predetermined operations and definitions of high-risk patients within an institution could delineate which cohort of patients need ICU/HDU care and which patients can be managed on a ward.

This may need refinement over time. In the study by Swart and colleagues, the utilisation of intensive care beds was changed within the institution as an excessive number of patients were being postponed/cancelled in the intermediate/high-risk group. The combination of objective risk stratification tools, clinical judgment, pragmatism and implementation to the correct institution of each institution’s resources could provide another valuable outcome of PACs. As shown by Swart and colleagues,14 this may in fact save money. The authors noted that the majority of patients who were initially sent to HDU/ICU postoperatively in the postoperative period (average 1.4 days) and re-laparotomy procedures would occur later (greater than 3 days) in the patient’s journey. The authors hypothesised that the initial improved care allowed better perfusion of the anastomosis.
Anastomotic leak was the most common finding at emergency laparotomy. The most common reason for emergency admission to HDU/ICU was pneumonia. Sixteen per cent of patients in the intermediate risk group who went to the ward initially required an emergency admission to HDU/ICU. Of the 68 patients admitted to HDU/ICU postoperatively with intermediate risk scoring, 64 patients had an arterial line with blood gases being taken and 29 patients received medications only able to be administered in a HDU/ICU environment (vasopressor or management of atrial fibrillation).

Table 2. Proportion of patients in different postoperative mortality risk groups who underwent emergency laparotomy after their elective procedure. Adapted from Swart et al48.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Group</th>
<th>Emergency laparotomy rate (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>High risk (&gt;4%)</td>
<td>4.3%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electively had ICU care after surgery</td>
<td>0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intermediate risk (1-3%)</td>
<td>0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electively had ICU care after surgery</td>
<td>10%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intermediate risk (1-3%)</td>
<td>10%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electively had standard ward bed care after surgery</td>
<td>1.1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low risk (&lt;1%)</td>
<td>1.1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Standard ward bed care after surgery</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These findings were corroborated by the 2nd Sprint National Anaesthesia Project: Epidemiology of Critical Care provision after Surgery (SNAP-2: EpICCSS) study45. This prospective cohort study in the UK was performed over seven consecutive days. It showed 13.9% of the 14,936 patients were cancelled for inpatient surgery. Risk stratification by a critical care bed was an independent risk factor for cancellation (odds ratio 2.92, p<0.001) along with a hospital having an emergency department.

The perceived benefit of critical care postoperatively is likely to be the ability to monitor patients more closely in an area with increased nursing to patient ratios. This may allow for earlier detection of deterioration and reduce the issue of “failure to rescue”49. Therefore, this balance between closer monitoring and increased nurse to patient ratios needs to be balanced against the increased risk of cancellation. Accurate identification of the patients who require postoperative critical care is vital. The SNAP-2:EpICCSS investigators examined inpatient surgery across three countries (UK, Australia and New Zealand). After excluding obstetrics due to the low mortality in this population, they found a postoperative mortality of 1.2% in their 22,216 patients. In a subsection of high-risk patients this increased to 2%. These findings correlate well with another study by Abbott et al who found mortality to be 1.1% of over 39.5 million surgical episodes in the UK50. The authors found that despite the availability of risk-stratification tools, these were not commonly used. The study showed that while clinician judgement was good, the utilisation of an objective risk calculator – in this case the surgical outcome risk tool (SORT) – when combined with clinician judgement improved the ability to discriminate high-risk patients. The study also found that clinician judgement was pessimistic. This may mean when clinician judgement is used alone, an overuse in critical care beds, which vary from country to country (Table 3), could occur with a subsequent increased risk of surgery cancellations due to bed unavailability.

Table 3. Variation in critical care beds per 100,000 population in different countries61.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Critical care beds per 100,000 population</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>United Kingdom</td>
<td>9.33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>14.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Zealand</td>
<td>9.14</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The REASON study also showed that patients who had an unplanned ICU admission had an increase in perioperative risk51. Pearse et al showed in the European Surgical Outcomes Study (EUSOS) study that the 73% of patients who died in their 46,539 patients did not get admitted to ICU52.

LONGER TERM BENEFITS

Using preassessment clinics can be used to provide a “teachable moment” and thus can have longer term benefits on a patient’s health. Smoking is associated with both negative long-term health impacts and negative perioperative outcomes53. As perioperative physicians we have an opportunity for general health promotion, reducing perioperative morbidity and mortality and also improving long-term health outcomes.

Most patients acknowledge the detrimental effects of smoking on long-term health. A study performed in British Columbia, Canada, screened more than 1700 patients who presented for elective surgery for smoking status. Of those considered suitable, 161 completed a telephone survey. Fifty-nine per cent of participants who completed the telephone survey were female. They found 75% of patients quit smoking in the preoperative eight-week period. An additional 38.8% reduced their smoking in the preoperative period. Interestingly the telephone survey revealed that only 50% of patients were aware that smoking was detrimental perioperatively. Fifty per cent were informed about reduced smoking/quitting smoking in the lead up to surgery. Therefore, it is possible that many patients are not aware of the immediate detrimental effect of smoking on perioperative outcomes. A study from 200854 followed 120 patients who were randomised to either smoking cessation interventions versus no intervention. At one year follow-up, there was strong evidence of a reduction in the proportion of patients remaining smoking free who received the intervention compared to those who received no intervention (13 in 60 patients (22%) versus 2 in 60 (3%), P < 0.01). A further multi-centre, double-blind, RCT by Wong et al55 followed 286 non-cardiac surgery patients over three, six and 12 month periods. At each stage there was an increase in smoking abstinence in the patients receiving varenicline, a tobacco disorder treatment medication, compared to the placebo group. There is therefore some evidence that the perioperative period can be used as a teachable moment both immediately and in the long term.

The PAC consult, however, can be anxiety provoking for patients. A lot of information is given to a patient and therefore smoking cessation advice may not be recalled. Competing interests to optimise patients and convey information within time constraints can mean smoking cessation advice is suboptimal. Other issues such as rapport and whether a patient is willing to discuss these sensitive topics can also impact discussions in PAC.

The importance of having an effective discussion is further strengthened by the potential economic benefits. There are approximately 20,000 smoking-related deaths annually in Australia with 1.7 million smoking-related hospital inpatient episodes. The net tangible costs of smoking are estimated to be $19.2 billion (range $16.3 billion to $24.0 billion)56.

Perioperatively there is a teachable moment with a patient who is motivated to improve their outcomes. We have something which is shown to have benefits both perioperatively and long-term for the patient. It also has benefits for the hospital, society and the economy. Similar interventions could be applied to other comorbidities such as obesity, obstructive sleep apnoea, diabetes and substance use disorders including increased alcohol use.

THE EVOLVING STRUCTURE OF PREASSESSMENT CLINICS

Studies have been performed to look at the utilisation of telephone-based PACs57. Telephone preassessments are considered a useful part of PACs. In Australia they can be particularly helpful with patients in remote regions, avoiding the need for patients to travel extensive distances to attend hospital. The 2019 pandemic has brought telephone consultation, as well as the use of other modern solutions such as telehealth, to the forefront58. A hybrid model where both in person and virtual/telephone reviews seems likely in the future.

WHO SHOULD RUN PREASSESSMENT CLINICS?

Different models of how preassessment clinics are run are seen in different institutions. A RCT59 comparing junior doctors and appropriately trained nurses across a range of surgical specialities showed no difference in cost. Various factors such as funding, resources and tradition are likely to dictate the personnel running a PAC in any given institution.

Many medications may need to be reviewed in the perioperative period. Tackling this issue is multifactorial and potentially costly. One consideration is the utilisation of a pharmacist in PACs. A prospective, single centre study60, looked at how many medication errors were picked up by the utilisation of a pharmacist in PAC. This study was conducted in patients who required at least one night in hospital. The study found that 95% of patients recorded at least one medication discrepancy. Sixty-one per cent of patients were observed to have a “clinically meaningful” discrepancy in their medications noted in a preassessment without a pharmacist. These findings were supported by a study by Marotti61. This study performed in Newcastle, New South Wales, Australia, looked at 120 patients in each arm. It compared usual practise, to a pharmacist
taking a medication history, and finally looked at a pharmacist taking a medication history and prescribing medication for the patients postoperatively. This study was conducted in patients who required at least one night in hospital. The number of missed doses of medications was significantly lower in the last group with pharmacists prescribing (3.21 [2.89-3.52 95% CI]) control v 3.3 [2.98-3.68 95% CI]; pharmacist prescribing v 1.07 [0.9-1.25 95% CI]; pharmacist prescribing, p < 0.001. The number of medication errors was also significantly lower in the pharmacist prescribing group for both frequency (0.29 [0.19-0.39 95% CI]) v 0.07 [0.02-0.12 95% CI]; p < 0.001) and dosing errors (0.48 [0.35-0.61 95% CI] v 0.12 [0.05-0.18 95% CI]; p < 0.001). The number of medication errors was also significantly lower in the pharmacist prescribing group for both frequency (0.29 [0.19-0.39 95% CI]) v 0.07 [0.02-0.12 95% CI]; p < 0.001) and dosing errors (0.48 [0.35-0.61 95% CI] v 0.12 [0.05-0.18 95% CI]; p < 0.001).

The increasing complexity of patients presenting for surgery, combined with the multitude of factors which may make medication management perioperatively challenging provides another reason why a PAC may be useful, but in particular one involving a pharmacist. The cost of employing a pharmacist needs to be balanced by the potential medication issues (that is, cancellation). These costs are difficult to determine.

**PREOPERATIVE INVESTIGATIONS**

In the UK from 2002-2012 there was an increase of 60% in the number of operations performed within the NHS. This was an increase of around four million operations. Unnecessary investigations will cause increased costs, utilisation of resources and potentially cause increased anxiety to patients. Studies have shown how implementation of guidelines into PACs can reduce cost. A study performed in Stanford, USA, compared investigations requested before and after the implementation of an anaesthesiologist clinic. There was a reduction in preoperative investigations of 55.1% with no adverse consequences noted from this reduction (Table 4). Investigations already performed by the general practitioner (GP) should be made available at preassessment to further reduce unnecessary investigations being performed.

### Table 4. Reduction of preoperative investigations after implementation of an anaesthesiologist preassessment clinic

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Before anaesthesiologist run preassessment clinic</th>
<th>After anaesthesiologist run preassessment clinic</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Total preoperative tests (number)</td>
<td>21,904</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of patient tests (average)</td>
<td>6.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11,862</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2.75</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fischer went on to show a cost saving of $US112.09 ($36,000) per patient in 1996. Extrapolating this out to an annual figure for their clinic over a year this equated to a cost saving of over $US1.01 million ($3,000,000). PAC may therefore streamline preoperative investigations.

**DECISIONAL REGRET**

Decisional regret is the situation where a patient feels that if they made a different decision their outcome may have been better. A systematic review analysed 73 patient-centred studies about this issue and 57.5% of the studies involved oncological patients. It found an average prevalence of decisional regret of 14.4% in surgical patients. This equates to approximately one in seven operations being associated with postoperative patient regret. PACs may offer a better opportunity to achieve more shared decision making, more patient participation in decision making and reductions in decisional regret.

**INTERDISCIPLINARY REFERRALS**

The ability to refer patients for further investigations and allow these results and consultations to lead to improved shared decision making for high-risk patients is something that is constantly developing in the perioperative field. Cantlay described an example of this through a vascular preassessment service. Cantlay and colleagues came up with a pragmatic referral system to identify patients most in need of further cardiac investigations, ensuring their system could handle the extra workload. The authors monitored the number of referrals for stress testing and their outcomes as well as referrals requiring coronary angiography/ percutaneous coronary intervention (PCI)/coronary artery bypass grafting (CABG). The utilisation of PCI/CABG perioperatively is controversial, something the authors acknowledged. This does show the power of the
PAC to stimulate conversations with other specialities to overcome these controversial areas of perioperative practice. The paper also discussed how 26 patients did not proceed to surgery. Many of these were high-risk patients who were investigated. This led to shared decision making with the patients that the benefit of surgery was likely outweighed by the potential morbidity and mortality associated with surgery.

**COST-EFFECTIVENESS**

A preassessment clinic will have staffing costs associated with it. There are, however, a multitude of ways in which a PAC may reduce healthcare system costs. These include:

- Reduce day before surgery admission.
- Reduce cancellation and increase theatre efficiency.
- Reduce utilisation of unnecessary preoperative investigations.
- More appropriate use of critical care beds.
- Optimisation of comorbidities (for example, smoking cessation).
- Reduction in perioperative complications.

Many of these are difficult to measure and are not reliably obtained for every patient attending clinic. There is limited evidence about the cost-effectiveness of preassessment anaesthesia clinics.

**THE PERIOPERATIVE PATHWAY**

In a traditional model preassessment occurs shortly before the operative day (Figure 2). However, the preoperative period could start much earlier. Grocott et al\(^{50}\) have proposed this in their recent review centred around improving the “triple aim” in healthcare perioperative pathways. The preoperative pathway should ideally start at an initial consultation with the general practitioner. Grocott suggested re-designing the preoperative pathway for patients presenting from a more traditional model to this alternative model which would allow more time for optimisation (Figure 3).

Grocott also highlighted other potential benefits apart from optimisation of comorbidities. This model would include increased use of shared decision making, smoking cessation, dietary modifications and optimal analgesia which assist in reducing perioperative complications. It should be remembered that many of these will have longer term benefits even if surgery is declined by the patient. Grocott’s article also highlights the reality that surgery is most likely to be declined by the most unwell patients. These are the patients who are most likely to develop complications postoperatively and therefore have the most to benefit from optimisation and shared decision making perioperatively.

**THE FUTURE**

Preassessment clinics are well established for elective surgery in many countries. The constituents of a PAC should be individualised to each institution. The ability to remain flexible, to evaluate updated evidence, incorporate technology and to change preassessment to an increasingly efficient and cost-effective model will ensure PACs remains relevant to modern practice.

High quality perioperative evidence regarding patient-centered outcomes and the health economic impact of PAC is required and is emerging through pragmatic clinical trials using recognised patient-centred perioperative outcomes\(^{51}\). An ideal PAC should work in conjunction with a multidisciplinary team of surgeons, other physicians and healthcare professionals (dieticians, pharmacists) to identify patients who would benefit from interventions. This work would work alongside well established, but continually refined institution based preoperative pathways for certain patient cohorts. The ideal PAC brings this all together and aids in providing the communication for patients which allows improved patient centred perioperative care. Ultimately the return to functional status, reductions in complications, length of stay and decisional regret would be the aim for perioperative healthcare.

**CONCLUSION**

Preassessment services have many benefits (Figure 4). Decisions need to be made at an institutional level to formulate the optimal preassessment service for that hospital. Each institution would also need to examine the utilisation of screening tools to identify patients most likely to benefit from PAC. Internal guidelines need to be made to streamline referral pathways for further investigations. These guidelines will need to be individualised to the local institution whilst reflecting national/international consensus. Preassessment guidelines must also incorporate new and emerging evidence. Finally, ongoing audit and evaluation of a clinic’s adherence to best practice guidelines should be part of every PAC. Ensuring patients are adequately optimised for surgery should be combined with a more long-term approach to the health benefits of optimisation. This can be further combined with information about expectations and goals perioperatively which may involve family and friends. The ability to spend time discussing risks perioperatively, answer questions and utilise interpreters are also further benefits of PACs. The implementation of technology such as telehealth and smart technology can allow healthcare providers to individualise care to a patient’s circumstances and allow us to deliver a well-informed, optimised and satisfied patient on the day of surgery.

---

**Figure 2. Traditional perioperative pathway\(^{50}\)**

**Figure 3. Alternative perioperative pathway\(^{50}\)**
REFERENCES

15. Deckst SJ, Jorm C, Grattan Institute. All complications should count: using our data to make hospitals safer. 2018.
19. Effectiveness and cost-effectiveness of INSPIRatory muscle training (IMT) for reducing postoperative pulmonary complications (PPC): a sham-controlled randomised controlled trial (RCT) (INSPIRE) - Grant details – Europe PMC [Internet]. [cited 2021 Apr 23]. Available from: https://europepmc.org/grantfinder/ndtvdetails?query=pi%3A%22Pufulete%2BM%22&gdid%3A%2216%2F140%2F07%22&ga%3A%22National%20Institute%20for%20Health%20Research%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%20%2


43. The IHI Triple Aim: An Initiative to Improve Access, Efficiency, and Staff Satisfaction in Preoperative, Anesthesia Clinic. J Am Pharm Assoc JPhA. 2020 Apr 14;.


Use of mobile applications in perioperative medicine

Josh Szental MBBS (Hons) MMed FANZCA

Western Health, Melbourne, Australia

Dr Josh Szental is a staff anaesthetist, perioperative medicine specialist and amateur programmer. He has a keen interest in perioperative medicine and the use of technology to make healthcare more efficient and safer. Josh is the current perioperative lead and a safety and quality officer in the Department of Anaesthesia, Pain and Perioperative Medicine at Western Health, Melbourne.

Rani Chahal MBBS FANZCA

The Peter MacCallum Cancer Centre, Melbourne, Australia

Dr Rani Chahal is a clinical and research staff anaesthetist at the Peter MacCallum Cancer Centre and a senior clinical lecturer at the University of Melbourne. Rani has a strong interest in perioperative medicine, quality improvement and implementation science and is the current quality officer and airway lead at the Department of Cancer Anaesthesia, Perioperative and Pain Medicine. His research themes include prevention of postoperative haematological and pulmonary complications, patient education through virtual platforms, e-learning and implementation science using technological aids. Rani was awarded the Peter Mac Team Excellence Award in 2014, the Victorian Premier’s Healthcare Award for Excellence in Cancer Care in 2015 and the ANZCA Gilbert Brown Prize in 2018 for his work on surgical thromboembolism prevention.

Gregg Miller MBChB (Hons) FANZCA

Western Health, Melbourne, Australia

Dr Gregg Miller has completed fellowships in simulation, airway management and obstetrics in the UK. He is a staff anaesthetist at Western Health, Melbourne. He is the blood management lead, with a particular interest in viscoelastic point of care testing. Gregg shares an interest in the use of technological aids as clinical decision support tools.

INTRODUCTION

Perioperative medicine is a broad and expanding field of medicine. Multiple groups of clinicians are involved with patient care from the time of contemplation of surgery until recovery is complete. Despite the widespread availability of major international clinical decision-support and electronic decision aids for clinicians to keep abreast of the rapidly expanding evidence base and latest recommendations. In addition, effective communication and dissemination of information between the profession and clinicians, and between clinicians and patients, is an ongoing challenge. Mobile applications are a novel and increasingly available solution to these problems, which is acceptable to end users and provides clinicians and developers with enormous flexibility to innovate.

DISSEMINATION OF INFORMATION

In 1962, Everett Rogers described the diffusion of innovations theory1, which outlined how, why, and at what rate, the uptake of new innovations spread through a population. This model can also be applied to the diffusion of evidence-based practice2 in perioperative medicine. The factors that determine whether, and how rapidly, new evidence is adopted were outlined by Rogers. They include:

1. Relative advantage – the greater the benefit of a novel practice on the patient risk profile, the clinician and/or an organisation, the greater the likelihood of adoption. For example, the Evaluation of nitrous oxide in the gas mixture for anaesthesia (ENIGMA) trial3 reported a significant reduction in major complications (OR 0.71) when nitrous oxide was avoided in major surgery. This led to a rapid, though temporary, reduction in the use of nitrous oxide across Australasia.

2. Compatibility – the degree to which new evidence is compatible with clinicians’ existing beliefs and past experiences. For example, the Preoperative intravenous iron infusion for major abdominal surgery (PREVENTT) trial4 found that preoperative iron infusion was not associated with a reduction in blood transfusion rates in anaemic patients undergoing major abdominal surgery. This finding was not compatible with most clinicians’ beliefs about the benefits of preoperative iron therapy, which has impacted the adoption of these findings.

3. Complexity – evidence perceived as more complex to understand or implement is less likely to be rapidly adopted. For example, the Measurement of exercise tolerance before surgery (METs) study5 reported that the use of the Duke Activity Status Index (DASI) questionnaire was superior to subjective assessment
of functional capacity in predicting postoperative mortality or myocardial infarction within 30 days after surgery. However, the perceived complexity of administering the DASI questionnaire has slowed the implementation of this tool.

4. Trialability – the degree to which evidence can be trialed in real-world practice before a full-scale rollout can incorporate its updated recommendations. For example, findings from Mangano et al\(^a\) of a significant reduction in postoperative mortality when atenolol was prescribed in high-risk patients was a simple intervention with a perceived benefit that clinicians could apply and trial in the preoperative period. This improved its early adoption despite subsequent evidence to the contrary, in the Perioperative ischaemic evaluation (POISE) trial\(^b\).

5. Observability – a change to practice that provides perceived benefit, and is visible to colleagues, is more likely to be rapidly adopted. Clinicians are able to observe the relative advantage of a change in practice before implementing it themselves. The strong influence of respected colleagues embracing a change to practice also drives the adoption of visible innovations. An example is the introduction of the Bispectral index (BIS) monitor which, through observability amongst colleagues, helped accelerate its introduction into clinical practice.

While changes to practice that are significantly beneficial, consistent with our prior beliefs, simple, triable in our own practice, will be rapidly adopted, how can we encourage the adoption of the myriad of smaller evidence-based findings that collectively provide significant value to patients? Is there a need for tools to help distil an increasingly complex and rapidly changing evidence base and enable decision support at the point of care. This is particularly important for complex decision-making and decisions that are made infrequently.

Local hospital procedures and guidelines are commonly used to provide evidence-based guidance for clinicians. Over and above the benefits of following national or international guidelines, local guidelines allow specification based on clinical setting, clinician preferences, and patient population. For example, the 2014 American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Guideline on Perioperative Cardiovascular Evaluation and Management of Patient Undergoing Noncardiac Surgery\(^c\) recommend that “Management of the perioperative antplatelet therapy should be determined by a consensus of the surgeon, anesthesiologist, cardiologist, and patient, who should weigh the relative risk of bleeding with that of stent thrombosis.” The risk of surgical bleeding, and the risk of stent thrombosis are often difficult for clinicians to accurately predict. Different clinicians may have different perceptions of risk. A local guideline can allow local agreement about acceptable levels of risk to improve the efficiency and consistency of advice given.

Guidelines are often difficult to access at the point of care in a timely fashion. Printed guidelines run the risk of being outdated when new evidence emerges, and electronic guidelines require access to a computer. Even though guidelines can be accessed on a smartphone, the format of a written guideline requires the clinician to read through the guideline and make an informed decision about patient care that is targeted towards the individual. The emergence of novel and readily available technologies such as smartphone applications (apps) may address these problems by providing a modern solution to information dissemination.

MOBILE DEVICE APPS

In July 2008, Apple Inc (Cupertino, CA, USA)\(^d\) launched the App Store and with it, the app revolution. This opened up a competitive landscape where software development companies could create increasingly complex mobile apps. As devices such as the smartphone have matured, and new devices such as the tablet and smartwatch have been developed, programming languages have also evolved. Whereas in the past, a software development company needed to code multiple versions of a single app for use on different platforms such as Apple iOS, Google Android, and web, some programming languages now allow a single set of code to be deployed across multiple platforms simultaneously. This has drastically reduced the time and cost of developing an app, as well as the skill sets required to do so.

The mobile platform provides particular benefits in the healthcare setting as it enables software to be used at the point of care. Even with the proliferation of desktop computers and tablets throughout hospital networks in order to facilitate the use of electronic medical records (EMR) by clinicians at the bedside, many clinicians still prefer to access software on their personal devices where it is appropriate to do so, due to the speed and ease of access.

Mobile apps for use in the healthcare setting are abundant, of varying quality, and are created for a wide range of uses. These can broadly be categorised as:

1. Patient-facing apps – for health promotion, data entry, or behaviour modification. For example, an app that instructs a patient in prehabilitation prior to major surgery.

2. Hospital-facing apps – for reporting, benchmarking and maintaining standards. For example, an app that allows compliance with Enhanced Recovery After Surgery protocols to be monitored.

3. Clinician-facing apps – for educational purposes, communication, decision support, accessing medical records and documentation.

This article will focus on clinician-facing mobile apps and provide a narrative review of their development, application and limitations.

CLINICAL DECISION SUPPORT SYSTEMS

Clinical decision support systems (CDSS) are a type of clinician-facing app and have been used in clinical medicine since the 1970s. CDSS are typically pieces of software that aid clinicians by matching individual patient data to a clinical knowledgebase resulting in a recommendation to the clinician\(^e\). As computers have evolved, CDSS have become increasingly abundant, specific and integrated. Most EMR now include varying levels of decision support using patient data, and increasingly, machine learning and artificial intelligence are being trialed within CDSS algorithms in an effort to improve clinical decision making beyond that of a flow diagram or simple algorithm.

CDSS have also been developed outside of EMR to support clinicians at the point of care, platformed on mobile devices, websites or computers. There are a number of benefits and concomitant risks with CDSS:\(^f\)

1. Patient safety – CDSS can reduce the number of errors particularly in prescribing but can be associated with alert fatigue when integrated into EMR prescribing.

2. Clinical management – CDSS increase adherence to guidelines but run the risk of blind user adherence due to excessive trust in the system.

3. Cost containment – by reducing ordering of unnecessary tests, suggesting cheaper but equally efficacious treatment options, and by improving time efficiency.

4. Automation – CDSS may be able to automate tasks such as documentation of clinical decisions which can improve efficiency and clarity of medical records, particularly when directly integrated with EMR.

Simplifying complexity

“Simplicity is hard to build, easy to use, and hard to charge for. Complexity is easy to build, hard to use, and easy to charge for.” – Chris Sacca, American venture investor

Before embarking on the development of a mobile app, it is important to consider the complexity of the information or decision-making algorithm, and where the app will be used. Certain decision support algorithms and settings lend themselves well to mobile apps. These include:

1. Complex algorithms – algorithms with “tree-like” structures of decision nodes, or where decision nodes can dynamically change based on previous answers are especially feasible for mobile apps.

2. Multiple inputs – decision nodes that require multiple inputs to determine the best course of action, for example, calculation of creatinine clearance or determination of a risk score, are more intuitive and easier to use when presented as a mobile app.

3. Settings with no time pressure – mobile apps require handling of a mobile phone and may take some time to open and operate which makes algorithms used in time pressured settings less likely to be advantageous.

For example, the Vortex approach to airway management\(^g\) is a simple algorithm, does not require interactivity during its use, and is typically used in emergency settings. This type of algorithm is better suited to a poster format.

Complex algorithms are prone to misinterpretation and misuse when displayed in paper format. They often contain exceptions to the rule, specific exclusions, duplicate pathways and false dichotomies. Complex algorithms lend themselves very well to mobile apps which allow the user to be stepped through a dynamic series of questions, each of which can be changed depending on the previous answer. This reduces the risk of incorrect advice being obtained by the user.

It is important that any guideline, but particularly a guideline that will be converted for use in a mobile app, undergo a process of simplification to eliminate complexity as much as possible. It is often surprising how much a complex series of decision nodes can be streamlined, and it makes the task of programming the algorithm’s logic much simpler.
Below, we describe the development process of a mobile app, and then provide narrative reviews of three mobile apps that were used to provide decision support for complex algorithms.

THE DEVELOPMENT PROCESS OF A MOBILE APP

There are a number of steps and decisions that need to be negotiated in the development of point-of-care mobile apps. These include:

**Purpose**
Determine the purpose and scope of the proposed app. Will the app be used to make local, national or international guidelines easier to use? Will the app be used to store patient information or relay that information to a hospital server? Decide at this early stage whether an app is the most appropriate medium for the idea.

**Intended end-users**
The intended end-users should be identified in the context of the intended use of the app. This may be a general-purpose app for national or international distribution, or a local app developed specifically for the hospital or network.

**Platform**
Decide on the platform(s) on which the app will run. Apps for personal devices will require development on hospital or network general-purpose app for national or international distribution, or a local app developed specifically for the hospital or network.

There are a number of advantages and disadvantages to hosting apps on various platforms, even though all designed to run on dedicated, hospital devices may only require development for one operating system.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Platform</th>
<th>Advantages</th>
<th>Disadvantages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hospital intranet</td>
<td>• Secure environment</td>
<td>• Not portable for use in other hospitals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Visible to hospital administration</td>
<td>• Requires login details</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Directly linked to the “source of truth” so it is never outdated</td>
<td>• May have limited interactivity or programmability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• May be more easily linked to Electronic Medical Record</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Will run on all operating systems</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Web</td>
<td>• Available for use anywhere</td>
<td>• Internet access required for use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Will run on all operating systems</td>
<td>• Both a desktop and mobile version may be needed for usability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Guarantees user is accessing the latest version</td>
<td>• May require login details if the app is not for public use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mobile app</td>
<td>• Available for use anywhere</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Available for use without internet connectivity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Operating system specific</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Need to ensure user is using the latest version of app</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Developers, timeline and cost
Developer options include outsourcing the entire development process to an external software development company, developing the app in-house, or a hybrid model. There are several advantages and disadvantages to each.

Outsourcing the development to a software development company can be advantageous for several reasons. A professional app developer is likely to be able to turn around an app in a short timeframe, the final product is likely to look and feel more professional than in-house design, and advanced features such as electronic health record integration, safekeeping of patient data, and analytics will be easier to implement. Disadvantages of using a software development company are cost, lack of control for frequent iteration and the need for ongoing funding when an app requires updating. The cost for outsourcing app development is generally $A10-20,000 for a basic app, to upwards of $A200,000 for a complex app.1

Developing an in-house app is feasible. Advantages of in-house development include full creative control, the ability to iterate many times over to develop an app that is exactly fit for purpose and low to no maintenance cost. Disadvantages include the use of valuable staff time to learn and refine programming skills, slower time frames for app completion, and the potential for major coding errors if testing is not undertaken diligently.

Learning to program in a number of programming languages is now possible due to the presence of a number of reputable online course providers. The leading languages for cross-platform app development are Xamarin (developed by Xamarin in 2013, now owned by Microsoft, based on the C# programming language), React Native (developed by Facebook in 2015, based on the Javascript programming language), and Flutter (developed by Google in 2018, based on the Dart programming language). All of these languages enable fast, cross-platform development, one set of code for distribution to multiple operating systems and platforms simultaneously such as iOS, Android, and web, and a strong focus on creating intuitive user interfaces.

Develop a network to assist with development
A collaborative team approach is an essential ingredient in app development. Depending on the content of the app, a multidisciplinary team may provide insights that will improve the functionality and usability of the app. It is important to engage with representatives of the end-user group, and consumer advocates may also be helpful if the app has a patient-facing component.

Executive sponsorship and buy in is also valuable to ensure that the healthcare network provides both financial and non-financial support. This ensures that the objectives of the app are met and are aligned with other initiatives, and existing policies and procedures.

Terms and conditions, disclaimer and privacy statements should be clearly set out. Legal advice should be sought to ensure the hospital, clinicians and developers are protected from legal liability resulting from decision support provided by the app. Enquiries should also be made to assess if any part of the app might require intellectual property protection.

Planning
Regardless of which development pathway is selected, the planning stage for an app is critical. The front end (user interface and user experience – UI/UX) and back end (coding) should be planned in advance, particularly when an app’s development is outsourced.

**Front end**
The user interface is the public face of any app. Hospital logo, colour scheme and/or specific hospital information may be included here. It is sensible to obtain authorisation for any hospital branding from the hospital executive, public affairs and the legal department before development begins. Drawing out what a user interface might look like is helpful to save time.

**Back end**
Clear decision support algorithms are important to allow programmers to code flowcharts and guidelines accurately. Computers and non-medical programmers do not have the ability to interpret medical information to create accurate decision trees, so this process must be thoroughly documented and account for all possibilities. When designing the back end, developers should think about potential pitfalls or unexpected user inputs that may impact the decision tree and result in incorrect recommendations.

The process of converting a guideline or flowchart into logical statements that can be used for programming is a useful process in and of itself. Often, complex algorithms can be simplified significantly by determining the key decision nodes that make paper-based guidelines and algorithms easier to understand and apply without the use of mobile apps.

A decision needs to be made on whether the app will interface with external databases, apps or the electronic health record. This increases the complexity of the app and introduces issues with data storage and security. The addition of data analytics allows developers to evaluate how the app is being used by the target population.
Getting started
App development should be an iterative process that allows incremental improvements over time. Regular reviews of progress should be undertaken to ensure app development is proceeding in the right direction. The use of early end-user feedback on each prototype is critical to ensure that the app is delivering on its intended objectives and to reduce the risk of the project veering off track.

Beta testing
The app should be tested with the target user group to ensure that it is fit for purpose and does not contain coding errors. It is important to conduct a separate set of testing for each platform to exclude any platform-specific errors.

Any app module that replicates an existing guideline or process should be rigorously tested by users not involved in the app development to ensure the decision-support tools give appropriate recommendations.

Governance
A governance framework should be developed to decide on the “source of truth” for guidelines, to outline the process for ensuring that the app is up to date, and to ensure that future updates are not reliant on a single individual.

Publication
Following the above steps, the app should be published and distributed on all intended platforms. This should be advertised to intended user groups in order to promote uptake. Engaging “thought leaders” early may improve the app’s observability by other clinicians.

Closing the loop
Feedback should be sought on the performance of the app and developers should reflect on whether the app has fulfilled its intended purpose. Improvements or modifications should be considered soon after release if issues arise. This continuous improvement process ensures that the app remains a valuable and useful resource for end-users and facilitates future updates.

NARRATIVE REVIEWS
Perioperative management of antiplatelet medications and anticoagulants
The management of antiplatelet medications and anticoagulants in the perioperative period represents a complex clinical scenario that can result in devastating complications for patients if managed inappropriately. Despite the development of international guidelines to address this issue, the management of these agents remained an especially challenging area for staff to navigate at Western Health in Melbourne, Victoria. Junior doctors frequently contacted their surgical seniors to ask for advice about the perioperative cessation of these agents, and often needed to contact cardiology or haematology for medication advice. This created an additional workload for staff and resulted in inconsistent advice. Heterogeneity in advice given by individual clinicians for the same procedure often resulted in junior medical staff withholding medications unnecessarily for fear of causing day of surgery cancellation. This was clearly not in the best interests of the patients or the hospital network.

To address this, a local guideline was developed at Western Health. Each surgical unit was asked to provide a consensus statement about medication management for each type of surgical procedure. This process led to the development of a comprehensive, yet complex guideline. To further simplify these guidelines, each surgical procedure was categorised into a number of distinct groups that informed medication management resulting in a less complex algorithm.

To further assist staff at the network, clinicians in the Department of Anaesthesia, Pain and Perioperative Medicine developed a perioperative guidelines app that included a module for the management of antiplatelet medications and oral anticoagulants. Development of the app was done in-house using Flutter. This allowed one set of code to be deployed on both iOS and Android devices simultaneously and enabled more rapid updating. A governance process was developed to ensure the app was up to date with existing hospital guidelines.

Any app module that replicates an existing guideline or process should be rigorously tested by users not involved in the app development to ensure the decision-support tools give appropriate recommendations.

A governance framework should be developed to decide on the “source of truth” for guidelines, to outline the process for ensuring that the app is up to date, and to ensure that future updates are not reliant on a single individual.

Publication
Following the above steps, the app should be published and distributed on all intended platforms. This should be advertised to intended user groups in order to promote uptake. Engaging “thought leaders” early may improve the app’s observability by other clinicians.

Closing the loop
Feedback should be sought on the performance of the app and developers should reflect on whether the app has fulfilled its intended purpose. Improvements or modifications should be considered soon after release if issues arise. This continuous improvement process ensures that the app remains a valuable and useful resource for end-users and facilitates future updates.

ROTEM® interpretation
A module was developed within the Western Health perioperative guidelines app to assist with interpretation of point-of-care viscoelastic haemostatic assay (POC VHA) results to guide blood product transfusion. This decision support tool aimed to assist with two major changes to management of major obstetric haemorrhage at the institution: the introduction of Rotational Thromboelastometry (ROTEM®) and of fibrinogen concentrate.

Western Health adopted a ROTEM® algorithm from another hospital (see Figure 2). This algorithm provided guidance on blood product interventions based on ROTEM® results. However, it suffered from duplicate pathways that could lead users to assume an incorrect cause for the bleeding diathesis and provide an incorrect intervention. Compounding this, navigation of this decision tree usually occurred during a time-critical emergency of a major obstetric haemorrhage, when clinical staff are cognitively overloaded. Additionally, in a large department, staff may not perform and interpret a ROTEM® for several months. The potential for skill fade and staff unfamiliarity has been recognised as a barrier to safe adoption and usage of POC VHA testing.

Figure 1. Screenshots showing example advice in the Perioperative Management of Antiplatelet Medication and Oral Anticoagulants mobile app module

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Procedure Type</th>
<th>Select Procedure</th>
<th>Procedure Selection</th>
<th>Select Medications</th>
<th>Select Medications</th>
<th>Select Medications</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cardiology</td>
<td>Aspirin</td>
<td>Aspirin</td>
<td>Non-Aspirin</td>
<td>Non-Aspirin</td>
<td>Non-Aspirin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Surgery</td>
<td>Aspirin</td>
<td>Aspirin</td>
<td>Non-Aspirin</td>
<td>Non-Aspirin</td>
<td>Non-Aspirin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obstetrics &amp; Gynaecology</td>
<td>Fibrinogen concentrate</td>
<td>Fibrinogen concentrate</td>
<td>Fibrinogen concentrate</td>
<td>Fibrinogen concentrate</td>
<td>Fibrinogen concentrate</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The final app module contained a medication selection screen, together with seven decision nodes dynamically presented to users based on previous input information in order to help the app make a recommendation on medication management. This resulted in a smooth user experience which enabled medication advice to be obtained rapidly (see Figure 1). The app underwent extensive testing by a number of junior and senior medical staff prior to its release.

Due to the inclusion of hospital-specific information, the app is currently an enterprise-level app only available for download by staff through the intranet, and not available for wider purchase on the App Store (iOS) or Google Play Store (Android).
After an informal needs assessment by senior clinicians involved in patient blood management, ROTEM® training and quality control, it was decided that a novel solution would be to create a clinical decision support tool via a mobile app. A process of algorithm simplification was undertaken where the decision nodes were ordered in such a way to allow sequential logic to determine which products to use, eliminating duplicate pathways. This resulted in a simple flow diagram that could be used for programming.

The ROTEM® module was developed into the perioperative app by using the same programming software described in the previous section. Once the “backend” logic of the algorithm had been programmed, different user interfaces were trialled prior to choosing the most practical one. The input and output screens from the current iteration are shown in Figure 3. The input screen requires the user to select the patient demographic data plus three ROTEM® parameters used to populate the output screen providing the user with the recommended interventions.

Testing was performed using 22 abnormal ROTEM® results from real cases from an online bank. The interpretation and treatment suggested by the support tool were reviewed by two senior clinicians with experience in ROTEM® to confirm the validity of the backend logic and provide feedback on the user journey. Ongoing improvements for future iterations continue to be guided by clinician feedback.

Consultations on haematoLogical Optimisation and Thrombosis in Surgery (CLOTS) app

A module on Surgical Thrombo-Embolism Prevention (STEP) was developed by a group of perioperative medicine clinicians as part of a cross-platform decision support app CLOTS – Consultations on haematoLogical Optimisation and Thrombosis in Surgery (see Figure 4). The CLOTS app aimed to reduce postoperative haematomatological complications such as venous thromboembolism (VTE) and bleeding, as well as to improve the preoperative optimisation of patients presenting for surgery at the Peter MacCallum Cancer Centre, a dedicated cancer hospital in Melbourne, Victoria.

The impetus for the STEP module was an audit conducted on VTE prophylaxis, which revealed significant heterogeneity in VTE risk assessment and underutilisation of both mechanical and pharmacological thromboprophylaxis.

As part of a four-stage quality improvement initiative to reduce the rate of postoperative VTE, a novel risk-stratified algorithm, the STEP protocol, was developed. However, multiple barriers to successful implementation were encountered, including the need for frequent staff re-education to account for high staff turnover, human error in protocol interpretation and adherence to risk-level specific recommendations. As a result, the STEP decision support tool, was developed to address barriers to improvements achieved with the initial implementation stage of the program.

The app was built by a software development company with close supervision from the project’s clinical leads. Development of the app relied on co-design documents and flowcharts that mapped the underlying algorithms and outlined predictive models, calculation functions and decision-rules needed to build the backend logic of the app. Extensive iterative testing of the app was performed and compared against the master to ensure that the provided recommendations were accurate. Adjustments and refinements were made to ensure reliability and usability, and to improve the user experience. Funding for app development was obtained from a generous donation from the hospital’s auxiliary service staff and the app was made freely available to in-house staff as well as to a broader audience through online app stores.

The CLOTS app was embedded into the workflow of perioperative staff. Day of surgery nursing staff were provided with a tablet running CLOTS that allowed them to perform a VTE risk assessment on all patients presenting for surgery. The STEP module generated risk-level appropriate thromboprophylaxis recommendations. The risk profile and recommendations were then printed and provided for review by medical staff at the World Health Organization surgical time-out. The STEP module, together with the nurse-initiated risk assessment program, were key interventions that drove sustained quality improvement.
user and the app developer. These data points may need to be recorded in a patient’s electronic medical record in the future. Additionally, most medical apps contain a disclaimer that the information and/or recommendations that the app provides may not be accurate, up to date or complete. If medical apps are to be used to guide practice, there needs to be better legal frameworks to determine attribution of risk in case of faulty medical advice. Formal validation of both the soundness of the backend logic, and of the positive effect the app has on clinical outcomes is likely to be important too.

SUMMARY

Mobile apps designed for use in perioperative medicine are increasingly being developed. Like all new technologies, there is the potential for both significant benefit to clinicians, hospitals and patients, and also the potential for harm and medicolegal risk. It is important to strike a balance between encouraging innovation in this space, while maintaining standards and ensuring that mobile applications are efficacious, validated, and adhere to governance standards. Until EMR becomes more integrated, programmable and user-friendly, there is a place for standalone mobile apps, created to improve outcomes and assist clinicians to deliver world-class healthcare.

REFERENCES

How can anaesthetists talk to patients with obesity?

Natalie Smith, MBBS, BSc (Med), FRCA, FANZCA
Masters in Medical Education, Senior Staff Specialist, Department of Anaesthesia, Wollongong Hospital, NSW, Honorary Clinical Associate Professor, University of Wollongong, New South Wales
Honorary Clinical Associate Professor Natalie Smith trained in anaesthesia in the UK but returned to her native Australia more than 15 years ago. Along with a diverse clinical practice, she has pursued interests in education, training, and both clinical and educational research. Improving anaesthesia for the elderly and the obese patient groups is her main ongoing clinical and academic focus.

Anthony Hodsdon, MBBS
Registrar, Department of Anaesthesia, Wollongong Hospital, New South Wales
Dr Anthony Hodsdon is an anaesthetics registrar at Wollongong Hospital. He has broad interests in anaesthetic research including communication, airway management and obstetric anaesthesia.

David A Story, MBBS (Hons), MD, BMedSci(Hons), FANZCA
Professor and Chair of Anaesthesia, Department of Critical Care, The University of Melbourne, Victoria
Professor David A Story’s main research interest is clinically- and cost-effective approaches to reduce perioperative risk, complications, disability, and mortality. He also does translational work in acid-base disorders; and is a consumer investigator in diabetes care. He is also a staff anaesthetist at the Austin Hospital where he provides perioperative care for most procedural specialties including liver transplantation.

INTRODUCTION

How often during pre-anaesthesia consultations do we want to discuss a patient’s obesity but wonder about the most constructive approach? What is the best way to discuss unhealthy weight respectfully and effectively without offending the patient? In a survey of fellows of the Australian and New Zealand College of Anaesthetists, many specialists reported difficulty and apprehension about communicating with patients about obesity.

The majority of respondents said that obesity was the most common clinical condition they encountered and that they had anaesthetised at least one patient with obesity on their most recent clinical day. All respondents noted that obesity increases both perioperative and lifetime risks for patients. However, anaesthetists demonstrated that they were unsure about how best to approach the problem. They were concerned about not wanting to upset or offend patients, about the current cultural situation of increasing prevalence and normalisation of obesity, and about low patient health literacy regarding obesity and its effects on anaesthesia care.

Obesity is an increasingly common problem in many countries with many potential health implications in the perioperative period. Rates of obesity in surgical patients have been reported to vary between 35 and 70 per cent depending on the type of surgery and can be twice the background rate of the general population.

We planned a systematic literature review to assess existing guidelines and evidence of effectiveness for how anaesthetists should communicate in the preoperative period with patients who have obesity about perioperative risks and weight management. Database searches used keywords related to perioperative weight loss conversations. We found no papers that directly addressed our aim and therefore analysed the literature that we identified as most relevant in the form of a narrative review.

As anaesthetists, we face many challenges to good communication with patients. Our time together is usually brief and often under time-pressure. Patients may be distracted by pain or anxiety, and may be acutely unwell or affected by medications such as strong opioids. The perioperative period is in itself a time of vulnerability for patients. They deal with health problems of varying degrees of severity and urgency, with uncertain outcomes, admission to hospital, multiple health care providers and the loss of control that occurs with anaesthesia and surgery. The necessity for a surgical procedure may be related to lifestyle factors such as smoking and obesity. All of these factors support the need for high quality professional communication skills. The multiple benefits of good communication skills in anaesthetists have long been acknowledged but rarely studied in depth, particularly in the context of sensitive conversations. Anaesthetists could ideally cover two related but separate issues with patients who have obesity: the risks associated with obesity in the perioperative period, and encouraging weight loss for enhanced general health.

Preoperative weight loss can be considered similar to other public health issues that anaesthetists have to address such as smoking cessation. Although most surgeons and anaesthetists agree on the benefits of perioperative smoking cessation, and think it is their responsibility to advise patients to stop smoking,
The shared concept of these tools is to help patients move through the change cycle towards self-motivated rational decision making for success of brief interventions in smoking cessation is encouraging and could be extrapolated to weight loss conversations. The most common perceived barriers to conducting conversations with patients who have obesity were lack of time, lack of training, and inadequate communication skills. Even with assistance from professional librarians and a second attempt with expanded search terms, we were unable to find any relevant publications. There appears to be no body of anaesthesia literature on how best to approach one of the most problematic issues in our practice.

We therefore decided to explore the papers that were most closely related to this topic and that we felt could inform our study question. We identified 95 articles that were able to provide input of some value. These came from diverse healthcare backgrounds including primary care (the majority), surgery, internal medicine, paediatrics, dietetics, and psychology.

**RESULTS**

We identified four main themes, with more than one present in most papers (see Table 1). The most frequent theme (63 per cent of the papers) described the barriers to conversations between patients with obesity and healthcare providers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Barriers to conversations</th>
<th>Communication tools</th>
<th>Language and communication</th>
<th>Specific recommendations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lack of training</td>
<td>Motivational interviewing</td>
<td>Specific terminology</td>
<td>Training for physicians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insufficient time</td>
<td>5As (ask, advise, assess, assist, arrange)</td>
<td>Empathetic</td>
<td>Clear referral pathways</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pessimism</td>
<td>Written materials</td>
<td>Patient-centred (specific)</td>
<td>Specific consultation suggestions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poor resources</td>
<td>4Es (engage, empathise, educate, enlist)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**DISCUSSION**

**Barriers to conversations**

The most common perceived barriers to conducting conversations with patients about obesity were lack of time, training, and the perceived futility of such conversations. Despite time constraints, the evidence for success of brief interventions in smoking cessation is encouraging and could be extrapolated to weight loss. Advice of any nature from a physician has been shown to be beneficial in smoking cessation. Simply acknowledging a patient’s overweight status is associated with increased desire and attempts to lose weight. While none of the reviewed articles included preoperative anaesthesia consultations, many of the described barriers appear to be relevant to our practice.

**Communication tools**

Providing relevant written materials to patients before they see the anaesthetist can help introduce the topic effectively. Once the conversation with the patient has been started, using a structured framework such as the 5As tool (ask, assess, advise, assist, arrange) can be used to continue the conversation in a non-judgmental manner. Table 2 provides an example of how this could be done in our everyday practice. Other communication strategies such as motivational interviewing can be used to further explore a patient’s views on weight management. The simplicity of the 5As approach makes it more suitable for anaesthesia consultations. The shared concept of these tools is to help patients move through the change cycle towards self-motivated behaviour change.

**METHODS**

We conducted a systematic literature review for the years between 2006 and 2016 asking: How can anaesthetists best conduct preoperative conversations regarding perioperative risk and weight loss with patients who have obesity? Even with assistance from professional librarians and a second attempt with expanded search terms, we were unable to find any relevant publications. There appears to be no body of anaesthesia literature on how best to approach one of the most problematic issues in our practice.

We therefore decided to explore the papers that were most closely related to this topic and that we felt could inform our study question. We identified 95 articles that were able to provide input of some value. These came from diverse healthcare backgrounds including primary care (the majority), surgery, internal medicine, paediatrics, dietetics, and psychology.

**RESULTS**

We identified four main themes, with more than one present in most papers (see Table 1). The most frequent theme (63 per cent of the papers) described the barriers to conversations between patients with obesity and healthcare providers.

Table 1. Weight loss conversation themes and sub-themes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Barriers to conversations</th>
<th>Communication tools</th>
<th>Language and communication</th>
<th>Specific recommendations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lack of training</td>
<td>Motivational interviewing</td>
<td>Specific terminology</td>
<td>Training for physicians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insufficient time</td>
<td>5As (ask, advise, assess, assist, arrange)</td>
<td>Empathetic</td>
<td>Clear referral pathways</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pessimism</td>
<td>Written materials</td>
<td>Patient-centred (specific)</td>
<td>Specific consultation suggestions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poor resources</td>
<td>4Es (engage, empathise, educate, enlist)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**DISCUSSION**

**Barriers to conversations**

The most common perceived barriers to conducting conversations with patients about obesity were lack of time, training, and the perceived futility of such conversations. Despite time constraints, the evidence for success of brief interventions in smoking cessation is encouraging and could be extrapolated to weight loss. Advice of any nature from a physician has been shown to be beneficial in smoking cessation. Simply acknowledging a patient’s overweight status is associated with increased desire and attempts to lose weight. While none of the reviewed articles included preoperative anaesthesia consultations, many of the described barriers appear to be relevant to our practice.

**Communication tools**

Providing relevant written materials to patients before they see the anaesthetist can help introduce the topic effectively. Once the conversation with the patient has been started, using a structured framework such as the 5As tool (ask, assess, advise, assist, arrange) can be used to continue the conversation in a non-judgmental manner. Table 2 provides an example of how this could be done in our everyday practice. Other communication strategies such as motivational interviewing can be used to further explore a patient’s views on weight management. The simplicity of the 5As approach makes it more suitable for anaesthesia consultations. The shared concept of these tools is to help patients move through the change cycle towards self-motivated behaviour change.

**METHODS**

We conducted a systematic literature review for the years between 2006 and 2016 asking: How can anaesthetists best conduct preoperative conversations regarding perioperative risk and weight loss with patients who have obesity? Even with assistance from professional librarians and a second attempt with expanded search terms, we were unable to find any relevant publications. There appears to be no body of anaesthesia literature on how best to approach one of the most problematic issues in our practice.

We therefore decided to explore the papers that were most closely related to this topic and that we felt could inform our study question. We identified 95 articles that were able to provide input of some value. These came from diverse healthcare backgrounds including primary care (the majority), surgery, internal medicine, paediatrics, dietetics, and psychology.

**RESULTS**

We identified four main themes, with more than one present in most papers (see Table 1). The most frequent theme (63 per cent of the papers) described the barriers to conversations between patients with obesity and healthcare providers.

Table 1. Weight loss conversation themes and sub-themes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Barriers to conversations</th>
<th>Communication tools</th>
<th>Language and communication</th>
<th>Specific recommendations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lack of training</td>
<td>Motivational interviewing</td>
<td>Specific terminology</td>
<td>Training for physicians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insufficient time</td>
<td>5As (ask, advise, assess, assist, arrange)</td>
<td>Empathetic</td>
<td>Clear referral pathways</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pessimism</td>
<td>Written materials</td>
<td>Patient-centred (specific)</td>
<td>Specific consultation suggestions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poor resources</td>
<td>4Es (engage, empathise, educate, enlist)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**DISCUSSION**

**Barriers to conversations**

The most common perceived barriers to conducting conversations with patients about obesity were lack of time, training, and the perceived futility of such conversations. Despite time constraints, the evidence for success of brief interventions in smoking cessation is encouraging and could be extrapolated to weight loss. Advice of any nature from a physician has been shown to be beneficial in smoking cessation. Simply acknowledging a patient’s overweight status is associated with increased desire and attempts to lose weight. While none of the reviewed articles included preoperative anaesthesia consultations, many of the described barriers appear to be relevant to our practice.

**Communication tools**

Providing relevant written materials to patients before they see the anaesthetist can help introduce the topic effectively. Once the conversation with the patient has been started, using a structured framework such as the 5As tool (ask, assess, advise, assist, arrange) can be used to continue the conversation in a non-judgmental manner. Table 2 provides an example of how this could be done in our everyday practice. Other communication strategies such as motivational interviewing can be used to further explore a patient’s views on weight management. The simplicity of the 5As approach makes it more suitable for anaesthesia consultations. The shared concept of these tools is to help patients move through the change cycle towards self-motivated behaviour change.

**METHODS**

We conducted a systematic literature review for the years between 2006 and 2016 asking: How can anaesthetists best conduct preoperative conversations regarding perioperative risk and weight loss with patients who have obesity? Even with assistance from professional librarians and a second attempt with expanded search terms, we were unable to find any relevant publications. There appears to be no body of anaesthesia literature on how best to approach one of the most problematic issues in our practice.

We therefore decided to explore the papers that were most closely related to this topic and that we felt could inform our study question. We identified 95 articles that were able to provide input of some value. These came from diverse healthcare backgrounds including primary care (the majority), surgery, internal medicine, paediatrics, dietetics, and psychology.

**RESULTS**

We identified four main themes, with more than one present in most papers (see Table 1). The most frequent theme (63 per cent of the papers) described the barriers to conversations between patients with obesity and healthcare providers.

Table 1. Weight loss conversation themes and sub-themes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Barriers to conversations</th>
<th>Communication tools</th>
<th>Language and communication</th>
<th>Specific recommendations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lack of training</td>
<td>Motivational interviewing</td>
<td>Specific terminology</td>
<td>Training for physicians</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insufficient time</td>
<td>5As (ask, advise, assess, assist, arrange)</td>
<td>Empathetic</td>
<td>Clear referral pathways</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pessimism</td>
<td>Written materials</td>
<td>Patient-centred (specific)</td>
<td>Specific consultation suggestions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poor resources</td>
<td>4Es (engage, empathise, educate, enlist)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**DISCUSSION**

**Barriers to conversations**

The most common perceived barriers to conducting conversations with patients about obesity were lack of time, training, and the perceived futility of such conversations. Despite time constraints, the evidence for success of brief interventions in smoking cessation is encouraging and could be extrapolated to weight loss. Advice of any nature from a physician has been shown to be beneficial in smoking cessation. Simply acknowledging a patient’s overweight status is associated with increased desire and attempts to lose weight. While none of the reviewed articles included preoperative anaesthesia consultations, many of the described barriers appear to be relevant to our practice.

**Communication tools**

Providing relevant written materials to patients before they see the anaesthetist can help introduce the topic effectively. Once the conversation with the patient has been started, using a structured framework such as the 5As tool (ask, assess, advise, assist, arrange) can be used to continue the conversation in a non-judgmental manner. Table 2 provides an example of how this could be done in our everyday practice. Other communication strategies such as motivational interviewing can be used to further explore a patient’s views on weight management. The simplicity of the 5As approach makes it more suitable for anaesthesia consultations. The shared concept of these tools is to help patients move through the change cycle towards self-motivated behaviour change.

**METHODS**

We conducted a systematic literature review for the years between 2006 and 2016 asking: How can anaesthetists best conduct preoperative conversations regarding perioperative risk and weight loss with patients who have obesity? Even with assistance from professional librarians and a second attempt with expanded search terms, we were unable to find any relevant publications. There appears to be no body of anaesthesia literature on how best to approach one of the most problematic issues in our practice.

We therefore decided to explore the papers that were most closely related to this topic and that we felt could inform our study question. We identified 95 articles that were able to provide input of some value. These came from diverse healthcare backgrounds including primary care (the majority), surgery, internal medicine, paediatrics, dietetics, and psychology.
• Discuss the increased risks of obesity with reference to the patient and their planned surgery.
• Communication should be patient-centred and specifically tailored to the individual.
• Have pre-arranged consultation and referral pathways for ongoing care.
• Provide written materials and/or web-links for online support and reliable information for patients to take away.

Table 2. The 5As approach to weight management*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ask</th>
<th>Measure body mass index.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>About comorbidities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>About other factors related to health risk, for example, smoking, alcohol, exercise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>How do you feel about your weight at the moment?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Do you feel ready to think about losing some weight/improving your fitness/health?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assess</td>
<td>“The best thing you can do for your health is to lose weight.”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Promote the benefits of a healthy lifestyle.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Explain the benefits of weight loss for the specific surgery.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>The particular approach to follow will depend on results of the “assess” phase, that is, how ready the patient is to act on their obesity: patients may be ready, unsure, or not ready to change.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Help patient to identify and plan to address the barriers to weight loss that are relevant to them.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Help patient to start to develop a weight management plan.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arrange</td>
<td>Referral and follow-up as required (for example, to a primary care physician, dietitian, exercise physiologist or psychologist) to oversee long-term weight management.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Modified from Australian government clinical practice guidelines for managing obesity and Royal Australian College of General Practitioners smoking cessation guidelines.

This article is based on our publication on this topic in *Perioperative Medicine*.

REFERENCES

18. Gordon A, Black K. Doctors need to be taught how to discuss their patients’ excess weight. The Conversation. 2016.
Preparing the elderly patient for elective non-cardiac surgery

Naomi Osborne, MD BBSc
Resident Medical Officer, Fiona Stanley Fremantle Hospitals Service, Western Australia
Dr Naomi Osborne is a Resident Medical Officer at Fiona Stanley Hospital. She has a keen interest in perioperative medicine, and, drawing on her background in behavioural science, a passion for understanding the role of human factors in medicine.

Leena Nagappan, MBBS FANZCA MMed
Consultant Anaesthetist, Fiona Stanley Fremantle Hospitals Service, Western Australia
Dr Leena Nagappan is the chairperson for the Western Australian Perioperative Medicine Network (WAPOM) and Anaesthesia Clinical Lead for the Perioperative Medicine services at Fiona Stanley Hospital. She plays an active role in promoting the POM subspecialty in WA and has a keen interest in preoperative risk stratification and risk modification, especially in the elderly patient.

Kevin Kwan, MBBS MMed FRACP
Specialist Physician and Geriatrician, Joondalup Health Campus, Western Australia
Dr Kevin Kwan is a senior clinical lecturer with the University of Western Australia and Director of Clinical Training at Joondalup Health Campus. He has a keen interest in all aspects of aged care with a subspeciality passion for cognitive frailty and perioperative medicine. To further his expertise, he completed the Master of Medicine (Monash) specialising in perioperative medicine.

INTRODUCTION
In Australia, in line with the rest of the developed world, the elderly population is increasing at a faster rate than any other age cohort. As a result of this growth, the proportion of people aged 65 and older is expected to increase from 17 per cent of the Australian population in 2017 to 22 per cent by 2050. The impact of these changing demographics on the healthcare sector in general is considerable, and the health system will need to adapt to these challenges. Older people are undergoing surgery at double the rate of the younger population and face an increased risk of adverse perioperative outcomes, including specific organ dysfunction, delirium and new dependence in activities of daily living. Therefore, there is increasing awareness regarding the importance of accurate preoperative assessment and optimisation in this patient group.

RISK STRATIFICATION
Risk assessment in the geriatric patient provides answers to questions arising throughout their perioperative journey as follows:
• Is the patient compatible with the planned surgery?
• Is the planned surgery suitable for the patient?
• Do the benefits of the selected intervention outweigh non-intervention?

Robust practices in risk assessment of the geriatric patient pave the way for correct identification and optimisation of patients before surgery. There seems to be a heterogeneity in available guidelines on perioperative management of geriatric patients, regarding both assessment domains and tools. Correspondingly, there is less emphasis on the geriatric syndromes and geriatric-related outcomes in most of the perioperative assessment tools that are currently being used.

Appropriately designed tools are available for this purpose. However, some are better suited for the ageing population, whereas others must be considered carefully when used to guide perioperative decision-making. As an example, the American College of Surgeons-National Surgical Improvement Program (ACS-NSQIP) Surgical Risk Calculator (SRC) is a popular prediction tool for undesirable outcomes that facilitates preoperative discussion of risks and may be used as a visual aid to assess outcomes. Derived from a large perioperative database and encompassing a vast variety of surgical procedures, it was developed in 2013 and continues to be a widely adapted tool in preoperative evaluation, decision-making and informed-consent processes. However, it was not designed specifically for the geriatric population, leading to variable performance in the predictive capabilities of the outcomes when utilised in elderly patients. The predictive utility of the ACS-NSQIP surgical risk calculator in elderly patients undergoing lumbar surgery proved to be useful for outcomes such as death, renal failure and readmission rates but failed to accurately predict other
serious complications. Similarly, when applied to elderly patients undergoing hepatectomy for hepatocellular carcinoma, the tool underestimated the risk of some complications (such as renal failure), and was no better than chance at predicting the risk of readmission and 30-day mortality. Specifically for cardiovascular outcomes, the predictions of ACS-NSQIP calculator were shown to be improved in elderly patients when combined with biomarkers, such as high-sensitivity C-reactive protein.

An upgrade of the ACS-NSQIP calculator for geriatric patients is the addition of geriatric-specific outcomes i.e. pressure ulcer, delirium, new mobility aid and functional decline which helps prediction capabilities. It is done by incorporating six domains of preoperative information; current living situation, fall history, use of mobility aids, cognitive impairment, surrogate-signed consent, and palliative care or admission. This information is usually readily available during preoperative evaluation. This latest enhancement is likely to see the ACS-NSQIP SRC gain further traction in systems focusing on geriatric preoperative assessment. It is especially important as geriatric-specific variables have been shown to be related to readmission rates when looked at in the surgical setting.

**THE RECOGNITION OF FRAILTY IN THE PERIOPERATIVE ASSESSMENT**

In recent times, it has been recognised that because of the heterogenous nature of the ageing process, chronological age has limited predictive value in assessing how an individual will cope with the stress of surgery. In particular, the concept of frailty has come into focus, both as an independent predictor of perioperative outcomes and as a target for interventions that modify risks to improve long term outcomes.

**WHAT IS FRAILTY, AND WHY SHOULD WE MEASURE IT?**

Frailty has been described as a multi-dimensional state of decreased reserve and decreased resistance to stressors that often increases with age. It is characterised by an accelerated decline across multiple physiological systems. Others have used the term “reduced functional homeostasis”, to illustrate that the frail individual has a greater proportion of their physiological reserves engaged in maintaining homeostasis, and therefore is less able to do so in the face of stressors. As a result of this reduced reserve, the frail patient is more likely to decompensate in the perioperative period, a time of increased inflammation and stress. This is reflected in an increased risk of poor outcomes, such as deconditioning, loss of functional independence, need for residential aged care and mortality. Hence, frailty is an independent predictor of perioperative outcomes, and as a target for interventions that modify risks to improve long term outcomes.

Frailty is of increasing relevance to the perioperative physician, being increasingly seen in the population presenting to the pre-admission clinic. It is estimated to affect approximately 10 per cent of people aged 65 years and older, rising to 25-50 per cent in those aged over 85 years. Given that elderly surgical patients have a higher prevalence of frailty compared to their community dwelling peers, these numbers are likely to be underestimated when considering elderly surgical patients. A systematic review of the prevalence of frailty in the general surgical population estimated frailty was present in 10.4-37.0 per cent of patients with a mean age of 61-77 years. Thirty-day mortality rate was 8 per cent (95% CI 4-12), with significantly increased complication rates of 24 per cent compared to 5 per cent in the non-frail population. Mean length of stay in the frail cohort was also increased from 9.6 days versus 6.4 days compared to the non-frail. Furthermore, frailty has been found to be independently associated with adverse outcomes in the perioperative period, and is better able to predict these adverse events compared with traditional scoring systems such as the American Society of Anaesthesiologists (ASA) and Physical Status System and Physiological and Operative Severity Score for the Enumeration of Mortality and Morbidity (POSSUM).

In a recent systematic review of 56 studies which included more than one million patients, frailty was a strong predictor of poor outcomes, including mortality at 30 days and one year, delirium and institutionalisation. Studies were of fair to good quality and included oncological, elective general surgery, orthopaedic surgery, emergency and vascular surgery. The presence of frailty was associated with increased 30-day mortality (RR 3.71, 95% CI 2.89-4.77), one-year mortality (RR 2.39, 95% CI 2.02-2.83), postoperative delirium (RR 2.13, 95% CI 1.23-3.67) and discharge to residential aged care (RR 2.30, 95% CI 1.81-2.92).

Important is there is growing attention regarding the potential for preoperative interventions aimed at modifying the risks associated with frailty. Indeed, Hall et al found that preoperative screening for frailty using the Risk Analysis Index (RAI) was associated with improved survival at 30, 180 and 365 days postoperatively. A joint statement from the American College of Surgeons and the American Geriatrics Society (with representatives from multiple specialties including anaesthesia) recommends that all geriatric patients planned for surgery should be evaluated for frailty and have this documented in their record. This was reiterated by the Society of Perioperative Assessment and Quality Improvement (SPAQI). The presence of frailty may also inform decision making perioperatively, by more accurately predicting expected outcomes and assisting the perioperative physician and patient to ensure decisions are congruent with their values. The predictive accuracy of frailty tools in relation to patient-centred outcomes, quality of life and disability are an area of ongoing research.

**HOW TO MEASURE AND SCREEN FOR FRAILTY**

Despite the increasing awareness of the importance of frailty in the perioperative period, there is currently no single standardised method for its measurement, with much heterogeneity of frailty tool selection and implementation described in the literature. The choice of frailty screening tool in clinical practice for any perioperative service needs to take into account accuracy and feasibility of implementation. However, there is limited evidence comparing outcomes from different frailty instruments in the perioperative setting. The most commonly cited frailty screening tools in the literature are the Rockwood Clinical Frailty Scale (CFS), the Edmonton Frailty Score, Modified Frailty Index and The Fried Frailty Phenotype.

**CLINICAL FRAILTY SCALE (CFS)**

The CFS is a seven-point frailty screening tool based upon a person’s functional phenotype, derived from the Canadian Study of Health and Aging data as depicted in Figure 1. Its performance in identifying frailty has been found to correlate well with other frailty tools, with each increased increment in the scale being associated with a significant increase in medium term mortality and entry into institutional care. Advantages are its ease of use by non-geriatricians without additional adjunct tools or training, and increasing adoption within Australia in the perioperative setting. In a recent, single centre Western Australian cohort study of hip fracture patients, the CFS demonstrated greater discriminative ability than the ASA in predicting mortality. Each increment in CFS was significantly associated with increasing age, admission from residential care, one-year mortality and inversely related to discharge to private residence (see Table 1). Indeed, the CFS has been included in the dataset for the Australian and New Zealand Hip Fracture Registry for 2021.

The CFS alone does not directly assess comorbidity burden nor cognition, and additional testing is required to assess for cognitive frailty. Despite this, a systematic review of available frailty tools in the perioperative setting reported the CFS was most strongly associated with mortality and non-favourable discharge (OR 4.89, 95% CI 1.83-13.05 and OR 6.31; 95% CI 4.00-9.94).

Figure 1. Rockwood Clinical Frailty Scale Reproduced with permission.
Table 1. Clinical Frailty Scale and patient characteristics and outcomes after proximal femur fracture

| Variable                          | CFS 1-3  
|                                  | (n=30)   |
|                                  | CFS 4   
|                                  | (n=91)   |
|                                  | CFS 5   
|                                  | (n=117)  |
|                                  | CFS 6   
|                                  | (n=70)   |
|                                  | CFS 7-9 
|                                  | (n=151)  |
| Mean ASA, grade (SD)             | 2.6 (0.8) |
| Mean age, years (SD)             | 73.8 (8.8) |
| Admitted from residential care, n (%) | 6 (7.0)  |
| Mean acute LOS, days (SD)        | 3.6 (1.5) |
| Discharged to private residence, n (%) | 27 (33.8) |
| Discharged to rehabilitation, n (%) | 47 (58.8) |
| 30-day mortality, n (%)          | 1 (1.3)  |
| One-year mortality, n (%)        | 3 (3.8)  |
| 30-day mortality, n (%)          | 1 (1.3)  |
| One-year mortality, n (%)        | 3 (3.8)  |
| p-value                          | <0.001†  |
| *Chi-squared test

Table 2. Edmonton Frailty Scale

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frailty domain</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>0 point</th>
<th>1 point</th>
<th>2 points</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cognition</td>
<td>Please imagine that this pre-drawn circle is a clock, I would like you to place the numbers in the correct positions then place the hands to indicate a time of &quot;ten after eleven&quot;</td>
<td>No errors</td>
<td>Minor spacing errors</td>
<td>Other errors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>General health status</td>
<td>In the past year, how many times have you been admitted to a hospital?</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1-2</td>
<td>&gt;2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Functional independence</td>
<td>In general, how would you describe your health?</td>
<td>&quot;Excellent&quot;, &quot;Very good&quot;, &quot;Fair&quot;, &quot;Poor&quot;, &quot;Good&quot;</td>
<td>0-1</td>
<td>2-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Social support</td>
<td>When you need help, can you count on someone who is willing and able to meet your needs?</td>
<td>Always</td>
<td>Sometimes</td>
<td>Never</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 3. Fried Frailty Phenotype Index

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Criteria</th>
<th>Measurement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Weight loss</td>
<td>&gt;4.5kg (10lb) in previous year or 5% body weight OR BMI &lt;18.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Fatigue</td>
<td>Not full of energy; Resting in bed during the day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Low physical activity</td>
<td>Sedentary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Hand grip strength</td>
<td>Lowest 20% by gender/BMI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Slow walking speed</td>
<td>Slowest 20% or timed up and go (TUG) &lt;19s</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Scoring:
Fit: no criteria met
Pre-frail: 1-2 criteria met
Frail: >2 criteria met
With more than 50 frailty tools cited in the literature, other measures, such as the Frailty Index (FI) and Risk Index (RAI) have been identified for use in different settings and by different specialties, with none yet shown to be superior to the others49-51. Indeed, Alvarez-Nebreda and colleagues52 note that given the current lack of definitive evidence, the choice of how to best screen for frailty is institution specific, depending on the particular resources and limitations of the setting, such as the availability of inter-disciplinary staff and the characteristics of the patient population.

Although outside of the scope of the current review, it is of interest to note briefly the efforts by Bentov and colleagues53 to identify radiological markers of frailty. Not dis-similarly, others have looked at potential biochemical markers of frailty such as IL6, CRP and TNF-β with unconvincing results to date54. Given that other tools to assess frailty require active patient participation, these methods may have a future place in the preoperative assessment of the acutely unwell patient undergoing emergency surgery.

**IDENTIFICATION AND RELEVANCE OF COGNITIVE FRAILTY**

An estimated one in six elective surgical patients have pre-existing cognitive impairment55,56. One randomised trial of vascular surgical patients undergoing preoperative comprehensive geriatric assessment (CGA) identified that 46.5 per cent of patients had undiagnosed cognitive impairment, while the Australian and New Zealand Hip Fracture Registry reported a cognitive impairment in 37 per cent of patients presenting with a neck of femur fracture57. Cognitive frailty is the most significant risk factor for postoperative cognitive dysfunction, delirium and consequent functional decline, increased length of stay and mortality risk42-44. Importantly, acute cognitive decline following surgery can take days to weeks to improve and may not be fully reversible.

Specific interventions regarding cognitive frailty are mostly based upon best practice guidelines57. Co-management with a geriatrician led multidisciplinary team as well as nursing staff skilled in recognition and management of the cognitively frail may be beneficial58,59. Some hospitals will have a dementia or cognitive nurse specialist who can be asked to review, educate and champion the implementation of best practice strategies54. It is preferable to implement strategies prospectively to prevent delirium as it is often more difficult to manage once onset has occurred. The preferred treatment is to avoid or identify and remove potential underlying causes while providing supportive care. However, pragmatically, the onset can be multifactorial in aetiology.

**STRATEGIES FOR REDUCING THE RISK OF DELIRIUM IN THE PERIOPERATIVE PERIOD**

Strategies for managing cognitive frailty are multi-dimensional. The early identification of cognitive frailty allows for implementation of strategies, including avoidance of potential neurological insults, including polypharmacy with high dose opioid analgesia, gabapentanoids and anticholinergics in these patients54-56. Routine young adult opioid dosing may not be appropriate for those who are cognitively frail, where instead an individualised opioid sparing approach, balancing analgesia efficacy, past response and cognitive side effects is necessary. This may include regular paracetamol and short term NSAIDs in the absence of contraindications. Consensus among geriatricians is that tramadol, with its multi-receptor affinity, should be avoided in the cognitively frail and used with caution in frail patients who have tolerated it previously.

Anti-psychotic medication used in the management of behavioural and psychological symptoms of dementia (BPSD) (for example, olanzapine) may have a high anti-cholinergic affinity and while effective at sedation, may prolong delirium and post-operative cognitive dysfunction. These are best avoided and replaced with non-pharmacological strategies. If necessary, age-appropriate doses of haloperidol or risperidone can be prescribed, as outlined in the Therapeutic Guidelines and shown in Table 457. The cost of additional carer non-pharmacological support is far less than the prolonged length of stay and complications from delirium.

**Table 4. Suggested dosing of antipsychotic medications in elderly patients**65

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Antipsychotic medication</th>
<th>Suggested dosing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Haloperidol</td>
<td>0.5mg orally as single dose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Olanzapine</td>
<td>1.25 to 2.5mg orally as single dose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Risperidone</td>
<td>0.5mg orally as single dose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quetiapine*</td>
<td>25mg orally as single dose</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Quetiapine is the preferred choice for patients with Parkinson disease or dementia with Lewy bodies, as the typical antipsychotics can worsen motor symptoms in these patients.

Where practical, a support person such as a family member may be advised to stay and assist in orientating a cognitively frail person in the immediate postoperative phase. The time it takes for a patient with dementia to orientate themselves to their new environment can be variable. At the time of writing, COVID-19 visitor restrictions may be a barrier to this implementation and advocating for an exception to visitor restrictions should be made on a case-by-case basis. Other non-pharmacological interventions include early mobilisation, avoiding unnecessary delays for surgery, prolonged bed rest, fasting or inadequate nutrition.

Once delirium occurs this is best co-managed with a geriatrician, in an environment conducive to cognitive recovery (often not the HDU/ICU or acute surgical ward) with nursing staff skilled in non-pharmacological behavioural management. The Australian Clinical Care Standard for delirium outlines the best practice regarding screening for, assessing, preventing and managing delirium66. A chapter on postoperative delirium was recently published in Australasian Anaesthesia 2019, and provides an overview on the management of patients at risk of delirium in the perioperative period67.

**THE ROLE OF COMPREHENSIVE GERIATRIC ASSESSMENT**

Comprehensive geriatric assessment, which has its roots in the origins of geriatric medicine68, is a multidimensional interdisciplinary diagnostic process focused on determining a frail elderly person’s medical, psychological and functional capability in order to develop a coordinated and integrated plan for treatment and long-term follow up69. It is important to note that comprehensive geriatric assessment is a bespoke assessment tailored specifically for an individual and their goals of care. Many geriatricians will allow for a 60-minute attendance for a complex comprehensive geriatric assessment, although a targeted one can be performed in less time.

While not limited to the preoperative setting, ideally, the timing of a preoperative comprehensive geriatric assessment should allow for expedited investigation and/or intervention without delaying surgery, if possible. The mandate of a perioperative physician should be to proactively identify and anticipate perioperative issues, aid in shared decision making and champion best evidence-based practice to facilitate a smooth perioperative journey. The authors believe that determining whether a patient is “fit for surgery” is not the purpose of a comprehensive geriatric assessment.

**Components of a comprehensive geriatric assessment as adapted from the Medicare Benefits Schedule66:**

1. Evaluation of the medical, physical, psychological, social and functional aspects of a patient’s health, including the use of standardised assessment tools if indicated.
2. Identification and prioritisation of a patient’s problems and care needs.
3. Formulation of a detailed care plan with short- and long-term goals along with recommended intervention strategies likely to improve or maintain health status.
4. Discussion with the patient to educate them on identified issues, anticipated outcomes and interventions.
5. Engagement with involved care providers (GP, perioperative team) and the patient.

**OUTLINE OF A COMPREHENSIVE GERIATRIC ASSESSMENT FROM A GERIATRICIAN PERSPECTIVE**

The structure of the comprehensive geriatric assessment varies with the setting, context, and individual clinician. However, a suggested template of a preoperative comprehensive geriatric assessment is outlined below:

**Introduction: Anticipated surgery; date for surgery and patient expectations**

A common introduction to build rapport is to discuss a patient’s intended surgery, reason for surgery and their expectations. The timeline should be established as this may inform choice and urgency of any intervention.

Where a perioperative physician is familiar with the procedure, the comprehensive geriatric assessment should include education and alignment of patient expectations with the anticipated perioperative course. This includes goals of this may be a barrier to this implementation and advocating for an exception to visitor restrictions should be made on a case-by-case basis. Other non-pharmacological interventions include early mobilisation, avoiding unnecessary delays for surgery, prolonged bed rest, fasting or inadequate nutrition.

**Identification and prioritisation of relevant medical issues**

This is a targeted systems enquiry to identify issues that may require proactive perioperative involvement or intervention. This list is not all-inclusive and should be tailored to the individual.
Cardiovascular: Screen for presence or stability of coronary artery disease, heart failure symptoms, arrhythmia, postural hypotension and recent decompensation.

Respiratory: Screen for shortness of breath, asthma, pulmonary comorbidity. If chronic airways disease is in the history, further questioning on exacerbation history, prior need for non-invasive ventilation or a history of Type I or II respiratory failure should be elicited. Ask about a history of obstructive sleep apnoea (especially in the obese patient) and compliance with CPAP if applicable.

Smoking: All patients should have a smoking history elicited and intervention to stop smoking considered as part of the assessment for current smokers.

Haematological: History of previous thrombosis, thrombophilia or previous post-operative bleeding. The topic of preoperative iron testing and patient blood management is beyond the scope of this chapter.

Endocrine: Diabetes (including HbA1c), presence of macro/microvascular complications and adequacy of glucose control. Patients on insulin will require clear instruction perioperatively and ideally should be first on an operative list to minimise prolonged fasting. Cushingoid patients may be at risk of adrenal insufficiency. A history of weight loss and nutrition may be applicable.

Neurological: Identification of any neurological comorbidity, including recent cerebrovascular events or systemic neurodegenerative diseases (for example, Parkinson’s disease) which may impact the perioperative period.

Renal: Identification of significant renal disease by history and review of prior UEC may inform prescribing practice. Most frail patients would have had biochemistry results within the last six months arranged by their primary care provider.

Other: Other comorbidities such as autoimmune disease, cancer, gastrointestinal, musculoskeletal or rheumatological complaints usually become evident during history, examination and review of the medication list.

Previous surgical history
Brief outline of past surgery, whether length of stay was within expected norms or rehabilitation required.
Specifically enquire about past reactions to anaesthesia, opioid analgesia and common complications including prior delirium or nausea and if a causative agent was identified. Previous perioperative nausea and delirium is a risk factor for further episodes.

Cognitive screening and frailty
A brief cognitive screening tool should be utilised together with collateral history, such as informant concerns regarding cognitive decline.

The role of a cognitive screening tool is to screen for presence of cognitive impairment, and the choice of which tool to use will depend on the clinician’s personal preference and experience. Commonly used examples include the Mini-COG, Abbreviated Mental Test Score (AMTS), Mini-Mental State Examination and Montreal Cognitive Assessment. The Mini-COG and AMTS are the most time efficient and require minimal training whereas geriatricians may choose a more comprehensive screening tool.

An assessment of patient frailty described earlier should be part of the CGA.

Overview of patient’s home situation, social support on discharge and functional state
Current independence (or dependence) with activities of daily living and identification of potential functional impact as a result of the surgery should be identified. This may include an overview of mobility, the use of walking aids, bed transfers, toileting, showering and anticipated assistance from family, carers or formal services. A patient who lives alone requires independence with transfers, mobility and toileting at the bare minimum to return home.

The Duke Activity Status Index provides a simple template of estimated functional reserve, whilst tools such as the Risk Assessment and Prediction Tool (RAPT) developed by Alfred Health in Victoria may be predictive of the need for rehabilitation and length of stay following joint arthroplasty.36-38

The layout and access issues within the house (for example, shower hobs, stairs, living areas on upper floors) may need to be addressed, typically by an occupational therapist in the perioperative period if surgery will lead to a temporary functional deficit.

Perioperative medication management
While detailed medication management is beyond the scope of this chapter, the following are often relevant in the elderly patient:

Perioperative management of anti-platelet and anticoagulation medications depends upon the indication and surgery type and in consultation with the involved specialists. The presence of dual-antiplatelet therapy may contraindicate spinal and certain regional anaesthesia options. Ideally, a documented plan should be given to the patient and outlined in the perioperative medication chart to minimise human factor errors. As previously suggested, minimise medications that confer a greater risk of delirium, such as new benzodiazepine, antipsychotic and anti-cholinergic medications. The use of multi-modal analgesia to reduce the use of opioids should be considered against the risk from polypharmacy.34

Consider the increased risk of orthostatic hypotension and falls with tri-cyclic anti-depressants, first generation antihistamines and anti-cholinergic continence medications.35 Consider with-holding diuretics or dose adjustment of blood pressure lowering medications if the patient is hypertensive or hypovolemic in the immediate perioperative period.

Beta blockers are generally continued during the perioperative period. While dose reduction could be considered where a patient is hypertensive, sudden cessation should be avoided where possible.34

Intraoperative choices: Avoid benzodiazepines where possible to reduce the risk of postoperative delirium and other complications.36 Ensure judicial, goal-directed fluid management and maintenance of normothermia.36

A useful online quick reference resource for perioperative medication management is: https://www.ukopa-periophandbook.co.uk.

Further investigation
Additional investigation should depend upon identified comorbidity, pre-test probability and its impact on management. Advanced cardiac investigations, such as cardiac echocardiography or stress testing should be requested only if it will inform shared decision making and/or influence perioperative management.36 Other examples include biochemistry, renal function, HbA1c (for diabetic patients) and haematology, the latter with a focus on patient blood management principles.

Formulation: Communication with other perioperative stakeholders including implementation
Formulation of an individual comprehensive geriatric assessment care plan is beyond the scope of this chapter. Adequate ‘buy-in’ and collaboration with other perioperative stakeholders are integral to success. Practical aspects of comprehensive geriatric assessment and subsequent implementation are poorly reported in the literature, likely due to heterogeneity in standardised practice. Much of this may be specific to a given institution or even the perioperative physician/surgeon partnership.

It is important that strategies are in place to ensure recommendations from the assessment are successfully implemented and followed through in the perioperative phase.

Utility of the comprehensive geriatric assessment in the perioperative setting
The effectiveness of care based around the comprehensive geriatric assessment has been demonstrated in numerous inpatient settings, including dedicated geriatric units and general medical wards.35 More recently, the comprehensive geriatric assessment has also been applied to the preoperative setting, as outlined below. These results are promising, although more conclusive research is still needed.

Firstly, in terms of the comprehensive geriatric assessment’s accuracy in identifying frail patients in the preoperative setting (and therefore those at highest risk of adverse outcomes), studies have found that it was superior to traditional scoring systems such as the ASA and POSSUM.35 The comprehensive geriatric assessment has also been applied successfully to the surgical oncology population, with a study finding that its’ most robust components were activity of daily living, cognition, and depression, when predicting postoperative course.35

One of the greatest strengths of the comprehensive geriatric assessment is its potential for intervention and optimisation, and here too, studies in the surgical setting have been promising. For example, the POOPS (proactive care of older people undergoing surgery) model, a comprehensive geriatric assessment based service in elective orthopaedic surgery, has demonstrated improved outcomes as a result of multi-disciplinary input, including decreased length of stay, reduced incidence of pressure sores, more satisfactory pain scores and higher rates of early mobilisation. The authors of this study identified that this model helped to recognise issues affecting the perioperative course that were unlikely to have been detected or addressed during a standard preoperative assessment.
Similarly, preoperative comprehensive geriatric assessment was associated with reduced length of stay in a randomised controlled trial on patients undergoing elective vascular surgery. Possible mechanisms for this association include an increased rate of new diagnoses (and therefore appropriate management), medication changes and other interventions such as increased rates of preoperative testing and social work referral in the intervention group. Moreover, communication with patients and their families was more prevalent in the intervention arm, allowing for better identification of risk factors and shared understanding regarding anticipated postoperative complications.

McIsaac et al propose that one of the reasons that preoperative geriatric assessment may improve outcomes lies in the holistic approach it guides geriatric medicine. As such, they suggest that this approach better captures the interactions between existing medical and functional problems in the elderly, as opposed to the traditional “organ-specific” approach traditionally utilised in the pre-assessment clinic.

However, despite the promising findings outlined above, a systematic review on the impact of a preoperative comprehensive geriatric assessment on outcomes in older patients undergoing elective surgery found that the literature is currently inconclusive, and that the use of CGA in the surgical setting has predominantly been limited to the perioperative setting. In the absence of any result that clearly shows that comprehensive geriatric assessment alone in the preoperative setting is insufficient to improve outcomes without a strategy to integrate the management interventions into the patient's entire perioperative journey. However, it is noted that the comprehensive geriatric assessment is likely to improve post-operative outcomes in the elderly population, and therefore would still suggest consideration of a multi-disciplinary pathway for such patients. Further research is required to direct these efforts more definitively.

BARRIERS TO SUCCESSFUL COMPREHENSIVE GERIATRIC ASSESSMENT IMPLEMENTATION

Except for established orthogeriatric services, development of perioperative physician collaboration is still a relatively new and evolving field. Not unlike barriers to ERAS implementation, resistance to new system processes of care is often a perceived benefit and the need to change existing practice may be potential barriers to successful adoption of comprehensive geriatric assessment as part of perioperative care.

Similarly, individual or departmental culture beliefs can have a significant influence on behaviour and adoption of perioperative assessment pathways.

Rotating medical or nursing staff inexperienced with perioperative care and institutional idiosyncrasies may also impede implementation and can be a common problem within Australia. While there is a paucity of quality evidence examining the experience of “front line” nursing and medical staff implementing recommendations from a preoperative comprehensive geriatric assessment, it is conceivable that problems may arise, and this is an issue that has been identified in the ERAS literature. For example, written correspondence may be filed away or not included in the admitted patient perioperative record. It is therefore imperative that the surgeon, anaesthetist, ward staff and patient are communicating effectively and all are aware of the perioperative recommendations arising from comprehensive geriatric assessment.

Regular education and orientation to perioperative principles for rotating staff and the integration of perioperative care into specialty advanced training curriculum or subspeciality specialisation may ameliorate this. With continued practice, a culture shift may occur such that automated behaviours aligning with best perioperative care and ERAS practice might develop.

Another challenge is the time and cost of comprehensive geriatric assessment which is resource intensive. It is yet another appointment for a patient to attend preoperatively and even with COVID-19 restrictions, not always practical via telehealth. The perioperative physician requires adequate notice in the lead up to surgery and resourcing to assess the patient in a timely fashion before surgery.

MODELS FOR APPLICATION OF THE COMPREHENSIVE GERIATRIC ASSESSMENT PERIOPERATIVELY

A review of the literature reveals a range of approaches to the use of the comprehensive geriatric assessment in the surgical setting, including which domains it should include, which patients it should be applied to, and who should be involved in the delivery of this service.

While more specific and detailed methods may be of benefit, these obviously come at the cost of being more challenging to implement. This is most relevant to the elective setting, where time is available between the pre-admission clinic and surgery to allow these interventions to take effect. Nonetheless, early identification of the frail patient in emergency settings by direct anaesthetic management in order to optimise medical stability, ensure adequate hydration and normothermia, and help identify the most appropriate postoperative disposition.

In terms of which patients should have a comprehensive geriatric assessment preoperatively, some authors have taken the approach of applying it to every geriatric patient and those at risk of frailty syndrome, while others advocate for its use only in those patients with a positive frailty screening test. Certainly, from a cost-effectiveness and sustainability of point-of-care screening, the latter would likely be preferable if it can first be established that patients who would benefit most from a comprehensive geriatric assessment. Osborne et al note that geriatric review for all elderly surgical patients is likely unnecessary and instead suggest frailty screening for this purpose.

Given its inherent multidisciplinary nature, ideally a range of interdisciplinary team members should be involved in the use of the comprehensive geriatric assessment peroperatively. This includes anaesthetists, surgeons, geriatricians, physiotherapists, occupational therapists, nutritionists and nursing staff who are integral to perioperative care. The comprehensive geriatric assessment is only one tool in the perioperative armamentarium.

There have been varying approaches regarding the level of involvement by geriatric specialists. Partridge and colleagues found that they were able to utilise their pre-existing services in transitioning to a comprehensive geriatric assessment-based approach through various methods, including educating the pre-admission nursing staff to use the comprehensive geriatric assessment-based screening tool. On the other hand, McIsaac et al suggest that the involvement of a geriatrician was critical to the success of their intervention, leading to a better identification of patients at risk due to frailty and potentially key to the comprehensive geriatric assessment’s success, as geriatricians may be better placed to recognise and respond to risk factors for frailty. Interestingly, a study by Kim and colleagues attempted to deliver the comprehensive geriatric assessment in non-geriatrician led preoperative settings (with training and support from geriatricians) delivered disappointing results despite initial enthusiasm. The authors identified challenges to the successful implementation of the intervention such as lack of perceived priority, differences in approach between sites and time pressures (particularly in relation to oncological surgeries with ideal time frames to surgery). Although less favourable from an economic and resources perspective, it is thought that comprehensive geriatric assessment-based initiatives that involve the close involvement of geriatrician support are likely to be more favourable.

Certainly, in the absence of definitive guidelines, the questions of who would benefit from a comprehensive geriatric assessment and who should be involved in its delivery, will need to be guided by the specific resources and limitations of each institution, and the needs and profile of their specific patient population. This planning will also need to involve careful consideration regarding which domains to assess and how to assess them, and will require clear guidance regarding interventions to target identified deficits.

OTHER COMPREHENSIVE GERIATRIC ASSESSMENT-BASED INTERVENTIONS

Most people identified with frailty will continue to decline over time. Where present, comprehensive geriatric assessment should identify frailty in the perioperative patient. Multimodal interventions may improve outcomes in the frail older population in reducing cognitive or functional decline although strong evidence specific to the perioperative population is lacking.

CONSENT AND SHARED DECISION MAKING

The potential impact on quality of life and independence are of particular importance in the elderly population when considering whether or not to proceed with surgery. Through its holistic and individualised assessment, the comprehensive geriatric assessment offers particular benefits in helping guide this shared decision-making process. Careful communication of any identified risks can provide patients and their families with realistic expectations and clarify goals of care. This resultant informed decision-making may explain why some studies have noted that the use of the comprehensive geriatric assessment resulted in some patients opting not to go ahead with surgical management.

PREHABILITATION

There is growing recognition of the potential for “prehabilitation” programs to help optimise patients preoperatively to the welfare of reducing adverse postoperative outcomes. It is defined as “any intervention delivered in advance of surgery that improves health, optimises function and/or potentially reduces postoperative risk.” In practice these are programs designed to improve functional, physical and psychological health prior to surgery to lessen the physiological or functional impact of surgery. Many components of prehabilitation overlap with ERAS principles such as preoperative education and psychological preparation, optimising medical comorbidity and improving nutrition.

Exercise based intervention is often considered the focus in the perioperative literature. Ideally an exercise program should be individually prescribed for each patient to take into account individual’s impairment(s) and exercise tolerance and should occur more than four weeks before surgery. Realistically, the best exercise is one the patient will actually complete. Goals include improved aerobic capacity and muscle strengthening.
Compliance and efficacy of unimodal exercise intervention is invariably described as an area for further research. The heterogeneity of patient cohorts, surgery and institutional practice means generalisation is difficult. To assess and deliver intervention have been cited as contributory barriers. Privately funded interventions are awareness and wish to enrol in these programs.

**CONCLUSION**

Frailty is increasingly being understood to be an important predictor of perioperative outcomes, as well as a potential target for interventions aimed at risk modification. While the best way of identifying these patients in the preoperative setting is still unclear, easily applied frailty screening tools appear promising in their ability to improve perioperative outcomes in the elderly population. Ongoing work is needed in the Australian setting to tailor optimised pathways for the frail surgical patient. The CGA is an assessment modality that is personalised and holistic for this cohort of often medically complex patients. If challenges surrounding its implementation are tackled, it has the potential to be an integral part of perioperative pathways for the elderly patient that provides opportunities for a collaborative management.

**REFERENCES**

1. Welfare AIoHa. Older australia at a glance. Canberra: AIHW2018
Perioperative melatonin: Too good to be true?

Marli Smit MBChB(Sta), FCA(Sta), MMed Anaes(Stell), PhD
Department of Anaesthesia, Sir Charles Gairdner Hospital, Nedlands, Western Australia

Dr Marli Smit graduated as a specialist anaesthetist at Tygerberg Hospital, Stellenbosch University (South Africa) where she also acted as departmental research lead. She obtained a PhD in medical physiology in 2019 and has a special interest in myocardial protection, reperfusion injury, autophagy and melanin. She is currently doing a research fellowship at Sir Charles Gairdner Hospital.

Dale Currigan, MBBS(Hons) FANZCA MClinUS
Department of Anaesthesia, Sir Charles Gairdner Hospital, Nedlands, Western Australia

Dr Dale Currigan is a consultant anaesthetist and director of research for the Department of Anaesthesia, Sir Charles Gairdner Hospital, and a senior lecturer at the University of Western Australia. He has broad research and teaching interests including vasopressor pharmacology, ischaemia/reperfusion injury, regional anaesthesia and perioperative echocardiography.

INTRODUCTION

There is an ongoing search for surgical and anaesthetic approaches, as well as perioperative pharmacological agents, that will further improve perioperative outcomes. The characteristics of the ideal pharmacological agent will include being multi-modal, affordable, accessible and safe.

Melatonin, a hormone released from the pineal gland, regulates circadian rhythms in mammals and plays a potential role in postoperative sleep disturbances, delirium, anxiety, pain, emergence agitation in children and myocardial protection. These effects are as a result of melatonin’s important role in regulating the circadian rhythm, as well as its anti-inflammatory and anti-oxidative effects.

This review article will focus on the physiology of melatonin, followed by an overview of the current and potential perioperative uses, dosing, safety and pharmacokinetics.

PHYSIOLOGY

Secretion and metabolism of melatonin

Melatonin’s (N-acetyl-5-methoxytryptamine) secretion into the blood stream is regulated by the environmental light/dark cycle via the suprachiasmatic nucleus. Light is detected by sensitive ocular photoreceptors which will induce sleep is still unknown4. Melatonin’s (N-acetyl-5-methoxytryptamine) secretion into the blood stream is regulated by the environmental light/dark cycle via the suprachiasmatic nucleus. Light is detected by sensitive ocular photoreceptors which will induce sleep is still unknown4. Melatonin’s (N-acetyl-5-methoxytryptamine) secretion into the blood stream is regulated by the environmental light/dark cycle via the suprachiasmatic nucleus. Light is detected by sensitive ocular photoreceptors which will induce sleep is still unknown4. Melatonin’s (N-acetyl-5-methoxytryptamine) secretion into the blood stream is regulated by the environmental light/dark cycle via the suprachiasmatic nucleus. Light is detected by sensitive ocular photoreceptors which will induce sleep is still unknown4. Melatonin’s (N-acetyl-5-methoxytryptamine) secretion into the blood stream is regulated by the environmental light/dark cycle via the suprachiasmatic nucleus. Light is detected by sensitive ocular photoreceptors which will induce sleep is still unknown4. Melatonin’s (N-acetyl-5-methoxytryptamine) secretion into the blood stream is regulated by the environmental light/dark cycle via the suprachiasmatic nucleus. Light is detected by sensitive ocular photoreceptors which will induce sleep is still unknown4. Melatonin’s (N-acetyl-5-methoxytryptamine) secretion into the blood stream is regulated by the environmental light/dark cycle via the suprachiasmatic nucleus. Light is detected by sensitive ocular photoreceptors which will induce sleep is still unknown4. Melatonin’s (N-acetyl-5-methoxytryptamine) secretion into the blood stream is regulated by the environmental light/dark cycle via the suprachiasmatic nucleus. Light is detected by sensitive ocular photoreceptors which will induce sleep is still unknown4.
One molecule of melatonin can scavenge up to 10 reactive oxygen species (ROS) or reactive nitrogen species (RNS). The total antioxidant capacity of melatonin, under in vivo conditions, plays an important role in various (perioperative) conditions.

**Figure 1. Human melatonin receptors**

MT, and MT₂, are membrane bound, MT₃, a cytoplasmic receptor, and RZR, a nuclear receptor.

**Abbreviations:** MT, Melatonin; RZR, Retinoid-related orphan nuclear hormone receptor.

Melatonin binds to the MT₁ receptor which prevents oxidative stress via inhibition of the transcription factors. The locations that melatonin receptors can be found include the brain, retina, cardiac ventricular wall, aorta, coronary and cerebral arteries, liver and gallbladder, duodenal enterocytes, colon, caecum, appendix veriformis, skin, parotid gland, exocrine pancreas, kidney, cells of immune system, platelets, brown and white adipocytes, epithelial cells of prostate and breast, ovary/granulosa cells, myometrium and placenta. Considering this widespread distribution of receptors, it follows that melatonin may play an important role in various (perioperative) conditions.

**Antioxidant and free radical scavenger activity of melatonin**

The antioxidant effects of melatonin have been demonstrated in various animal studies and clinical trials. Three main mechanisms are being proposed to explain the antioxidant and free radical scavenging activity of melatonin:

1. The first is binding of melatonin to the MT₁ receptor which prevents oxidative stress via inhibition of the electron transfer reactions of quinones.
2. Melatonin and its downstream metabolites (N₁-acetyl-N₂-formyl-5-methoxykynuramine (AFMK) and N-acetyl-5-methoxykynuramine (AMK)) are well-established as powerful direct free radical scavengers via receptor-independent mechanisms.
3. Lastly, melatonin also indirectly stimulates antioxidative enzyme release. Enzymes such as glutathione peroxidase, glutathione reductase superoxide dismutase, and glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase are being released and consequently lowers molecular damage under conditions of excessive oxidative stress. This stimulation of antioxidative enzymes is mediated by its action on MT₁ and MT₂ receptors.

**Antioxidant and free radical scavenger activity**

**Anti-inflammatory action of melatonin**

The importance of chronic inflammation in overall and especially cardiovascular health, is well established. Melatonin inhibits the expression of inducible nitric oxide synthase (NOS), cyclooxygenase as well as other inflammatory mediators such as cytokines, chemokines and adhesion molecules. Even though the laboratory evidence for melatonin’s anti-inflammatory actions is convincing, the knowledge and evidence directly related to melatonin’s effects on the inflammatory response following surgery is still limited.

**CLINICAL USES**

**Anxiolysis**

The sedative/hypnotic effect associated with melatonin administration is as a result of enhanced gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA) to GABA-A receptor binding, following brain MT₁ and MT₂ receptor stimulation.

Perioperative anxiety is important to address, as it is unpleasant and may increase postoperative pain. Oral melatonin has been used successfully as a preoperative medication to facilitate anxiolysis and sedation, in both paediatric and adult patients. These studies furthermore demonstrated that melatonin premedication, unlike midazolam, does not impair psychomotor skills, result in paradoxical psychological reactions, amnesia, respiratory depression, impact the quality of recovery, or result in a “hangover” effect. Melatonin may thus be considered as a safe and effective alternative to benzodiazepines for preoperative anxiolysis.

A recent Cochrane systematic review (2020) assessing melatonin for treating pre- and postoperative anxiety in adults, included 27 randomised controlled trials (RCTs), and a total of 2319 participants. Doses used ranged from 5-10 mg and were administered via either the oral or sublingual routes. The authors concluded that when compared with placebo, oral or sublingual) melatonin is superior to placebo as a premedication, in reducing anxiety (when measured 50 to 120 minutes after administration). Melatonin may furthermore have a similar effect to benzodiazepines in reducing preoperative and postoperative anxiety in adults with the added benefit of less adverse effects.

A systematic review on the anaesthetic indications of melatonin in paediatric patients, also published in 2020, included 27 eligible studies. While the significant heterogeneity in study methodology did not allow a quantitative analysis, they still reported that the use of melatonin may decrease the need for, or even replace general anaesthesia for diagnostic procedures; and may serve as an anaesthetic adjunct before induction in paediatric patients.

**Effect of melatonin on anaesthetic induction dose**

Four studies have investigated the effect of preoperative melatonin on anaesthetic induction dose. These studies used either bispectral index, clinical assessment or both to determine an adequate induction dose. The melatonin dosages used varied between 3 mg, 5 mg, 9 mg and 0.2 mg/kg. Melatonin was superior to placebo in all four studies. Melatonin was superior to midazolam in two studies and no different in one other. Both of these drugs have been shown to decrease the sedative/hypnotic effect associated with melatonin administration is as a result of enhanced gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA) to GABA-A receptor binding, following brain MT₁ and MT₂ receptor stimulation. Both of these drugs have been shown to decrease the sedative/hypnotic effect of melatonin administration is as a result of enhanced gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA) to GABA-A receptor binding, following brain MT₁ and MT₂ receptor stimulation.
incidence of emergence delirium in a range of surgical settings44. Melatonin has not been compared to other drugs commonly used for prevention of emergence delirium, such as propofol, clonidine or opioids. Kain et al further reported that the beneficial effect of melatonin was dose related, the incidence for agitation after 0.05 mg/kg melatonin was 25 per cent, 8.3 per cent after 0.2 mg/kg melatonin, and the incidence following 0.4 mg/kg melatonin 5.4 per cent41.

Ultimately, the current evidence base in the area is small but promising. A systematic review and meta-analysis of existing RCTs investigating the role of preoperative melatonin in emergence delirium concluded that melatonin, compared to placebo, may be effective in preventing emergence delirium in children (low grade evidence). They furthermore reported that high-dose melatonin may be superior to midazolam (very low grade evidence)41.

Acute pain

Melatonin has a promising role as a perioperative analgesic agent. Animal as well as clinical studies have demonstrated dose-dependent antinociception and enhanced postsurgical analgesia following systemic melatonin44-48. The preoperative anxiolytic and postoperative analgesic effects of melatonin have been compared to those of clonidine46. The precise mechanism and site of action of melatonin's antinociception is still unknown. However, interactions with opioid, GABA and NMDA receptor systems have been proposed51. The decrease in the release of pro-inflammatory mediators, suppression of nociceptor activation, sleep promotion, free radical scavenging, and nitric oxide synthase inhibition, may also all play a potential role52-54.

A meta-analysis of the role of melatonin in postoperative pain (12 RCTs, n = 821) demonstrated that melatonin significantly reduces postoperative pain (reduction in standard mean difference of 1.06 compared to placebo, equivalent to 20 mm on a visual analogue scale)52. However, the authors considered the results as unreliable due to the profound heterogeneity of the included studies52. They therefore proposed additional RCTs, with specific focus on investigating a variety of melatonin dosages, different routes of administration and timing. This will assist in establishing a dose-response relationship for melatonin, which may be valuable in the clinical setting52.

A recent RCT (n = 165), not included in the aforementioned meta-analysis, and the largest RCT with a pain end-point to date, concluded that preoperative oral administration of 6 mg melatonin, in comparison to placebo, led to a significant reduction in pain scores (p < 0.05), total morphine consumption (p = 0.007) and supplemental analgesic requirement (p = 0.001)52.

Sleep macrostructure is commonly disturbed after surgery. Given the bidirectional interaction between sleep and pain, a 2019 systematic review examined the role of sleep disturbances during the perioperative period and its relation to postoperative pain56. This review included trials investigating the effects of perioperative sleep-promoting pharmacological agents on postoperative pain and analgesic consumption. They concluded that perioperative administration of a sleep-promoting pharmacological agents (like melatonin) may improve pain control, but that underlying evidence is weak and the results inconsistent56.

Postoperative delirium

Postoperative delirium is associated with an increase in morbidity and mortality57-58 as well as increased hospital length of stay and healthcare associated costs59. Importantly, it is also associated with both short and long term cognitive impairment57. Melatonin levels have been shown to decrease following surgery, and delirious patients have lower plasma melatonin concentrations than those who are not delirious57. Hence, there has been much interest in the potential role melatonin might play in prevention of postoperative delirium.

To date, the results of trials in both surgical and non-surgical patients have been conflicting, and methodological differences, such as dose, timing, and duration of therapy have made drawing clear conclusions about melatonin’s effectiveness difficult. The most recent systematic review and meta-analysis explored the effect of melatonin and analogues on delirium prevention, and thus delirium incidence, in adult hospitalised patients. Fourteen studies (1712 patients) were included, with melatonin shown to overall significantly reduce delirium incidence (RR 0.61, 95% CI 0.42-0.89, p = 0.009) without a significant effect on other objective sleep outcomes or on subjective sleep quality (visual analogue scale, and Karolinska Sleepiness Scale)51. Hansen et al additionally investigated sleep and postoperative cognitive dysfunction, and concluded that whilst melatonin significantly increased sleep efficiency and total sleep time, it did not affect postoperative cognitive function between the two groups51.

A systematic review and meta-analysis explored the influence of melatonin versus placebo on sleep quality, specifically following laparoscopic cholecystectomy. Following the analysis of the results for the five included studies, they concluded that melatonin shows no substantial impact on sleepiness (95% CI=-0.44 to 0.23; P=0.54) or sleep quality (95% CI=-0.21 to 0.41; P=0.53)51.

The recent systematic review and meta-analysis by Khaing et al, investigating the effect of melatonin and melatonin receptor agonists on delirium, concluded secondary outcomes of sleep quality, sedation score and the requirement of sedatives51. The supplementation of melatonin, and receptor agonists, were associated with improvement in sleep quality, increased sedation score and lower sedatives consumption51.

Cardiovascular uses of melatonin

A strong inverse relationship exists between endogenous melatonin levels and cardiovascular disease70. A review by Jikjia et al states that both nocturnal melatonin synthesis and circulating levels are reduced in patients with coronary artery disease, hypertension, heart failure, diabetes and obesity71. Further support for the inverse relationship between melatonin and cardiovascular disease is found in the timing of adverse cardiac events. Myocardial infarction71, sudden cardiac death71 and cardiac arrhythmias72 are all more prevalent in early morning, when circulating melatonin levels are considerably lower71.

Table 1 summarises the cardiac conditions and risk factors in which the beneficial effect of melatonin has been reported. For additional detail, as well as the pathways involved, refer to the following recent comprehensive reviews on the role melatonin plays in cardiovascular risk factors and diseases73-79.

Atherothrombosis Effective in the treatment of atherosclerosis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cardiac condition or risk factor</th>
<th>Effect of melatonin</th>
<th>Reference(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cardiac condition or risk factor</td>
<td>Reduction in pulmonary pressures via antioxidant, anti-inflammatory, and vasodilatory mechanisms.</td>
<td>94,95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypertension</td>
<td>Antihypertensive.</td>
<td>67-69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hypermastoidity</td>
<td>Anti-arhythmic.</td>
<td>50,91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atherosclerosis</td>
<td>Effective in the treatment of atherosclerosis (only animal studies).</td>
<td>52,93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Metabolic syndrome</td>
<td>An increase in melatonin levels results in a down-regulation of insulin secretion. Melatonin additionally regulates dyslipidaemia and has anti-obesity effects.</td>
<td>76-78</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Postoperative sleep disturbance

Surgery initially inhibits “rapid eye movement” (REM) sleep, followed by a REM rebound, reduced slow wave sleep and increased duration of light sleep56. Melatonin induces sleep and shifts the circadian phase, by the mechanisms described above. A 2005 meta-analysis on the effects of exogenous melatonin on sleep, reported that melatonin treatment increased sleep efficiency, significantly reduced sleep onset latency, and increased total sleep duration53. Even though there is theoretical plausibility, there is still limited evidence for the sleep-regulating effect of postoperative melatonin in surgical patients55.

A systematic review identified four RCTs (n = 311) that recorded the effect of melatonin on postoperative sleep quality56. Sleep was assessed using either sleep questionnaires or accelerometry. Melatonin was reported to improve subjective sleep quality in the early postoperative period51-61 and circadian rhythm during the first postoperative week51. In children, melatonin reduced sleep disturbance for two postoperative weeks53.

Since the publishing of the above systematic review, two small double blinded, placebo controlled, RCTs in breast surgery patients have additionally shown a beneficial effect on sleep with melatonin. Madsen et al demonstrated melatonin to significantly increase sleep efficiency for the entire two-week postoperative period, without a significant effect on other objective sleep outcomes or on subjective sleep quality (visual analogue scale, and Karolinska Sleepiness Scale)51. Hansen et al additionally investigated sleep and postoperative cognitive dysfunction, and concluded that whilst melatonin significantly increased sleep efficiency and total sleep time, it did not affect postoperative cognitive function between the two groups51.

Cardiovascular uses of melatonin

A strong inverse relationship exists between endogenous melatonin levels and cardiovascular disease70. A review by Jikjia et al states that both nocturnal melatonin synthesis and circulating levels are reduced in patients with coronary artery disease, hypertension, heart failure, diabetes and obesity71. Further support for the inverse relationship between melatonin and cardiovascular disease is found in the timing of adverse cardiac events. Myocardial infarction, sudden cardiac death and cardiac arrhythmias are all more prevalent in early morning, when circulating melatonin levels are considerably lower71.
The mechanisms by which melatonin provides cardioprotection against I/R injury are complex and multifactorial. Melatonin may directly and indirectly reduce reperfusion injury via immunomodulatory activities and a reduction in oxidative stress, apoptosis, necrosis, mitochondrial permeability transition pore opening, lipid peroxidation and inflammation. There is also accumulating evidence of the beneficial role melatonin plays in the regulation and restoration of damaged autophagic processes. To date, few and conflicting clinical trials have investigated the effect of exogenous melatonin as a therapeutic agent during I/R injury. In addition, as summarised in reviews by Lochner et al and Imenshahidi et al, melatonin treatment can also protect the heart against damage induced by chronic intermittent hypoxia, angiotensin II, isoproterenol, epinephrine, doxorubicin, aluminium phosphate–induced cardiotoxicity, 2,3,7,8-tetrachlorodibenzo-p-dioxin, elevated heart rate, and postural tachycardia syndrome.

Following all of above, Sun et al pointed out that melatonin, an inexpensive and well-tolerated drug, needs to be considered as a novel therapeutic option in cardiovascular disease. Melatonin may have periorientive cardiovascular value with regards to preoperative risk factor modification, as well as intraoperative and postoperative myocardial protection.

General (potential) clinical uses

Growing evidence supports the other beneficial multi-organ effects of melatonin, as extensively reviewed previously. The therapeutic potential of melatonin includes metabolic disorders, various cancers, neurodegenerative diseases, reproductive diseases, bone diseases (osteoopenia, osteoporosis, and periodontal disease), eye (macular degeneration, glaucoma) and skin diseases.

DOSAGE AND SAFETY

In Australia the only licenced formulation of melatonin is Circadin, a 2 mg, slow-release preparation. Immediate release melatonin is available in liquid and capsule form from hospital and community compounding pharmacies.

Dosage

Endogenous melatonin levels are a well-established determinant of total antioxidant capacity as well as inflammatory responses. The reported dose of oral melatonin has ranged from 0.05 mg/kg11 to dosages as high as 300 mg/day for up to two years.

Previous clinical studies made use of arbitrarily chosen melatonin dosages, mainly based on safety considerations. The inconsistencies in clinical studies regarding melatonin's periorientive beneficial effects may be a result of the discrepancy in dosages (ranging between fixed dosages of 3 mg to 50 mg and 0.05-0.5 mg/kg), the mode (oral, intravenous or sublingual), duration of administration as well as the timing of administration. Previous studies reported the effective melatonin dosage to induce oxidative stress, related to a surgical procedure, to be as high as 10 mg/kg104-106. On average the melatonin dose used in the clinical studies are however significantly lower than those used in the experimental models. Dwaich et al furthermore demonstrated the importance of melatonin dosing by reporting on the dose dependent decrease in troponin and inflammatory markers following cardiac surgery.

Safety

The majority of clinical trials, as reviewed by two review articles, have shown very low melatonin toxicity. In a phase I dose escalation study to assess the tolerability and pharmacokinetics in healthy volunteers, no adverse effects were noticed following the oral dosages of 20, 30, 50, and 100 mg of melatonin115. Dosages up to 10 mg/kg has been reported to be safe in neonates112 and treatment of patients undergoing major aortic surgery with intravenous melatonin of up to 60 mg in the intraoperative phase was safe and without complications101.

Finally, the therapeutic goods administration (TGA) of Australia concluded that "adverse events of any kind were not more common under circadian treatment in laboratory parameters, physical examination or vital signs. There was no data to suggest withdrawal or rebound phenomena."103.

Adverse effects because of melatonin are generally minor, short-lived and include fatigue, mood change, headache, pharyngitis, back pain, asthena and a decrease in neurocognitive performance. It is reasonable to conclude that the safety profile of oral melatonin supplementation in humans is very favourable, especially when dosing in accordance with natural circadian rhythms134.

Pharmacokinetics of melatonin

Melatonin is completely absorbed when administered orally, although its absolute bioavailability is only 3-33% per cent due to an 85 per cent first pass metabolism by the liver107. Following absorption from the small intestine, by first-order kinetics the time to maximum concentration (Tmax) is achieved after approximately 30-45 minutes108. Oral administration 45 minutes before intended effects are thus advocated if assuming that clinical efficacy coincides with Tmax values. The half-life of melatonin is 40-60 minutes, which implies that this drug will stay in the body for about five hours. Elimination of the drug occurs largely through renal excretion of metabolites135. Only a limited number of studies have been performed investigating the pharmacokinetic properties in humans. These studies typically only involve young healthy subjects. In these studies, even though an identical dosing regimen was followed, a substantial intra-study variation was demonstrated between patients, in terms of oral bioavailability and maximum concentration109. For example, following 10 mg of oral melatonin, maximal plasma levels ranged between 105 and 58,900 pg/ml110. The cause for this extreme variability may be as a result to interindividual differences in absorption, distribution, metabolism, and elimination of the drug109,114.

Other factors potentially influencing the variability in melatonin levels (and thus study results) include:

1. Gender: A three-to-four-fold increase in maximum concentration is apparent for women compared to men.
2. Elderly: Melatonin metabolism declines with age, and higher levels have been reported in older subjects compared to younger subjects. Advancing age has also been shown to affect the absorption of oral melatonin. Clinical data shows a reduction in oral absorption by up to 50 per cent in elderly patients.
3. Liver function: Hepatic impairment results in higher endogenous melatonin levels since the liver is the primary site of melatonin metabolism.
4. Diet: Consumption of melatonin-rich foods such as grape juice, wine, cereals, tropical fruits and walnuts increases baseline circulating melatonin levels.
5. Underlying diseases: As mentioned before, patients with ischemic heart disease, hypertension, heart failure, advanced diabetes and obesity all have a decrease in endogenous melatonin levels.

Above mentioned variations in pharmacokinetics (due to different formulations, patient populations, routes of administration and dosing) make it difficult to compare and interpret results from different trials. In addition, plasma melatonin levels vary extensively within studies, even with identical dosages. These substantial differences may potentially impact clinical efficacy, which makes it imperative to correlate clinical effects and actual plasma melatonin levels following exogenous melatonin administration.

CONCLUSION

Despite a strong theoretical basis for a multi-modal, positive, periorientive role, there are conflicting study results in the literature regarding the periorientive role of melatonin. It is likely that heterogeneity in study methodology is the cause for the discrepancies between study results. The paucity of data on melatonin dosing means that choice of dose, timing, route of administration and duration of therapy vary greatly between study protocols. As such, there is a critical need for dose response studies, and how dose correlates with plasma melatonin levels. Additionally, larger studies investigating the optimal route, timing and duration of administration are required.

Notwithstanding these issues, the case for periorientive melatonin does continue to grow. Most studies do support melatonin as a pre-medication, alone or in combination with other standard drugs. Other positive effects include better recovery of circadian rhythm, a role in prevention of postoperative delirium and emergence agitation, and a reduction in the need for other anaesthetic and analgesic usage. Melatonin's favourable safety profile, affordability and accessibility further add to its enormous potential clinical benefit.

REFERENCES


264 265


Yaprak M, Altun A, Vardar A, Aktoz M, Ciftci S, Ozbay G. Decreased nocturnal synthesis of melatonin in patients with


Domínguez-Rodríguez A, Abreu-González P, García MJ, Sanchez J, Marrero F, de Armas-Trujillo D. Decreased nocturnal

Zhang J, Wang Y, Xu H, Yang J. The influence of melatonin on sleep quality after laparoscopic cholecystectomy: a meta-

Hung MW, Kravtsov GM, Lau CF, Poon AM, Tipoe GL, Fung ML. Melatonin ameliorates endothelial dysfunction, vascular

Ahmad Hajam Y, Rai S, Basheer M, Ghosh H, Singh S. Protective role of melatonin in streptozotocin induced pancreatic

Nduhirabandi F, Huisamen B, Strijdom H, Lochner A. Role of melatonin in glucose uptake by cardiomyocytes from insulin-


Imenshahidi M, Karimi G, Hosseinzadeh H. Effects of melatonin on cardiovascular risk factors and metabolic syndrome: a


Wiggins-Dohhik S, Han MS, Stagg HW, Altur H, Shaj CA, Oakley RP, et al. Melatonin inhibits thermal injury induced


Luo GP, Jian Z, Ma RY, Cao ZZ, Zhu Y, Zhu Y, et al. Melatonin alleviates hypoxia-induced cardiac apoptosis through PKD1

Yu L, Gong B, Duan W, Zhang J, Zhang X, Ye XD, et al. Melatonin protects diabetic heart against ischemia-reperfusion injury

Tan DX, Manchester LC, Reiter RJ, Qi W, Kim SJ, El-Sokkary GH. Ischemia/reperfusion-induced arrhythmias in the


Diez ER, Prados LV, Carrión A, Ponce ZA, Miatello RM. A novel electrophysiologic effect of melatonin on ischemia/


González González A, Rueda Revilla N, Sánchez-Barceló EJ. Clinical uses of melatonin: evaluation of human trials on


Barati S, Jahangirifard A, Ahmadi ZH, Tavakoli-Ardakani M, Dastan F. The effects of melatonin on the oxidative stress and

Luo GP, Jian Z, Ma RY, Cao ZZ, Zhu Y, Zhu Y, et al. Melatonin alleviates hypoxia-induced cardiac apoptosis through PKD1

Yu L, Gong B, Duan W, Zhang J, Zhang X, Ye XD, et al. Melatonin protects diabetic heart against ischemia-reperfusion injury

Tan DX, Manchester LC, Reiter RJ, Qi W, Kim SJ, El-Sokkary GH. Ischemia/reperfusion-induced arrhythmias in the

Tan DX, Manchester LC, Reiter RJ, Qi W, Kim SJ, El-Sokkary GH. Ischemia/reperfusion-induced arrhythmias in the


Luo GP, Jian Z, Ma RY, Cao ZZ, Zhu Y, Zhu Y, et al. Melatonin alleviates hypoxia-induced cardiac apoptosis through PKD1


Luo GP, Jian Z, Ma RY, Cao ZZ, Zhu Y, Zhu Y, et al. Melatonin alleviates hypoxia-induced cardiac apoptosis through PKD1


Trauma and emergencies

Whakaari/White Island eruption – an overview of volcanic trauma and its management
John Burnett, Matthew Taylor

A beginner’s guide to in-flight medical emergencies
Gareth Jones, Nicola Emslie, Dean Bunbury
Whakaari/White Island eruption – an overview of volcanic trauma and its management

John Burnett, MBChB, FANZCA
Department of Anaesthesia and Pain Medicine, Middlemore Hospital, Auckland, NZ

Monday 9 December 2019 was the first day of Dr John Burnett’s burns anaesthesia fellowship at Middlemore Hospital. He works as a specialist anaesthetist at this hospital, with interests in both burns and paediatric anaesthesia.

Matthew Taylor, MBChB, FANZCA
Department of Anaesthesia and Pain Medicine, Middlemore Hospital, Auckland, NZ

Dr Matthew Taylor is a specialist anaesthetist at Middlemore Hospital with interests in burn management and regional anaesthesia. As a secondary effect of living in the North Island of New Zealand, Matt has a side interest in volcanic risks.

DISCLAIMER
At the time of writing this article there is an active coronial inquest into the events on Whakaari following the eruption on 9 December 2019. For this reason, some details are not available or fully elucidated.

INTRODUCTION
On 9 December 2019 at 2.11pm, New Zealand experienced an unheralded eruption from the Whakaari/White Island volcano off the coast of the Eastern Bay of Plenty. This phreatic eruption, while small from a geological reference, was significant due to the presence of tourist groups within 1000 metres of the vent and exposed in close proximity to the force of the resultant pyroclastic surge.

Forty-seven people were on the island at the time of the eruption. Thirty-nine of these were emergently evacuated by sea and air to local healthcare facilities, with 31 burn injured patients being stabilised, transferred to regional burn centres and then on to New Zealand and Australian specialist centres. Despite historical mortality of such events commonly exceeding 90 per cent, an overall mortality of 47 per cent was seen from this event.

Volcanic eruptions causing human casualty are rare, therefore accounts on the management of volcanic burn trauma are limited. The purpose of this article is to provide an educational overview of volcanic trauma, the complex injuries that result and to share insight and learnings from the events on Whakaari.

BRIEF HISTORY OF MODERN-DAY VOLCANIC ERUPTIONS
Volcanic eruptions represent a source of catastrophic trauma due to the energy release involved. In the 20th century it is estimated that more than 90,000 people have been killed by the effects of volcanic phenomena, most commonly as a result of Pyroclastic Density Currents (PDCs), lahars and tephras (ash and rock fall). Historically, volcanic mortality most commonly occurred secondary to mass disaster events from tsunami and climate change related famine.

There are few descriptions of events for individuals caught in close proximity to an eruption. As major eruptions typically have precursor changes in the volcano, the occasions where people have been in close proximity have tended to involve phreatic type eruptions, which involve the explosive decompression of superheated and pressurised vent systems. Although new magma is not ejected from the volcano, these processes nevertheless represent a very significant energy release. Many of the volcanoes present in the Taupō volcanic zone of the North Island of New Zealand such as Ruapehu, Tongariro, Ngauruhoe and Whakaari can display this style of vulcanism.

In recent decades, the few medical and geological descriptions of eruptions that involve people describe a very high mortality rate. The Mount Saint Helens eruption of 1980 was a large event where pyroclastic density currents and lahars killed all 57 people caught in the flows and at some distance from the mountain. Of the five burn trauma patients admitted to hospitals, all died. Some people on the margins of the flows survived. In 1991 in Japan, the Unzen volcano erupted and 41 observers were caught in a PDC that detached from the main flow and enveloped their location. There was a 98 per cent mortality in this group, with 13 admitted to hospitals with severe burns and inhalational injuries and only one survivor. In 2014, also in Japan, the Ontake Volcano erupted unexpectedly when a large number of hikers were on the flanks. This phreatic eruption produced little ash or PDCs, with the majority of injuries related to ballistic trauma. There were 63 deaths, roughly estimated to represent a 50 per cent mortality, although the numbers reported vary. In 1993 a phreatic eruption on the
Galeras volcano in Columbia occurred while 16 people (mostly vulcanologists) were in or on the edge of the caldera. They were subject to ballistic trauma and contact burns from hot rocks. There was no PDC associated with this event, yet still a 56 per cent mortality was seen. Other events in Soufrière Hills, Montserrat (1997) and Merapi, Indonesia (1994, 2010) involved people caught in PDCs with mortality ranging from 60-95 per cent14.

**TE PUIA O WHAKAARI**

Whakaari/White Island is a submerged stratovolcano 48 kilometres off the eastern coast of New Zealand’s North Island in the Bay of Plenty region. It represents the northern aspect of the Taupō volcanic zone and is New Zealand’s most active volcano with more than 30 phreato-magmatic and magmatic eruptions having occurred since 1826. It thus earns the full Māori name Te Puia o Whakaari – ‘The Dramatic Volcano’. Between eruptive events, Whakaari displays outgassing and fumarolic activity, typically occupying a volcanic alert level of 1-2 (minor unrest and moderate to heightened volcanic unrest respectively)9. Although the volcano rises 600-700 metres from the sea floor and spans 16 by 18 kilometres at its base, only 321 metres protrudes above sea level. The main crater structure is 30 metres above sea level and easily reached by boat from the mainland. Due to its activity and ease of access, Whakaari is a focus of geological research and since it was declared a private scenic reserve in 1953, attracts more than 10,000 tourists annually.

**THE EVENT ON 9 DECEMBER 2019**

The 2019 phreatic eruption was caused by an explosive decompression of heated, pressurised rock saturated with acidic volcanic fluids. The Whakaari hydrothermal system consists of hot fluids released as vapour from magma, mixed with groundwater and seawater ingress from above. Through this, magmatic fluids and gases (H₂O, CO₂, SO₂ (Sulfur dioxide), H₂S (Hydrogen Sulphide), NH₃ (Ammonia)) are expressed from magmatic outgassing and captured in solution9. This results in very high concentrations of acids: predominately Sulfuric (H₂SO₄) and Hydrochloric (HCl), but also Hydrofluoric (HF), Hydrobromic (HBr) and Hydroiodic (HI) acids in differing orders of magnitude. The pH of these fluids and the crater lake range from +1.6 to -1 depending on the flux of outgassing from the magma below9.

These fluids saturate the porous rock overlaying the magma and are heated to several hundred degrees celsius. When new magma intrudes into the subterranean structure it acts to “prime” the system as it is pressurised from magmatic heating below and the weight of rock from above, then sealed by the deposition of silica and hydrothermal minerals. In the Whakaari system, this is additionally capped with molten sulphur that increases in viscosity with heating, further thickening the seal and raising the pressure. In this state, it is estimated the rock-brine system is heated and pressurised to 200-300°C/6.5 MPa at a relatively shallow depth11.

The eruptive event occurred when a small change allowed disruption of the upper seal, resulting in liquid water explosively phase transitioning into water vapor. The liquid can increase to 1700 times its original volume and this expansion is supersonic in speed, producing a high-pressure decompression wavefront, followed by superheated steam. Rock saturated in the water fragments to ash and is ejected from the vent as high speed ballistics and explosively phase transitioning into water vapor. The liquid can increase to 1700 times its original volume and this results in very high concentrations of acids: predominantly Sulfuric (H₂SO₄) and Hydrochloric (HCl), but also Hydrofluoric (HF), Hydrobromic (HBr) and Hydroiodic (HI) acids in differing orders of magnitude. The pH of these fluids and the crater lake range from +1.6 to -1 depending on the flux of outgassing from the magma below.

The exact temperature as it impacted individuals is difficult to determine. There was minimal melting of tourist groups present at the time would have experienced differing thermal loads based on their distance from the vent and their position within the surge as the density and therefore temperatures are not homogeneous. The exact temperature as it impacted individuals is difficult to determine. There was minimal melting of the ash cloud.

The thermal energy of PDCs

The temperature of the 2019 Whakaari pyroclastic surge was at the lowest end of described PDCs. The eruptive process occurred at ≥250°C and, as the PDC flowed outwards, it was cooled by entrained air. The three tourist groups present at the time would have experienced differing thermal loads based on their distance from the vent and their position within the surge as the density and therefore temperatures are not homogeneous. The exact temperature as it impacted individuals is difficult to determine. There was minimal melting of the ash cloud.

Severe thermal injury can occur despite relatively “low” temperatures for a number of reasons. First, the radiative emissivity of a PDC is close to that of a black body and when engulfed, one is subject to a large surface area or “view factor” of exposure, which increases heat flux. Secondly, the convective heat transfer factor increases significantly due to the high velocity of the surge. Thirdly, ash has a very high heat capacity and a high water content, resulting in dramatic latent heat release when steam condenses on human tissue. Finally, a layer of adherent ash on skin provides conductive heat transfer causing ongoing thermal injury.

**Volcanic gases**

An individual enveloped in a PDC is also subject to high concentrations of volcanic gases derived from the underlying magma. These are predominately H₂O, CO₂, SO₂, and H₂S. Inhalation of these can be fatal, either through the anoxic environment created or; in the case of H₂S, which is a physiological chemical messenger, direct inhibition of respiratory centres and interruption of cellular respiration. Levels of >30% CO₂ or 900ppm of H₂S are considered to be rapidly fatal and as these gases are heavier than air, they can concentrate in low lying spaces4,17. It is noteworthy that some individuals who died on the island were found in low lying stream beds, which may indicate such gas asphyxiation.

**Acidic injury**

This episode revealed an acidic component to burn injuries not previously described in volcanic burn trauma. As noted above, the eruption generates a transient pressure wave followed by a steam flow and then a mixed gas and ash PDC. The steam, gas and ash all carry acids in aqueous and gaseous form from the hydrothermal system and in the case of Whakaari, an additional component of molten elemental sulphur. These can be inhaled and deposited on to cutaneous tissues resulting in tissue trauma and metabolic derangements, discussed in further detail below.
The PDC cloud travelled at approximately 10-15 ms\(^{-1}\), the groups had varying amounts of time to gain cover images. The ability to gain cover from full exposure to the surge appeared to impact the severity of injury. As locations were able to be estimated from patient histories and geolocation metadata from phone camera groups at the time of the eruption may have affected their outcomes.

There were 47 individuals on the island at the time of the eruption. Two tour groups, each comprising 19 tourists with two guides (Groups A and B), as well as a heli-tour group of four tourists and one guide (Group C). All had been supplied with activated charcoal respirators to minimise airway irritation from fumarele gases. Most individuals were dressed lightly given the seasonal conditions. We hypothesise that the position of each group at the time of the eruption may have affected their outcomes.

Locations were able to be estimated from patient histories and geolocation metadata from phone camera images. The ability to gain cover from full exposure to the surge appeared to impact the severity of injury. As the PDC cloud travelled at approximately 10-15 ms\(^{-1}\), the groups had varying amounts of time to gain cover depending on how far away from the vent they were and how visible the initial eruption was.

Group A was the closest to the vent at the time of the eruption, approximately 500 metres away in an exposed location between two low hills that acted to channel the surge as well as hide it from view until it was virtually upon them.

The severity of burn trauma in this group was much higher. Of the 21 people, eight died on the island and five died during transfer prior to being formally admitted to the hospital system. Most individuals were dressed lightly given the seasonal conditions. We hypothesise that the position of each group at the time of the eruption may have affected their outcomes.

Group B was able to extract themselves back to the wharf through hot ash deposits. This was about 1.5 km from the vent. Group C had moved to an effort to get underwater. Group A by comparison had more people severely injured and incapacitated. It appears that one of the guides attempted to ensure respirators were in place on their group and then go for help with two others, however only one managed to make it to the wharf.

At the time of the eruption there were two Whakaari tour boats located just offshore. Group B and C were evacuated quickly onto one of these boats, which contained participants from a previous tour. The heli-tour group (Group C) was evacuated in this manner as their helicopter was destroyed by the PDC. En route to Whakatane, first aid was provided by the previous tour group, including some off-duty health professionals, a medical student, and later paramedics.

The boat trip normally takes on average 80 minutes to cover the 48 kilometre journey. Of the 21 people in Group A, one who self-extricated to the wharf was evacuated by the second tour boat and 12 were evacuated by air within two hours of the eruption by the combined effort of three tour company helicopters. These casualties would have been lying in hot ash for a much longer time than groups B or C. The remaining eight people were either unresponsive when found by helicopter pilots or died before transport could occur. A co-ordinated recovery effort days after the eruption was able to retrieve the bodies of six of these victims.

The core tenants in burn first aid\(^{19}\) of arresting the burn process and providing cooling to the burn wound were challenging to achieve in many patients due to the geographical isolation and limited resources available. Despite these difficulties, we hypothesise that decontamination with water by first responders on the boats likely attenuated the depth and severity of both thermal and chemical injuries.

**INITIAL MASS CASUALTY MANAGEMENT**

A mass casualty incident locally and nationally was recognised within minutes of the eruption. Whakatane Hospital, the closest to Whakaari, is a small 96-bed regional centre with a modestly staffed 18-bed emergency department (inclusive of three resuscitation bays). The closest tertiary centre with a regional burn unit is Waikato Hospital, 188 kilometres away. Due to the large number of uninjured people from previous tour groups arriving by boat, operational stages were established at Whakatane Hospital, the local airfield and the wharf; the latter triaging almost 100 people. Seven patients at Whakatane wharf and one at the airfield required immediate airway management and were transferred directly to tertiary centres. The first evacuees arrived at Whakatane Hospital approximately two hours after the eruption. The Whakatane team, with the help of the local medical community and assistance from the national ambulance service, effectively triaged and stabilised 30 severely burn-injured patients prior to transfer. This was complicated and challenging not just because of the sudden demand on resources from multiple unwell patients but also the evolving physiological derangement seen far in excess of that typically found even with major burns. Many intubated patients required hand ventilation for a period of time as there were not enough ventilators. Institution of resuscitation measures and monitoring was difficult, as in many cases, the pelvic region and feet were the only non-burned areas.

There are three regional burn centres in New Zealand as well as one national centre located at Middlemore Hospital in Auckland. At the time of the eruption, the national burns unit was at 140 per cent capacity and had a full intensive care unit. To allow decanting of non-burn patients from the ICU, many patients from Whakatane were distributed evenly across regional burn centres in the country for initial management (as shown in Figure 2). At these regional centres, early primary debridements were conducted with temporary skin cover. Within the first respirators provided also developed significant inhalation injuries\(^{19}\). Three patients from Group B died on days six, 13 and 50 post-event for a total group mortality of 14 per cent. This is an order of magnitude lower than that described from previous PDC events and warrants further investigation as to the potential reasons. We postulate that this group was not exposed to the full force of the PDC, most likely due to their actions of taking shelter and the use of personal protective equipment such as respirators.

At approximately 1000 metres from the vent, close to the waterline, Group C was the furthest away when the PDC reached them, approximately 90 seconds after the eruption. Fortuitously three of five of these people were able to submerge themselves where the surge, in common with other low density PDCs, continued to flow over the surface of the water. They managed to remain submerged for the duration of the PDC passing overhead, estimated to be 30 seconds. The two who were unable to reach the shoreline in the time available were caught by the PDC without cover and received burns of 48 per cent and 58 per cent TBSA. One of these patients died several months post-injury following repatriation.

**RESCUE AND PRE-HOSPITAL MANAGEMENT**

Following the eruption, Group B was able to extract themselves back to the wharf through hot ash deposits. This was about 1.5 km from the vent. Group C had moved to an effort to get underwater. Group A by comparison had more people severely injured and incapacitated. It appears that one of the guides attempted to ensure respirators were in place on their group and then go for help with two others, however only one managed to make it to the wharf.

At the time of the eruption there were two Whakaari tour boats located just offshore. Group B and C were evacuated quickly onto one of these boats, which contained participants from a previous tour. The heli-tour group (Group C) was evacuated in this manner as their helicopter was destroyed by the PDC. En route to Whakatane, first aid was provided by the previous tour group, including some off-duty health professionals, a medical student, and later paramedics that intercepted the boat via the local coastguard. A chain of water was created from onboard tanks to the patients in an effort to cool and also decontaminate burn wounds. The boat trip normally takes on average 80 minutes to cover the 48 kilometre journey.
enhanced significantly by the presence of strong acids within the ash; predominantly H2SO4, HCl, and HF. This
resulted in rapid burn extension, severe metabolic derangement and later, inhalational involvement. Volcanic ash is at essence microscopic glass shards and in this state also coated with acidic residue. First responders to the island immediately after the eruption described very challenging conditions, with ash irritating mucous membranes and exposed skin despite protective clothing. Even in tertiary centres, ash coating patients continued to be an irritant to the airways and contacted skin of medical personnel. As a consequence, N95 particulate-filtering respirators were worn by staff during initial care and debridement procedures. Staff in resus continued to be an irritant to the airways and contacted skin of medical personnel. As a consequence, N95 particulate-filtering respirators were worn by staff during initial care and debridement procedures. Staff in resus

TERTIARY MANAGEMENT

Upon arrival to specialist burn centres it quickly became clear that there was burn wound evolution and physiological impairment out of proportion to the surface area burned. The thermal component of the burn was enhanced significantly by the presence of strong acids within the ash; predominantly H2SO4, HCl, and HF. This resulted in rapid burn extension, severe metabolic derangement and later, inhalational involvement. Volcanic ash is at essence microscopic glass shards and in this state also coated with acidic residue. First responders to the island immediately after the eruption described very challenging conditions, with ash irritating mucous membranes and exposed skin despite protective clothing. Even in tertiary centres, ash coating patients continued to be an irritant to the airways and contacted skin of medical personnel. As a consequence, N95 particulate-filtering respirators were worn by staff during initial care and debridement procedures. Staff in resus

Inhalation injury and the effect of respirators

Inhalation injury is well known to increase the risk of mortality in burn trauma. Given the nature of this eruption and the extent of the burns sustained by those exposed to the PDC it would have been expected that thermal and chemical inhalation injury was a prominent finding. Surprisingly the severity of thermal inhalation injury appeared to be minimal, especially in the context of the cutaneous injuries seen. Very little volcanic ash or blistering of lower airways was seen on bronchoscopy of patients on day zero. Inhalational toxicity typically has a delayed presentation (>24 hours), which was seen at Middlemore Hospital in two of 14 patients who developed severe Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome (ARDS) during the first week. The pathology in those with significant inhalation injury was thought to be caused mainly by aforementioned toxins in the PDC including elemental sulphur, SO2 and H2S. It is likely that the hydrogen halide acids such as HCl and HF were also involved in the inhalation injury, but in keeping with their TBSA injury.

This unusual metabolic milieu was presumed to be secondary to the effects of the strong acids coating the ash particles, which when brought into contact with patients’ skin resulted in systemic absorption and a degree of toxicity, from HF, H2SO4 and HCl in particular. Early ionic analysis of ash samples taken from four patients confirmed this with significant presence of sulphate, chloride, fluoride and bromide anions. Hydrofluoric acid (HF) is the inorganic acid of elemental fluorine and although HF burns are an unusual occurrence in clinical practice, they have been described in the industrial setting. Similar to other strong acids, corrosive tissue destruction can occur due to hydrogen ions, however, because of the low dissociation constant of HF the severity of injury through this mechanism is limited. The major mechanism of damage is through the effect of fluoride ions. HF is very lipophilic in nature allowing free fluoride ions to penetrate deeply into tissues and cause liquefactive necrosis. This differentiates it from other strong acids, which tend to cause tissue destruction via coagulation necrosis. Evidence of such deep tissue liquefaction was found in at least one patient during primary debridement. The metabolic consequences of fluoride toxicity from HF are significant, with deaths reported from as little as 2 per cent TBSA burns with concentrated solution. Fluoride ion liberation into deep tissues causes direct cellular toxicity and forms insoluble chelate salts with the major bivalent cations calcium and magnesium causing severe depletion if body stores cannot be mobilised fast enough. If the exposure is high, clinical manifestations are those of profound systemic hypocalcaemia and hypomagnesaemia and can include shock and cardiac arrhythmia. Depletion of cellular calcium causes inhibition of the sodium-potassium ATPase pump resulting in increased cellular permeability. Resultant localised hyperkalaemia along with other electrolyte shifts at nerve endings is thought to be the mechanism by which intense pain is experienced by those with HF burns. For refractory hypocalcaemia and hypomagnesaemia, haemodialysis and early burn wound excision is suggested to be beneficial. Sulfuric acid (H2SO4) is also thought to have contributed both to the systemic hypocalcaemia and extreme metabolic acidosis seen in multiple cases. With a pH ranging from 0.9-2.1, H2SO4 has a high dissociation constant and undergoes a vigorous exothermic reaction when it contacts water in human tissue. This results in rapid cellular dehydration and deep burns. In patients with the most profound acid-base disorders, most were persistently vasoplegic despite high dose vasopressor and inotrope therapy. It was found that, early in the primary debridement phase, both metabolic and physiological instability steadily improved as the burn tissue was excised from these patients. This is contrary to the course normally seen with an aggressive primary debridement, where the surgery tends to contribute transiently to the global inflammatory state.Correspondingly, primary debridement was expedited for these cases, adding to the surge in workload for regional burn centres in the first two weeks.

Inhalation injury and the effect of respirators

Inhalation injury is well known to increase the risk of mortality in burn trauma. Given the nature of this eruption and the extent of the burns sustained by those exposed to the PDC it would have been expected that thermal and chemical inhalation injury was a prominent finding. Surprisingly the severity of thermal inhalation injury appeared to be minimal, especially in the context of the cutaneous injuries seen. Very little volcanic ash or blistering of lower airways was seen on bronchoscopy of patients on day zero. Inhalational toxicity typically has a delayed presentation (>24 hours), which was seen at Middlemore Hospital in two of 14 patients who developed severe Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome (ARDS) during the first week. The pathology in those with significant inhalation injury was thought to be caused mainly by aforementioned toxins in the PDC including elemental sulphur, SO2 and H2S. It is likely that the hydrogen halide acids such as HCl and HF were also involved in the inhalation injury, but in keeping with their TBSA injury.

This unusual metabolic milieu was presumed to be secondary to the effects of the strong acids coating the ash particles, which when brought into contact with patients’ skin resulted in systemic absorption and a degree of toxicity, from HF, H2SO4 and HCl in particular. Early ionic analysis of ash samples taken from four patients confirmed this with significant presence of sulphate, chloride, fluoride and bromide anions. Hydrofluoric acid (HF) is the inorganic acid of elemental fluorine and although HF burns are an unusual occurrence in clinical practice, they have been described in the industrial setting. Similar to other strong acids, corrosive tissue destruction can occur due to hydrogen ions, however, because of the low dissociation constant of HF the severity of injury through this mechanism is limited. The major mechanism of damage is through the effect of fluoride ions. HF is very lipophilic in nature allowing free fluoride ions to penetrate deeply into tissues and cause liquefactive necrosis. This differentiates it from other strong acids, which tend to cause tissue destruction via coagulation necrosis. Evidence of such deep tissue liquefaction was found in at least one patient during primary debridement. The metabolic consequences of fluoride toxicity from HF are significant, with deaths reported from as little as 2 per cent TBSA burns with concentrated solution. Fluoride ion liberation into deep tissues causes direct cellular toxicity and forms insoluble chelate salts with the major bivalent cations calcium and magnesium causing severe depletion if body stores cannot be mobilised fast enough. If the exposure is high, clinical manifestations are those of profound systemic hypocalcaemia and hypomagnesaemia and can include shock and cardiac arrhythmia. Depletion of cellular calcium causes inhibition of the sodium-potassium ATPase pump resulting in increased cellular permeability. Resultant localised hyperkalaemia along with other electrolyte shifts at nerve endings is thought to be the mechanism by which intense pain is experienced by those with HF burns. For refractory hypocalcaemia and hypomagnesaemia, haemodialysis and early burn wound excision is suggested to be beneficial. Sulfuric acid (H2SO4) is also thought to have contributed both to the systemic hypocalcaemia and extreme metabolic acidosis seen in multiple cases. With a pH ranging from 0.9-2.1, H2SO4 has a high dissociation constant and undergoes a vigorous exothermic reaction when it contacts water in human tissue. This results in rapid cellular dehydration and deep burns. In patients with the most profound acid-base disorders, most were persistently vasoplegic despite high dose vasopressor and inotrope therapy. It was found that, early in the primary debridement phase, both metabolic and physiological instability steadily improved as the burn tissue was excised from these patients. This is contrary to the course normally seen with an aggressive primary debridement, where the surgery tends to contribute transiently to the global inflammatory state. Correspondingly, primary debridement was expedited for these cases, adding to the surge in workload for regional burn centres in the first two weeks.

Inhalation injury and the effect of respirators

Inhalation injury is well known to increase the risk of mortality in burn trauma. Given the nature of this eruption and the extent of the burns sustained by those exposed to the PDC it would have been expected that thermal and chemical inhalation injury was a prominent finding. Surprisingly the severity of thermal inhalation injury appeared to be minimal, especially in the context of the cutaneous injuries seen. Very little volcanic ash or blistering of lower airways was seen on bronchoscopy of patients on day zero. Inhalational toxicity typically has a delayed presentation (>24 hours), which was seen at Middlemore Hospital in two of 14 patients who developed severe Acute Respiratory Distress Syndrome (ARDS) during the first week. The pathology in those with significant inhalation injury was thought to be caused mainly by aforementioned toxins in the PDC including elemental sulphur, SO2 and H2S. It is likely that the hydrogen halide acids such as HCl and HF were also involved in the inhalation injury, but in keeping with their TBSA injury.

All people on the island had been issued with half face respirators utilising activated charcoal filters in order to mitigate irritation from fumarole gases. Indeed, individual accounts from survivors described it being very difficult to breathe during and after the surge without the respirators. It is not expected that these respirators would provide complete protection in the event of exposure to a PDC, however we believe that the ability to use them may have reduced the risk and severity of inhalation injury in survivors. From multiple accounts, the force of the surge displaced their respirators, which then had to be donned again where possible. It seems that many in Group A who were incapacitated were unable to replace these. At least one Group B patient who was unable to re-don their respirator, later went on to develop ARDS requiring a prolonged ICU course, out of keeping with their TBSA injury.

Unlike previous pyroclastic events such as Mount Saint Helens, USA and Unzen, Japan, where subjects captured in the flow were asphyxiated by ash clogging their tracheal and bronchial airways, there was little to no evidence of ash deposits in the airways past the larynx in patients from this event. This may have been due to respirator use and also clumping of fine ash particles in the steam rich surge, thus reducing the likelihood of inhalation.
Ballistics
Ballistics are large ejected clasts and account for approximately 40 per cent of injuries (many carrying a high mortality) within a five-kilometre distance from eruptive vents. Overall, there were relatively few ballistic injuries seen, particularly in Groups B and C, which may again reflect the distance from the vent and ability to gain shelter. In Group A patients managed at Middlemore Hospital, one presented with a scapula fracture and another with deep confusion presumed to be from ballistic injury. Information regarding ballistic injury in wider Group A fatalities and survivors is currently unavailable pending forensic findings.

Prevention and management of infection
The tank water on board the tour boat that was used to cool and decontaminate patients was, although effective in mitigating the severity of burns in many cases, thought to be colonised with some unusual microorganisms. Chryseobacterium Indologenes and Elizabethkingia miricola were identified in the burn sites in at least three patients in Group B. Having originally been isolated in a condensation tank on the space station Mir, E. Miricola is often found in fresh water tanks and both organisms have intrinsic resistance to a wide array of antibiotics.29 Whakaari could improve this.

So there is little chance for reflection on the medical management of extreme cases. Nevertheless, there have been lessons that can be learned from this event into historical context. High temperature PDC events such as that at Herculaneum are unsurvivable, and the volcanic origin and extent of the burning effect may have prolonged the normal physiological derangement. From a geological perspective, this was a small eruption but unique with regard to the presence of people close to the eruptive vent and more importantly the ability to gain shelter determined the heat flux experienced, with many in Group A fatalities and survivors suffering less severe trauma than those in Group A. The Whakaari tour guides were well trained and decisively instructed individuals to take cover and wear the provided respirators. We hypothesise that the use of respirators reduced the incidence and severity of inhalation injury.

In Group A patients in Whakaari there were fatalities and survivors. There were many fatalities in this group, and it is not possible to differentiate between the extent of injury caused by explosive and non-explosive mechanisms.

In this event, the use of respirators was considered a key element in the prevention and mitigation of severe infection in this group of patients.

Tertiary level organisation and resource demand
On the surface it would be reasonable to assume that 31 patients distributed among four specialist burn centres, with almost half being repatriated to Australia in the first week, would allow a manageable workload. However, the severity, complexity and relentless evolution of burn injuries made it more challenging than anticipated for these centres during this month. To use the National Burns Unit at Middlemore Hospital as an example, intensive care patients were decanted to other Auckland units and major elective surgeries were deferred with even some acute procedures being diverted to local area hospitals. Normally this unit runs a burn list three times per week. Over the first two weeks at Middlemore, across three theatres, there were a total of 187 hours allocated in which 101 cases were performed. Of which, 22 involved anaesthetic time, which was not included initially in order to stabilise transfer and establish invasive monitoring, clean lines and jejunal feeding tubes. One theatre was running constantly for the first 60 hours, due to the emerging necessity for early and aggressive debridement to mitigate burn evolution and physiological derangement. The human resource required to achieve and maintain this was enormous. If operating theatre minutes is used as a metric, this event was equivalent to six months of work over the space of three months, with the majority occurring in the first month.

CONCLUSION
While it is very unfortunate that there was human presence on Whakaari at the time of this eruption, the overall mortality (47 per cent) and in particular the in-hospital mortality (29 per cent) was much lower than previously reported events. There are a number of potential factors contributing to this. The proximity of groups to the eruptive vent and the ability to gain shelter determined the extent of burn experienced. Many individuals in Groups B and C suffering less severe trauma than those in Group A. The Whakaari tour guides were well trained and decisively instructed individuals to take cover and wear the provided respirators. We hypothesise that the use of respirators reduced the incidence and severity of inhalation injury.

Many patients rescued by boat received early cooling and decontamination, which anecdotally resulted in attenuation of the thermal and potentially chemical component of their burn injury. Early and effective application of severe burn management principles at Whakatane followed by expeditious transfer to burn centres was a strong positive contributor to the low mortality rates seen. At a tertiary level, early recognition and management of the metabolic sequelae unique to these burn injuries is thought to have had a positive effect on outcome and this has previously not been appreciated in the management of volcanic burn trauma.

From a geological perspective, this was a small eruption but unique with regard to the presence of people close to the vent. Even more unusual, individuals caught in a hot, fast moving pyroclastic surge were able to modify their exposure in a way that improved survivability in a manner not previously described. It is important to put this event into historical context. High temperature PDC events such as that at Herculaneum are unsurvivable, so there is little chance for reflection on the medical management of extreme cases. Nevertheless, there have been a number of recorded episodes where people on the periphery of a PDC have survived and learnings from Whakaari could improve this.

We sincerely hope that an event such as this never happens again, however it is likely that human contact with volcanic hazards will occur in the future. Worldwide, many human habitations are located on the fertile soils of volcanoes; volcanic trauma therefore continues to be an international risk. In New Zealand, particularly Auckland and the Taupō volcanic zone, there are many sites that are heavily populated or remain popular tourist and recreational destinations. Many of these volcanoes have similar potential for unheralded eruptions with fluoride-rich geochemistry. As has been seen in the Tarawera/Okataina eruption in recorded history, as well as Taupō and Rotorua prehistoric events, eruptive events of international significance have and will again occur in New Zealand.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS
The better than expected survival rate from this event could not have been possible without the bravery and combined effort of everyone involved ranging from civilian first responders to pre-hospital and specialist centre staff. It is difficult to describe in the words of this article the remarkable effort by Whakatane Hospital and its community through a truly impressive mobilisation of stretched local resources during a reputation for such already, they showed incredible resilience as a team in the face of a very overwhelming situation. At the same time, it is important to acknowledge the psychological trauma that many people involved have and continue to experience.

Similar credit should be given to the actions of non-medical individuals on 9 December 2019. In the opinion of the authors, the leadership displayed by tour guides during the event, maximised the survivability of their clients. The actions of a variety of people on the boat back to the mainland allowed basic, yet very effective, first aid principles to be implemented. Too often we forget the significance of simple but timely interventions applied effectively at the earliest opportunity.

This event would have overwhelmed the resources of the New Zealand burn service if it were not for the collegiality displayed with our Australian colleagues, who again displayed our close alignment and willingness to support each other, despite their own local demands following the bush fires of 2019.

As deeply affected as health professionals were by this event, we recognise that this pales in comparison to the trauma experienced by patients and their families. Our thoughts are with them all.

The authors would like to thank the following individuals for their assistance in reviewing this manuscript:

• Professor Shane Cronin, Professor of Vulcanology, Faculty of Science, University of Auckland, NZ.
• Mr Paul Baker, Plastic, Reconstructive and Burns Surgeon, Middlemore Hospital, Auckland, NZ.
• Dr Francois Stapelberg, Specialist Anaesthetist, Middlemore Hospital and Chair, ANZBA Education Committee.

REFERENCES
7. Letham-Brake M. Geological constraints on fluid flow at Whakaaeri volcano (White Island); Masters degree thesis; University of Canterbury; 2013
INTRODUCTION

Commercial planes operate at a cruising altitude of 30,000 to 40,000 feet, with cabins required to be pressurised to an altitude of between 5000 to 8000 feet11,13. According to Boyle’s Law, the volume of gas occupies inversely proportional to its surrounding pressure. Thus, in a cabin pressurised to 8000 feet, there is a 30 percent increase in gas volume within enclosed spaces, which can impact physiological and non-physiological gas-containing spaces within passengers11. In the healthy passenger this may result in abdominal pain, chest pain, fatigue, and uncertainty around the legal and ethical obligations of the physician volunteer10-12. Doctors are estimated to provide assistance to between 45-55 percent of all in-flight medical emergencies (IME). The true incidence of IMEs is difficult to accurately measure because of the limitations in reporting systems1,2,3. Studies typically focus on individual airlines and tend to be retrospective. The best available estimates suggest rates between 16 to 130 IMEs per million passengers. This translates to between 68 000 and 59 000 IMEs worldwide annually. A recent retrospective review of a large Australian airline demonstrated one IME for every 40 flights4-7.

The International Air Transport Association (IATA) suggests that in the event of a serious injury or illness during flight, the second step, after calling ground based medical support (GBMS), should be to “solicit the aid of a volunteer such as a physician”8. Doctors are estimated to provide assistance to between 45-55 per cent of passengers experiencing an IME1,4,5,7,9. Providing medical assistance during flights can be a stressful experience, even for experienced physicians10. Ergonomic and human factor issues contribute to challenging patient management at 35,000 feet. Additional stressors include the logistical difficulties of treating a patient in a cramped airplane environment, the distance to any advanced ground based medical services, language barriers, fatigue, and uncertainty around the legal and ethical obligations of the physician volunteer10-15.

PATHOPHYSIOLOGICAL IMPLICATIONS OF FLIGHT

Commercial planes operate at a cruising altitude of 30,000 to 40,000 feet, with cabins required to be pressurised to an altitude of between 5000 to 8000 feet11,13. According to Boyle’s Law, the volume that a gas occupies is inversely proportional to its surrounding pressure. Thus, in a cabin pressurised to 8000 feet, there is a 30 per cent increase in gas volume within enclosed spaces, which can impact physiological and non-physiological gas-containing spaces within passengers11. In the healthy passenger this may result in abdominal or middle ear discomfort and occasionally tympanic perforation11. It is a more significant issue in those having had recent surgical procedures, or with air-filled medical devices in situ, such as cuffed tracheostomy tubes, urinary catheters and enteral feeding tubes. To prevent rupture secondary to expanding air, the cuffs should, if not contra-indicated, be filled with water during the flight13. Most commercial airlines have strict guidance for travel following surgery, and the British Civil Aviation Authority recommends delaying travel following ophthalmic, gastrointestinal and neurosurgical procedures (along with others) to avoid the risk of pathological gas expansion14,15. A history of recent pneumothorax, cystic lung disease or chronic pneumothorax puts the passenger at risk of flight-related pneumothorax15.

At a cabin pressure of 8000 feet there is a decrease in the arterial oxygen partial pressure from 95mmHg to 60mmHg, with a reduction in passengers mean arterial oxygen saturation from 97 per cent to 93 per cent11,12. While this is not likely to represent a significant issue in the healthy passenger, it could have a significant impact on the passenger with pre-existing cardio-pulmonary disease. Conditions such as chronic obstructive pulmonary disease
(COPD), pulmonary hypertension, valvular heart disease, coronary artery disease and sickle cell anaemia can all be exacerbated by systemic hypoxia. In patients with pre-existing cardiopulmonary disease The British Thoracic Society currently recommends a hypoxic challenge (FiO2 0.15 for 20 minutes followed by an arterial blood gas) as a screening tool for identifying patients who may require supplemental oxygen in-flight20. There is a well-documented association between long-haul (more than eight-hour duration) air travel and venous thromboembolism (VTE)20. There is a strong link between prolonged immobility and the development of VTE, with passengers seated in aisle seats having a demonstrably lower risk than those in non-aisle seats21. Individual risk factors such as obesity, the oral contraceptive pill and hypercoagulable states also place an individual at elevated risk. VTE symptoms are usually experienced after the flight has completed. However, passengers on long flights, or those with multiple legs and short stop overs, are a risk of developing symptoms during the flight itself20,29.

The risk of communicable diseases on flights has been brought into sharp relief by the coronavirus pandemic. Close proximity to multiple individuals for a prolonged period of time potentially exposes individuals to infectious diseases of all natures. Outbreaks of tuberculosis, SARS and influenza have all been reported aboard aircraft13. There is limited evidence to quantify the risk of infectious disease transmission during commercial flights. Available data would suggest that the risk is greatest if the ventilation system becomes non-operational and if sitting within two rows of an infectious individual for more than eight hours24.

ETHICAL AND LEGAL CONSIDERATIONS

The authors would argue that all doctors have an ethical duty to attend a request for medical assistance and render care that they are qualified to provide. The Medical Council of New Zealand (MCNZ) states that:

“If asked to attend a medical emergency . . . a doctor must respond. This is both an ethical and legal obligation . . . . If a doctor chooses not to attend he or she may be required to defend that decision in the event of a charge of professional misconduct or criminal prosecution”26.

The Australian standpoint, outlined in clause 3.5 of “Good Medical Practice”, is slightly more ambiguous:

“Good medical practice involves offering assistance in an emergency that takes account of your own safety, your skills, the availability of other options and the impact on any other patients under your care . . .”24.

The Good Samaritan Law in Australia ensures physicians who have volunteered their skills during an emergency are not liable. However, this does not exempt them if their interventions are proven to be demonstrably negligent, impaired or intentionally harmful27. The MCNZ also specifically acknowledge that “there are situations where a doctor . . . should not attend a medical emergency”. This includes having drunk alcohol, taken “substances to a level that may adversely influence the doctor’s level of competence”and “excessive fatigue”25.

The legalities surrounding the provision of medical services during an international flight are complex. Before offering assistance, a medical volunteer should consider if they are impaired in any way. A volunteer could be subject to the laws of the country that the plane is registered in, the country of destination and/or the country the plane was flying over at the time. However, to date there are no reports of individual physicians being found liable for assisting an unwell traveler26. Additionally, if an airline requests medical assistance it will normally comply with the ground-based recommendation31.

RESOURCES AND LOGISTICS

A commercial plane can be considered an unfamiliar, isolated and resource scarce environment to the volunteer offering medical assistance. However, flight medical kits, aircrew training and the availability of ground based medical support (GBMS) provide options for support that can be utilised.

Medical equipment and staff training

A doctor can request access to the on-board medical kit when attending an IME. Despite the lack of an international standard for commercial aircraft, the International Air Transport Association (IATA) has published a manual of recommended medical equipment (in addition to a basic first aid kit) to be carried on board all passenger carrying flights (see Table 1). Most major carriers will have such a kit on board. Variations can be expected between airlines and with domestic and regional aircraft. The carriage of an automated external defibrillator (AED) is determined by each airline, but they are frequently carried on board and may be deployed. There will be emergency oxygen bottles on board, but amounts vary. They are usually limited to providing flows between 2-4 L/min13,14.

It is reasonable to expect cabin crew to be trained in basic first aid, cardio-pulmonary resuscitation (CPR) and the operation of any AED on board27. In New Zealand the flight attendants can link with GBMS and offer further interventions including the administration of sublingual glyceryl trinitrate (GTN), inhaled salbutamol and epinephrine autoinjectors. Aircrew can also be used as translators and offer logistical advice, including identifying the best locations to treat an individual and how to move incapacitated passengers from their mid-row seats28.

Table 1. IATA recommended equipment and drugs for a medical emergency kit

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Equipment/Drugs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sphygmomanometer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stethoscope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oropharyngeal airways</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syringes and needles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV cannulae and giving set</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antiseptic wipes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tourniquet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sharps disposal box</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gloves, surgical mask</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Urinary catheter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tape and gauge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emergency tracheal catheter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Umbilical cord clamp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thermometer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Torch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bag-valve mask</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Ground-based medical support

Most modern airlines are supported by a dedicated ground based medical support service11. The flight crew will often have contacted GBMS prior to asking for medical assistance8,11. They are third parties who specialise in the provision of advice for in-flight medical emergencies and will provide advice to the cabin crew, pilot and on-board medical volunteer. Should a conflict arise between the GBMS and the medical volunteer the crew will usually comply with the ground-based recommendation31.

Logistics

Getting access to the patient may be a challenge, particularly if they are not in an aisle seat. Working as a team with the cabin crew and utilising their knowledge is key. If the patient is conscious and in an aisle seat, then the safest approach would be to make the initial assessment in situ. Cabin crew assistance with moving other passengers to access patients in middle or window seats may be required. Were they to require further assessment, procedures or ongoing monitoring then it may be appropriate to find a seat with more space, in an exit row, a different class, or by moving to the galley.

In the case of the unconscious patient a rapid ABCD assessment will enable a decision as to the most appropriate action. In the case of a presumed syncopal episode, lying the passenger down on empty seats is possibly the most straightforward way of achieving a supine position. If further access is required for any reason, it is recommended that the person be moved to an exit aisle or the galley, even if that involves a distance of several metres29,30. Exactly how this is achieved will be context dependent and the expertise of the cabin crew can often be relied upon. Techniques used by the aircrew may be familiar to the volunteer anaesthetist. This could include the use of a blanket and bystander passengers acting as orderlies to carry the patient to a more ergonomic area.

An unconscious patient in a toilet provides another logistical challenge. Cabin crew will have protocols to access the patient and working with them to gain access to the patient is crucial. Assessment and treatment should proceed once the patient is outside of the toilet cubicle.
A paucity of guidance is available regarding the optimal management of an unconscious morbidly obese individual during an IME. The safety of the aircrew and the volunteers needs to be considered if moving the patient is attempted.

**Documentation**

Documentation of IMEs has been shown to be highly variable across airlines. The IATA recommends that events during IMEs are documented completely by cabin crew and any responding medical professional. Complete documentation is not only part of good medical practice, but it will also aid any ground based medical services in making a thorough assessment and be important if there were to be any subsequent legal issues. It is recommended that the medical volunteer documents the whole event on the form provided by the airline and keeps their own copy.

**DIVERSION**

Diversions in this context describes changing the landing destination of the flight due to an IME. It requires consideration of both medical and operational issues and may be the cause of some stress to the volunteer physician.

From a physician’s standpoint a plane is an unfamiliar environment in which to manage a medical emergency. The medical benefit of diversion needs to be assessed on the basis of the differential diagnoses, the patient’s physiological status, the ability to stabilise the patient with the available resources, and the potential time savings gained by diverting to an alternative airport.

Operational issues, which are myriad, could rightfully be expected to be outside the knowledge of the medical volunteer. The weather, potential diversion destinations, the type of medical facilities available there, the distance to them and the time saved by diverting there, all demand consideration. Additionally, long-haul flights often carry more fuel at take-off than is safe to land with. Therefore, a diversion may require the dumping of significant amounts of fuel into the atmosphere, with financial and ecological implications. Other costs are also factored into the decision-making process. A simple diversion has been estimated to cost an airline anywhere from $US30,000–725,000.

Diverting an aircraft for an IME is an uncommon occurrence. Epstein et al reports only 21 flight diversions out of 131,890 total flights, which corresponds to less than 1 per cent of all reported IMEs. Other large studies report slightly higher diversion rates of 2.8 per cent and 7.3 per cent.

**SPECIFIC MEDICAL EMERGENCIES**

Quantifying the overall incidence and nature of IMEs is difficult. The relevant studies are usually retrospective, with no centralised or standardised reporting system. Diagnoses are often drawn from incomplete and highly variable documentation, or the reports of non-medically trained cabin crew. Additionally, only a small number of all passengers are subsequently treated by ground based medical services, and even fewer are transported to hospital, compounding the difficulty in confirming specific diagnoses. With these challenges in obtaining reliable diagnostic information, many IMEs are classified by symptomology rather than presumed causative pathology. Table 2 outlines the most common causes of an IME found by a retrospective review of more than 11,000 calls to a ground based medical service (GBMS) between 2008 and 2010.

**Syncope**

Syncope is reported to be the cause of an IME in 37 per cent to 52 per cent of cases. It can be benign or the result of serious underlying pathology. The patient is likely to initially look pale and clammy, be bradycardic with a tachy pulse.

**Syncope or presyncope**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Number (%)</th>
<th>Diversion (%)</th>
<th>Admitted to hospital (%)</th>
<th>Death (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All</td>
<td>11,920</td>
<td>875 (7.3)</td>
<td>901 (8.6)</td>
<td>36 (&lt;0.1%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Respiratory</td>
<td>1447 (12.1)</td>
<td>81 (5.6)</td>
<td>141 (10.6)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nausea or vomiting</td>
<td>1137 (9.5)</td>
<td>56 (4.9)</td>
<td>61 (6.1)</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cardiac</td>
<td>920 (77)</td>
<td>169 (18.4)</td>
<td>162 (21.0)</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seizures</td>
<td>689 (5.8)</td>
<td>83 (12.0)</td>
<td>75 (12.5)</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 2. Top five In-flight medical emergencies by category and outcome**

Typical humidity levels in airliners are around 2 per cent and dehydroxy secondary to the recirculation of air is common. This is likely to be compounded by the mildly hypoxic environment, long periods of immobility, alcohol consumption and fatigue. Lying the syncopal patient down, either across seats or in the aisle, and elevating their legs, may be sufficient to improve the situation. Supplemental oxygen and oral or intravenous fluids may also be appropriate. Failure to rapidly improve should trigger consideration of other, potentially more serious causes.

**Neurological**

Neurological symptoms are fortunately uncommon. Seizures, stroke and headache make up less than 9 per cent of all IMEs. Self-resolving seizures with rapid recovery will usually require no further intervention except simple monitoring. Any previous history should be sought and adherence to anti-seizure medications ascertained. It may be appropriate to administer the patient’s own medication if they have missed a dose while travelling.

The management of someone who does not regain consciousness revolves around an initial airway, breathing and circulation assessment with provision of supplemental oxygen. A collateral history should be sought, as this may represent a post-ictal phase with recovery over time to be expected. Liaison with GBMS should be initiated early to consider options if consciousness does not recover. Multiple seizures, the development of status epilepticus or acute stroke symptoms and signs should prompt and rapid consideration of diversion as treatment options on a flight are extremely limited.

Hypoglycaemia can present with a diverse range of symptoms including seizure. It can be easily excluded with a capillary glucometer, which may be present in the plane’s medical kit. An alternative would be to ask other passengers for a glucometer that could be borrowed. Medical alert bracelets can be helpful in this scenario and should be look for. Hypoglycaemia should be managed with oral or intravenous glucose as clinically appropriate.

**Respiratory**

The hypoxia associated with flying places patients with pre-existing cardiopulmonary conditions at risk of acute hypoxia. Approximately 12 per cent of all IMEs have been classified as having a respiratory basis. Consideration should be given to the underlying pathology. Provision of supplemental oxygen may be of benefit, but with the knowledge that the plane will only have a finite supply. Use of the lowest possible flow rate would be advisable and a calculation of the available oxygen supply may help to guide diversion decisions.

Bronchodilators are likely to be available in the medical kit if required. Decompression of a suspected pneumothorax would be indicated in the deteriorating patient and if within the clinician’s competence level.
in extremis, and as a temporising measure, the medical volunteer could also request lowering of the flights altitude to reduce the impact of hypoxaemia.45

**Trauma**

Blunt force trauma or scalds from hot beverages are not uncommon on commercial aircraft.45.46 Most are amenable to treatment using the first aid kit aboard all aircraft although consideration should always be given to the nature of the injury and its effect on that particular passenger. Some patients require a heightened level of concern, such as the elderly anticoagulated passenger who has had a heavy bag fall on their head. Frequent re-assessment, liaison with the cabin crew and consideration of a diversion may be appropriate if there were to be a clinical deterioration in such a case.45

**Psychiatric**

Approximately 3 per cent of all IME reported are due to either psychiatric conditions or acute intoxication.45-47 They can be difficult to manage, cause distress to other passengers and pose significant safety issues.45.46 The responding physician should remain aware that organic pathology, such as hypoglycaemia or hypoxia, could be the cause of the symptoms. Conversely, acute severe anxiety, can also mimic a variety of physical symptoms such as chest pain and shortness of breath.

Anxiety can often be managed with simple calming measures and reassurance. Medical kits are unlikely to contain sedatives however administration of the patients own anxiolytic medications may be helpful. If simple de-escalation measures fail, then advice from GBMS to ensure the safety of the plane, crew and all passengers should be sought.44

**Obstetric**

Obstetric emergencies in flight can be extremely distressing for everyone involved. The medical volunteer is unlikely to have significant training in this area of medicine and the parent(s) are likely to be extremely anxious. Fortunately, they only constitute approximately 0.7 per cent of all IMEs.45 More than 60 per cent of cases involve pregnant women of less than 24 weeks gestation with signs of miscarriage.45 Flying beyond 36 weeks’ gestation for single pregnancies, or 32 weeks for multiple, is not recommended by airlines. There is little that the responding medical volunteer can practically offer except monitoring of vital signs and providing reassurance. Any concerns from the responding medical volunteer should prompt a call to GBMS.45

**Allergic reaction**

Two to four per cent of all IMEs are allergic reactions, but fortunately they are rarely serious.11,45 A history of serious allergy or medical alert bracelet should prompt a request for the medical kit and identification and removal of the allergen from the area. Epinephrine should be available in the medical kit and cabin crew may be trained to administer intra-muscular doses via an autoinjector.11

**Paediatric**

Paediatric cases contribute to between 9.15 to 15 per cent of all IMEs.45.46-47 While they can suffer from any of the symptoms described for adults, the burden of significant pre-morbid conditions in children is significantly lower and the frequency of presenting complaints reflects that. A recent large retrospective study found that the most common IMEs in children were nausea and vomiting (33.9 per cent), fever or chills (22.2 per cent), allergic (5.5 per cent), abdominal pain, (4.7 per cent) gastroenteritis (4.5 per cent) and syncope (3.5 per cent).45.46 Secure and dyspnoea are leading causes of medical diversion for paediatric medical events.45 The physician’s kit should be requested but obtaining a collateral history and administering the patient’s own medication may be the most effective treatment available.

**Cardiac arrest**

Cardiac arrest accounts for 0.3 per cent of all IMEs but 86 per cent of all in flight deaths.11,45 Up to 31 per cent of in-flight cardiac arrests have VF or VT as the first recorded rhythm and appropriate early defibrillation has resulted in survival to hospital discharge rates of 50 per cent.45.46 There have been no documented survivors if the rhythm is initially asystole or idioventricular.45,46 When attending a passenger in cardiac arrest, the medical volunteer should immediately request the AED, apply it as soon as possible and utilise standard basic life support (BLS) principles. If an AED is available, then you can expect at least one member of the cabin crew to be trained in its use.45.46 It may be appropriate for the AED to be applied and utilised with the patient in their seat if there has been no opportunity to move them safely. Expert providers can utilise advanced resuscitation equipment and skills, remembering that early effective CPR and defibrillation of a shockable rhythm remain the only interventions proven to improve survival rates.45

Access to the patient may be difficult and the first priority should be to move them to a flat area with enough room to effectively provide CPR and attach an AED. Consensus guidelines produced in 2018 suggest that

the galley is the most appropriate place to perform CPR however, the aisle could be utilised, with cardiac compressions performed from overhead.48 Any decisions around the cessation of CPR should be made in co-operation with the medical volunteer, GBMS and the captain, who has the ultimate responsibility for the safety of the aircraft. It is likely that the captain will request a temporary cessation of resuscitation efforts during the very final phases of landing (for example, the final 1000 feet of descent until the aircraft vacates the runway), to ensure that cabin crew and any passengers assisting are safely restrained in their seats during this critical phase of flight.

International consensus guidelines suggest that if ROSC has not been achieved within 20-30 minutes, with no reversible causes identified, then it would be reasonable to cease resuscitation.11 The IATA 2018 guidelines suggest that CPR should be continued until one of the following criteria are met:

1. Spontaneous breathing and circulation resume; or

2. It becomes unsafe to continue CPR (for example, moderate and severe turbulence and/or forecasted difficult landing after liaising with the flight crew); or

3. All rescuers are too exhausted to continue; or

4. The aircraft has landed and care is transferred to emergency medical services; or

5. The person is presumed dead: if CPR has been continued for 30 minutes or longer with no signs of life within this period, and no shocks advised by an on board Automated External Defibrillator (AED), the person may be presumed dead, and resuscitation ceased.45

What to do following cessation of resuscitation efforts depends on the airline’s policy, and it is best to defer to cabin crew on this matter. Diversion once resuscitation efforts have ceased is not recommended.45 It would potentially impact on crew and passenger safety, there is no medical benefit to be gained from landing sooner, and the deceased’s body will potentially need to be repatriated to the original destination regardless. Table 3 outlines the suggestions from the IATA as to the next actions. Cabin crew should be aware of this protocol.11,45

**Table 3. Guidelines for management of a deceased passenger during flight**

Adapted from IATA guidelines.45

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Advise the captain immediately.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Put the deceased in a body bag (if available) or cover with a blanket up to the neck.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Move the deceased to a seat – if available, one with few other passengers nearby.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Restrain the deceased with seat belt or other equipment.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Request contact information from travelling companions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>Disembark other passengers first and make sure the family members stay with the body.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>Do not disembark the body until the proper local authority has arrived.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Flight crew are unable to declare an individual deceased. A volunteer doctor could pronounce death however it is suggested that the volunteer leave formal pronouncement to attending ground crew on landing.45 There is no international law or consensus which details the applicability of a Do Not Resuscitate (DNR) order being presented to the cabin crew or medical volunteer by relatives or friends. The volunteer needs to make a decision they feel is in the best interests of the patient based on the information they have at the time. If they decline to perform CPR it is possible that cabin crew may disagree and attempt resuscitation, which may include calling for an alternative medical professional.48

**CONCLUSION**

Flight places a number of unique physiological stresses upon the human body. As the number of people flying is increasing, so is the likelihood of one of the readers of this article being asked to attend an in-flight medical event. Table 4 outlines the steps a volunteer could take when responding to a request for assistance. The majority of in-flight medical events will be of a non-serious nature or exacerbations of chronic conditions, which can be managed with the on-board medical kit, advice from ground-based medical services and without requiring diversion. Assuming you are not impaired, it could be considered an ethical obligation to render what medical aid you can if requested to do so.
The effective management of human factors has been well documented as being crucial to successfully negotiating an anesthesia crisis. Similar parallels can be drawn between the management of IMEs and emergencies in the operating room, making teamwork, communication and the maintenance of situational awareness, key to successful resolution of an IME. The role of the medical volunteer is to utilise expert knowledge, provide advice to the cabin crew and pilot, liaise within the GBMS, and to undertake interventions within their individual scope of practice.

An in-depth understanding of physiology and the pathophysiological implications of altitude, recent resuscitation skills and the awareness of the importance of human factors during crisis management mean the volunteer anaesthetist is well equipped to deal with medical emergencies on commercial flights. Table 4. Suggested actions for attending an in-flight medical emergency

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Assess the situation and determine if an emergency is taking place.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Identify the individual in distress and assess their level of consciousness.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Ask for help from other crew members and alert the relevant authorities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Begin CPR if necessary and activate the emergency response system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>If the flight is not in a hospital zone, arrange for a medical evacuation.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Make accurate notes on the airlines documentation and keep a copy yourself.

REFERENCES

19. Sand Μ, Gambichler Τ, Sand D, Mann B. Surgical and medical emergencies on board European aircraft: A retrospective study of 10169 cases. Critical Care. 2009 Jan 20;13(1).
Education

NetworkZ: A multi-disciplinary team training initiative aiming to reduce unintended harm from surgery
Jennifer M Weller, Jennifer Long, Alan P Merry

Teaching medical students during clinical anaesthesia placements
Jeremy Rogers, Jeremy Carman, Andrew Gardner, Ross MacPherson
NetworkZ: A multi-disciplinary team training initiative aiming to reduce unintended harm from surgery

Jennifer M Weller MD, MBBS, MClEd, FRCA, FANZCA
University of Auckland

Professor Jennifer Weller is head of the Centre for Medical and Health Sciences Education at the University of Auckland, and a specialist anaesthetist at Auckland City Hospital. She is on the editorial board for the British Journal of Anaesthesia. Her research includes workplace-based assessment, simulation, teamwork and patient safety. She leads a national, government-funded program aimed at establishing multidisciplinary simulation-based team training for surgical staff. Her research in workplace-based assessment explores both the psychometric properties of assessment tools and qualitative analysis of how these assessments work in clinical practice. Professor Weller holds positions with the Australian and New Zealand College of Anaesthetists in various education and research committees, with a current focus on competency-based education.

Jennifer Long, BSc(Hons), PhD
University of Auckland

Dr Jennifer Long has a PhD in psychology and is a research fellow at the Centre for Medical and Health Sciences Education at the University of Auckland.

Alan F Merry, MBChB, FANZCA, FFPMANZCA
University of Auckland

Professor Alan Merry works in the Department of Anaesthesiology, Faculty of Medical and Health Sciences, University of Auckland and in the Department of Anaesthesia, Auckland City Hospital, Auckland, New Zealand.

INTRODUCTION

Teamwork and professional training

Surgery is delivered by teams and safe surgery depends on teamwork. Almost any surgical operation requires individuals with different skills and different perspectives to work effectively together towards a shared goal. Major surgery requires a particularly high level of co-ordination and communication.

Suboptimal teamwork and communication contribute to a situation where patients are harmed by surgery that is intended to help them. Jha et al.1 estimate that unintended patient harm is the 14th leading cause of global morbidity and mortality, comparable to diseases such as tuberculosis and malaria2. Surgery contributes a substantial proportion to the overall burden of this patient harm3, often through failures in communication. Communication failures are estimated to affect about 30 per cent of team interactions in operating theatres4, and to contribute to 43 per cent of surgical errors4. On the positive side, good teamwork is associated with better outcomes for patients, and improved information sharing between team members has been linked to reduced patient mortality and morbidity5.

Research on teams suggests that teamwork is facilitated when team members have a shared mental model of the collective task, when they trust each other, and when they communicate clearly, for example through acknowledging requests and closing the loop when tasks are complete6. Good teamwork and communication strategies can help healthcare team members navigate potential misunderstandings, co-ordinate activities efficiently and identify and communicate safety risks.

The case for interprofessional training

Most healthcare education occurs in professional silos – doctors train with doctors, nurses with nurses, and pharmacists with pharmacists. Even in simulation-based training for emergency response, ANZCA’s Effective Management of Anaesthetic Crisis (EMAC)7 course is fundamentally uni-professional, and anaesthetists act the role of surgeons or nurses in scenarios. There is value in uni-professional training, but it represents a missed opportunity to develop critical teamwork and crisis skills that are shared and understood by everyone who needs to work together. Consider, by contrast, the efforts that go into sports team development for highly successful teams such as the New Zealand All Blacks or the Boston Red Sox. While specific tasks can be practised in silos, these highly skilled individuals must practise as a whole to become an expert team. Uni-professional training can lead to different language or strategies among different members of the team. Crisis communications function best when all team members recognise and understand the purpose of communication strategies and know how to contribute.
A further risk of siloed training is negative learning— if one professional group acts the part of another then misrepresentation of roles, or even negative stereotyping may occur. This may in turn undermine the development of mutual trust and respect for other professional groups. Thus, there is every reason for teams that work together to undertake team training together.

Innovative training programs have been created for operating theatre teams. For example, the Centre for Medical Simulation in Boston has been a leader in training of multidisciplinary operating theatre teams in a simulation centre, by integrating surgical tasks into existing anaesthesia simulators using models made within the unit. Commercially available simulators have also been used to enable team training for caesarean section or vaginal deliveries.

In New Zealand (NZ), an initiative called NetworkZ has taken this idea further by working with a producer of simulation appliances to create highly realistic bespoke surgical models, and implementing multidisciplinary team training in situ, in the usual workplace of clinical teams across publicly funded hospitals in New Zealand.

THE NETWORKZ PROGRAM

Overview

The NetworkZ program seeks to improve patient safety by improving teamwork and communication. The combination of multidisciplinary participation, realism and in-situ delivery is unique compared to other programs available in Australia and New Zealand (see more on this in the following sections). Learning and reflection is promoted through challenging clinical simulations and accompanying debriefs and through communication skills workshops.

Box 1. Outline of a NetworkZ course

A typical half-day NetworkZ course proceeds through the following steps:

1. Introductions.
2. Familiarisation with the manikin.
5. Communication talk*.
7. Group debrief.
8. Wrap up and evaluation.
9. Post course report—lessons learnt to take back to practice (teamwork, process and systems issues).
   • Currently there are four teamwork talks to select from: Closed loop communication; ISBAR; Speaking up and actively listening; and, Structured recaps.

Core features of NetworkZ

Multi-disciplinary continuing medical education

NetworkZ courses cross professional boundaries and are multi-disciplinary from the design of scenarios to course delivery and debriefing. Teams that normally work together are trained together in their own operating theatres.

Course participants are drawn from the breadth of operating room roles: consultant surgeons (13 per cent), consultant anaesthetists (14 per cent), surgical trainees (7 per cent), anaesthetic trainees (5 per cent), nurses (39 per cent), anaesthetic technicians (12 per cent) and other staff such as healthcare assistants (9 per cent). In contrast to uni-professional simulations, participants act in their usual role, performing their usual tasks. The multi-disciplinary debriefing following the simulated scenario provides a rare opportunity for staff from different disciplines to share with each other their personal reflections and perspectives on the experience, what they struggled with and ideas for improvements to practice in the future.

With challenging and realistic simulations, communications between the team members rapidly move beyond role play to real interactions with co-participants. At debriefing, trained facilitators guide an exploration by participants into the way the team members work together, including their roles, assumptions and understanding of the simulated situation. Emphasis is placed on the unique knowledge that each of them have, both in relation to their different professional backgrounds, and to the case in question. To this end the scenario briefs typically provide slightly different information to each individual, reflecting the clinical reality that different team members may have different information about a patient of which others in the team are unaware. This triggers conversations about how and why information was shared, or not. Debriefing following the simulation provides an opportunity for every team member to share their perspectives and insights on teamwork during the case. The aim is to foster open communication, understanding and respect for each other's unique contributions and promote respectful, expert teamwork.

In situ delivery

NetworkZ simulations are run in participants' own operating theatres to maximise the relevance and realism of the training. In situ delivery obviates the need for access to a stand-alone simulation facility making it accessible for hospitals that do not have a local simulation facility, but also has other advantages. The in situ approach tests local response systems, equipment and protocols and may identify latent patient safety threats that, left uncorrected, may pose a risk to the safety of future patients. An audit of the threats identified in NetworkZ simulations between 2017 and 2019 identified that courses commonly identified gaps in crisis skills, verbal communication processes, common understanding of protocols, absent or malfunctioning equipment, uneven task distribution between team members and failure to use cognitive aids. In over half the courses, an issue with the design, availability or maintenance of equipment was identified. Four out of five courses identified at least one area of weakness in staff knowledge or skills. Often these knowledge gaps related to one or more key team member identifying they would benefit from additional training, for example in defibrillator use, crisis checklists or CPR. Such identification provides hospitals with an opportunity to identify and address threats that may otherwise pose a threat to future patients.

Realism

Psychological fidelity describes the extent to which participants engage in simulations as they would performing the same tasks in a clinical setting. Within NetworkZ surgeons can respond to bleeding, sepsis or trauma how they normally would, cutting, resecting, suturing or controlling bleeding in anatomical models realistic enough to trigger these responses. Anaesthetists can administer real IV medications and anaesthetic gases, and monitor the "patient" as they normally would, and nurses can work with the same instruments, manage sepsis, access the usual surgical equipment and record blood loss, as they would with a living patient. This helps participants engage with the scenario, undertake real clinical tasks in real time, and interact with their team as if they were managing an actual patient.

NetworkZ's bespoke surgical models are integrated with a computerised Laerdal 3G SimMan manikin (Laerdal Medical). A blood pump simulates haemorrhage. Examples of the surgical models include a ruptured appendix, a traumatic leg amputation, and a neck mass compromising the airway. Moulage and custom-built face masks add to the creation of a convincing "patient". Scenarios have been developed for the surgical specialties of general surgery, otorhinolaryngology, urology, orthopaedics, and plastic surgery. Each simulated scenario includes critical events such as airway complications, haemorrhage or shock.

Figure 1. Full body manikins fitted with moulage and interactive surgical models
NATIONAL ROLLOUT

NetworkZ had the ambitious goal of establishing team training as business as usual for operating theatre teams across New Zealand. The rollout to perioperative departments followed a stepped-wedge cluster-randomised study design16. Five to seven public hospitals were introduced to NetworkZ each year between 2017 and 2021. The initial rollout was supported by an engagement strategy, a letter agreement with each hospital CEO to commit resources to the training in return for access to the program and a Laerdal 3G simulator. In all, 18 3G simulators were deployed around New Zealand. Each participating hospital established a local NetworkZ team to become trained as NetworkZ instructors and technicians, with support from the University of Auckland NetworkZ faculty. NetworkZ faculty visited each site to help local staff identify and manage risks associated with in-situ simulation and ensure a safe learning environment for participants. The faculty also work with staff from around NZ to develop new scenarios and models.

Each hospital has taken their own approach to program implementation and course frequency. Some hospitals have essentially "hosted" a team to in situ simulation training for the morning, others have utilised whole-of-theatre education afternoons to deliver the training.

Over the first four-and-a-half years of the perioperative program (2017 to June 2021), 2000 participants attended a course and 330 local staff began instructor training.

Ideally, such training needs to be repeated, regularly. Much as airline cockpit crews are required to undertake non-technical skills training at least once every two years16, there is a strong case that operating theatre teams participate in repeated simulation team training.

Expansion into emergency department (ED) and post-anaesthetic care unit (PACU) settings

The establishment of simulation manikins and simulation expertise at each hospital has facilitated the development of similar programs in other departments. Concurrent programs of simulation have now been developed for the ED and PACU settings, drawing on the popularity of the OR program. Similar to the networkZ course in operating theatres, the ED and PACU courses involve communication skills training, realistic in situ simulations followed by extensive team debriefing sessions.

Participants include all professions who work together in each setting. ED course participants may include paramedic, ICU specialists, anaesthetists, surgical specialists, ICU registrars, surgical registrars, nurses, orderlies, radiographers, and blood bank staff.

Train-the-trainer model

A national program of this scale requires a “train the trainer” model, building capacity for local staff to deliver the program in their own hospitals.

Instructor training involves a two-day workshop, online modules and mentoring and feedback during delivery of initial courses. Instructors demonstrate competency in the Entrustable Professional Activities (EPAs) relevant to their role in NetworkZ in order to become an accredited NetworkZ instructor. The EPAs cover:

1. Effective teamwork fundamentals.
2. Safe learning environment.
3. Conduct a scenario.
4. Identify learning points for debriefing.
5. Conduct a debrief.
7. Risk management.
8. Prepare the environment for simulation.
9. Operate the simulation equipment.
10. Maintain simulation resources.

Training local instructors may offer sustainable benefits beyond the delivery of simulation training by an external agency, including improved local capacity for addressing systems issues and for debriefing staff after real-life patient crises. Local staff can become experienced in setting up and running simulation events, opening the possibility for such training to become business as usual and to extend to similar training for other areas of the hospital. This hope has come to fruition, with application of NetworkZ principles to running safe, high quality simulations in other parts of the hospital, and movement of NetworkZ-trained instructors between hospital departments.

EVALUATION

The New Zealand rollout of NetworkZ into perioperative settings is accompanied by a multi-faceted effectiveness evaluation that will examine whether NetworkZ achieves its aims of improving communication and teamwork skills in the operating theatre, and if so whether this translates to improvements in patient outcome. An earlier “efficacy” pilot indicates that the intervention delivered by expert instructors in simulation centres improves real-world communication and teamwork11.

The staged national roll-out of the NetworkZ program allows for a stepped-wedge cluster study design over a four-year time period. This design is an option for quality improvement designs, where random assignment at the level of the individual is not possible14. The primary outcome measure for this evaluation is Days Alive and Out of Hospital at 90 days (DAOH90). DAOH90 is an holistic measure of patient outcomes, where optimal care is assumed to lead to fewer days in hospital and lower mortality. This measure calculates how many days were spent alive and out of hospital over the 90 days following surgery. Any complication that increases length of stay or requires readmission within 90 days will reduce DAOH90. In NZ DAOH90 can be calculated from a national database of routinely collected patient admission data. Risk adjustment can be undertaken to supplement the stepped wedge design in mitigating confounding factors. Rates of particular complications, and process measures of teamwork and communication will also be examined15. This is real world research, and the results will reflect the complexities of real-world implementation of a major quality improvement initiative.

Teamwork outcome measures include in theatre observations of teamwork, and surveys of teamwork perceptions and surgical safety culture. Interim analysis of these measures indicate small but significant improvements across measures. An analysis of more than 100 post-course reports found that potential patient safety threats are often identified during courses16. Identifying and addressing these threats is another way that the NetworkZ courses may contribute to improved patient safety.

Post-course feedback suggests near-universal support from participants: more than 98 per cent of staff who participated in a local NetworkZ course or NetworkZ instructor course report satisfaction with the quality of the course. Interviews with those involved in delivering or setting up the training suggest that there is a strong interest in maintaining this initiative in New Zealand17. Interviewees have also described improvements in teamwork and communication following the training, such as better sharing of information, greater awareness of each other’s roles and less siloed teamwork11.

RESOURCING AND SUSTAINABILITY

Initial development, oversight and roll out of NetworkZ to perioperative departments in New Zealand was funded by the country’s national accident insurer, the Accident Compensation Corporation (ACC) as part of their prevention strategy for injury caused by treatment. This funding provided deployment of 3G simulators around the country, development of surgical models for the simulations (accessed through a central booking system), staffing to develop and run the program, and travel. Participating hospitals contributed by supporting staff to attend instructor training and in situ courses, admin time and on occasions, simulation technician time, and providing a theatre for in situ training, either instead of running a scheduled list or during half or full day education shut down days. The Health Quality and Safety Commission have contributed at the governance level and promoting the course through their website and communications.

Each local course requires a minimum of four local instructors or support staff to be available for the course duration (four hours) and at least an hour to set up and an hour to pack up. One instructor will also support course scheduling and share information with participants prior to the course.

Operating theatres (or other clinical environments) need to be released from routine clinical work from time to time for the training. The use of operating theatres represents an opportunity cost, which may manifest as a reduction in patients treated and (in some systems) as a direct loss of revenue. However Jabbour and Snyderman18 argue that hospital systems, malpractice insurance companies and health insurance companies may be appropriate funders of simulation as these bodies all have potential for cost savings23. Cost savings from reduced complications may be large. Dimick24 estimated that a single major complication cost a hospital around $US11,626.

Future outlook for multidisciplinary training

We believe that this type of training should be business as usual for operating theatre staff and other acute healthcare teams, in the same way that simulation training is for airline pilots.
Typically, case reviews, departmental meetings and continuous professional development are all undertaken in professional silos. Embracing multi-professional training requires commitment from management to schedule time when multi-professional groups can get together other than in the direct care of patients. While the timetabling may be challenging, almost every public hospital in New Zealand has found a solution that enables staff from every role within the operating theatre to come together to participate in a NetworkZ course. While each of the professional colleges (RACS, ANZCA, Nursing) has endorsed NetworkZ and participants may claim CME, without an overarching multi-professional body, implementing courses that span professional groups presents difficulties not encountered by the more traditional courses such as EMAC, Early Management of Severe Trauma (EMST) and the RACS course, Operating with Respect. Mandating some form of multi-professional team training for CPD either at a college level, or through the Medical Council, could provide a clearer pathway for courses such as NetworkZ.

CONCLUSION

Simulation-based team training is not new, but the combination of three elements of NetworkZ; integrated surgical and anaesthesia simulator, in situ delivery and multidisciplinary participation are relatively novel. Initiatives such as NetworkZ can start the process of building expert teams from expert healthcare professionals, and thereby help to solve the problem of unintended harm to patients undergoing surgery.

REFERENCES

Teaching medical students during clinical anaesthesia placements

Jeremy Rogers BSc, MD, MPH
Emergency Department Registrar, Sir Charles Gairdner Hospital, Nedlands, WA
Dr Jeremy Rogers is an emergency medicine trainee with a keen interest in critical care medicine. He regards research and evidence-based medicine as a vital cornerstone of modern medical practice, and has a passion for further improving medical education and the teaching provided in hospitals.

Jeremy Carman BPhysio, MD
Resident Medical Officer, Royal Perth Hospital, Perth, WA
Dr Jeremy Carman is a junior medical officer with an interest in anaesthesia, paediatric and regional and remote medicine. His career aspirations were inspired by time spent in both Perth metropolitan hospitals and the Kimberley as a medical student.

Andrew Gardner MB BS, PGDipEcho, FANZCA, AMusA, ARCO
Department of Anaesthesia, Sir Charles Gairdner Hospital, Nedlands, WA
Dr Andrew Gardner is a senior staff specialist anaesthetist with an interest in cardiothoracic and liver transplant anaesthesia, whose interest in anaesthesia as a career was fostered by an excellent placement and teaching in anaesthesia during his undergraduate medical degree. He is a past chair of the ANZCA primary examination.

Ross MacPherson BPharm, MSc, DHP (Syd), BMed (Hons), PhD, FANZCA
Department of Anaesthesia and Pain Management, Royal North Shore Hospital, St Leonards, NSW
Dr Ross MacPherson is a senior staff specialist anaesthetist who until recently has overseen the anaesthesia teaching program at his hospital. He is also clinical professor at the Northern Clinical School, University of Sydney, and a past chair of the ANZCA primary examination.

INTRODUCTION

The number of medical graduates from Australian and New Zealand universities has increased from approximately 1275 in 1992 to an expected number of 4138 in 2021. In addition to the establishment of new public university medical schools, there has also been the establishment of private university medical schools, such that there are now 23 universities across Australia and New Zealand producing medical graduates. There is a roughly equal split between undergraduate and graduate courses. The increased presence of medical students within private hospitals and the creation of rural clinical schools has seen medical students undertake clinical anaesthesia rotations outside of major metropolitan teaching hospitals. It is therefore extremely unlikely that any consultant anaesthetist or registrar, whether in public or private, or metropolitan or rural practice, will not be involved in the practical teaching of medical students within their workplace. Although this chapter may provide guides and ideas for established departments and individuals, it may be more relevant to those newly involved in medical student teaching. The general concepts are relevant to all departments where teaching occurs.

An anaesthesia placement is a relatively unique opportunity for medical students, where students often experience one-on-one clinical teaching from a consultant anaesthetist or registrar. These placements are not only an opportunity for students to learn anaesthesia, but also an opportunity to showcase anaesthesia as a specialty. It may be their only exposure to the specialty and encourage students to pursue it in the future. Interpersonal variables in the doctor-student relationship are not only important in promoting the specialty, but also account for a significant variability in the effectiveness of teaching. An effective clinical teacher has been described as a virtuous clinician; being knowledgeable, competent, caring and professional. However, an effective clinical teacher also organises and adapts their teaching, provides mentoring and support, and adopts a supervisor and feedback role. Given the increasing exposure of most anaesthetists to the teaching environment, it is increasingly necessary for anaesthetists to have an understanding of basic educational principles.

Students express preference for teaching sessions that avoid didactic “lecture-style” teaching and instead prefer sessions where they are actively and practically involved. The “flipped classroom” approach to teaching is increasingly being adopted by medical curricula to promote adult learning principles and active learning strategies. In this approach, students are first exposed to educational content via readings, videos or other e-learning techniques before their knowledge is reinforced in the subsequent teaching session. Anaesthesia teaching is perfectly suited to a flipped classroom approach, where students receive their formal teaching first, and can then reinforce concepts in a one-on-one setting.
In being exposed to anaesthesia as a medical specialty, it is important for medical students to realise that anaesthesia is more than a mere service provider. It is also intimately involved in perioperative care, with the potential to influence outcomes such as progression to chronic pain, and continues to make important contributions to improvements in safety and quality in healthcare.

**CHANGES IN MEDICAL SCHOOL ENTRY AND CURRICULUM**

In Australia and New Zealand, not only is there a mix of undergraduate and graduate medical schools, there also exists a wide variety of entry pathways into medical schools. Similarly, there are differences in the curricula of the various medical schools. The days when a medical student on an anaesthesia placement could be confidently expected to have a significant and in-depth understanding of the basic sciences as applied to clinical medicine are in the past. For those in graduate medical schools, undergraduate degrees may range widely from a degree in biomedical science to degrees in law or music performance. In the pre-clinical years of medical degrees, areas that were previously taught in detail to all medical students may now only be further developed in elective units, such as detailed anatomy or pharmacology. This is important for clinical teachers in having appropriate expectations of previously acquired knowledge before clinical rotations.

**REALISTIC EXPECTATIONS OF TEACHING GOALS FOR A CLINICAL PLACEMENT IN ANAESTHESIA**

The competing interests of multiple clinical subject areas of current medical courses preclude overly detailed or excessively broad teaching of anaesthesia. Anaesthesia placements for medical students are necessarily shorter than other medical disciplines. Short clinical placements necessitate learning outcomes that are clear, concisely defined, and relevant. Not unsurprisingly, anaesthetists and students may have different expectations regarding the outcomes of their clinical placements. It is important that anaesthetists have realistic expectations of the skills and knowledge in which a student will be required to have demonstrated competency at the end of a placement. At the end of a six-week general surgical placement, it would not be expected that a medical student would be able to perform an appendicectomy; similarly, at the end of a cardiology term to manage a patient with complex valvular heart disease. It is therefore unrealistic to expect that at the end of a short anaesthesia placement, a medical student should be able to give an unsupervised anaesthetic and have detailed knowledge of anaesthetic pharmacology. Regardless of the long-term career aspirations of medical students, as junior doctors they will all be required to manage patients undergoing procedures perioperatively, manage acute pain and nausea and vomiting, and respond to rapidly deteriorating patients on the ward. A clinical placement in anaesthesia not only provides the opportunity to discuss the physiology and pharmacology of anaesthesia and the teaching of certain skills relating to airway management and cannulation, but also the investigation and management of perioperative patients generally.

Hopefully, the expectations of students for the goals and expected teaching in an anaesthesia term would generally align with the expectations of anaesthetists. Many students comment that anaesthetists not only have specific anaesthesia knowledge, but also an excellent working knowledge of the broader areas of medicine, surgery and pharmacology that interact with their daily work – an often-untapped source of good clinical information. Students on an anaesthesia placement can expect to gain exposure to both airway management and vascular access, but also comprehensive perioperative management and often simulation teaching. Medical students want teaching provided to them that does not oversimplify or condescend, but also teaching that does not expect inappropriately advanced knowledge. Many students undertaking critical care rotations will appreciate practical approaches to managing acute and other perioperative issues for their future work. However, this may not always be the case and it is critical that departmental staff appreciate where the anaesthesia rotation is placed within the degree course. The other expectation from medical students is ensuring examination readiness.

University learning guidelines for medical students have definitive broad learning objectives. These may contain more specific topics. Within a short anaesthesia placement, it is important to ensure adequate practical experience, whilst still imparting important theoretical knowledge. Often the breadth of these learning outcomes is impossible to cover within the short time span of an anaesthesia placement, and requires the student to independently seek further knowledge through self-directed learning.

**FACILITATING TEACHING AND LEARNING AT A DEPARTMENTAL LEVEL**

Each hospital has a different clinical load and organisational structure. There are relatively few academic anaesthetists employed by university departments, and many placements will be undertaken in departments without a formal university presence. Although these suggestions may be more suitable for a larger hospital department than a smaller or rural hospital, they provide the basic organisational structure to enable successful teaching within the clinical placement. Some of these suggestions are simple, but essential:

1. There needs to be a designated staff member to facilitate the rotation and be a contact point for students. Similarly, there needs to be an identified contact within the university who is available for clinical teachers to discuss rotations and students.
2. It is important to make sure that the students feel part of a team. Advanced rostering to theatre lists and notification of this ensures that not only the students are aware of what is expected of them, it also gives early notice to the clinician that they will be having a student. On the day allocation to lists may occasionally be necessitated by clinical circumstances, it is likely to list for both the teacher and the student, and is likely to give an unfavourable impression of anaesthetists’ commitment to medical students and teaching. Simple things such as ensuring that students have access to library spaces, locker access in change rooms, and wi-fi passwords also encourages them to feel part of a team, and not a burden.
3. An anaesthesia rotation should involve more than just spending time in the operating theatre. It is important that students are aware of the many roles that anaesthetists play within the hospital. If it is discovered that a student has only spent time in theatre, consideration should be given to arranging other clinical experience such as attendance at a pre-admission clinic, acute pain service rounds, or a session at a chronic pain clinic. If the hospital clinical practice includes obstetric and paediatric anaesthesia services, these should be made available to students if feasible.
4. Although they may go by various names and be either physical or electronic, students should have a workbook or handbook from their medical school outlining the learning outcomes and expected clinical skills to be learned during their anaesthesia rotation. These should be available to all clinical teachers, and copies readily available in departmental libraries (see note at the end of this chapter). Prior knowledge of what is expected from a rotation removes pressure from both the clinical teacher and the student.
5. Enabling timely feedback to students is important in both identifying and remediating poorly performing students. In addition, encouraging student feedback provides clinicians (and the broader teaching/ anaesthesia department) an opportunity for quality improvement, and a means of improving teaching and the overall usefulness of the term to students.

**TEACHING ACTIVITIES**

Individual anaesthetists have a wide range of different clinical practices with differing expertise and skills in both clinical and non-clinical aspects of anaesthesia. The areas listed below of possible teaching topics are extensive, and it is not expected that each individual anaesthetist will be familiar with all areas and can teach these topics. However, the list provides ideas about teaching which anaesthetists may wish to consider utilising with their students. Some of them are basic, but it may be the only opportunity that a student receives clinical exposure in that area.

**Core practical clinical skills**

1. **Airway and ventilation skills**

   Although students may receive teaching in airways skills in other placements, the nature of an anaesthesia placement allows for consolidation of these skills. Mask ventilation, the placement of supraglottic airways, and the recognition of the onset of failure to ventilate. In particular, teaching these skills and concepts in the clinical context of their use in advance life care algorithms will further reinforce this learning. This will be directly translatable for junior doctors in clinical scenarios such as responding to clinical deterioration on the wards or working in emergency medicine.
2. Intravenous cannulation

Often this is a major focus for medical students, and anaesthesia placements provide an ideal opportunity for the placement of peripheral inserted intravenous cannula in a controlled learning environment. Perioperative cannula placement allows students to refine their technique, with direct access to experienced clinicians guiding them. However, it should be emphasised to the student that while this skill is important to a junior doctor, it should not be prioritised to the exclusion of other teaching opportunities which may be restricted on an anaesthesia rotation. Students will have opportunities to insert cannulae in future placements due to the universal need for intravenous access in the hospital setting.

3. Basic ultrasound skills

The role of ultrasound is ever increasing in clinical medicine, and ultrasound machines are frequently used not only in the operating theatre, but often in emergency and ward patient management. While it is unreasonable to expect medical students to have the anatomical knowledge and technique to perform nerve blocks, it is not unreasonable to teach basic ultrasound skills. Within the proviso of patient consent, such basic skills such as the identification of veins in patients with difficult venous access, identification of arteries, identification of normal lung markings and identification of air and fluid within the chest cavity may be taught.

4. Oxygen delivery systems.

Many medical students are surprised to find that oxygen is a drug which requires a prescription. Theatre placement provides an ideal situation for the benefits, limitations and contraindications to different modes of oxygen delivery including low and high flow nasal prongs, re-breathing and non re-breathing masks to be discussed while allowing the student to place the device.

5. Principles of monitoring

While pulse oximetry has long been a mainstay of ward patient assessment, the increasing use of capnography in the setting of ward medical emergency management has necessitated teaching in this area. The anaesthesia rotation allows for thorough discussion and teaching of the use, benefits and limitations of these monitors.

**Practical perioperative patient management**

1. Perioperative medicine

With increasing frequency, patients are admitted on the day of elective surgery and many patients are not reviewed by anaesthetists before hospital admission. Thus, there is an increasing need for junior doctors to be aware of perioperative issues that may be of concern to anaesthetists. It is not necessary for students to have a detailed understanding of the management of complicated medical conditions and treatments, but it is important that they are able to identify areas that have clinical significance for anaesthetists and know to seek further advice regarding the management of these areas. Examples of topics for discussion may include the management of anticoagulation in patients with atrial fibrillation or mechanical valve replacement, the management of type 1 and type 2 diabetic medications, and the complexities of chronic pain.

2. Acute pain management and the management of nausea and vomiting

Depending on the clinical school curriculum and the timing of the anaesthesia rotation, there is likely to be a wide variety in the depth of pharmacological knowledge related to these topics before the rotation. The operating theatre setting provides not only the opportunity for students to learn or reinforce the pharmacology of these drugs, but also to see the action of the drugs clinically.

3. Intravenous fluids

Despite being a core skill in clinical practice, the prescription of intravenous fluids is often taught in a haphazard fashion within various medical disciplines. The anaesthesia term allows for consolidated teaching on this topic.

4. Recognising and responding to the deteriorating patient

The Australian Commission on Safety and Quality in Health Care has instituted a standard entitled Recognising and Responding to Acute Deterioration
d. This has been developed in response to the increasing evidence of the importance of recognising clinical deterioration and initiating responses to prevent serious patient morbidity and mortality. Topics for discussion could include normal values for vital signs and abnormal findings, expected intraoperative and postoperative changes, and the periopeative factors that may influence changes in vital signs and examination findings.

Non-technical skills

1. Principles of human factors and patient safety

As a medical specialty, anaesthesia has been at the forefront of improving patient safety and outcomes. Numerous reports have identified human factors as being responsible for near misses and adverse outcomes in anaesthesia. The principles by which anaesthetists undertake safe and quality reporting, such as reporting of critical incidents, clinical indicators for anaesthesia, and WEBAIR can be explained and further developed in the theatre setting. Similarly, discussion of the use of protocols in anaesthesia crises such as anaphylaxis and suspected malignant hyperthermia, and the use of simulation in managing anaesthesia crises allows medical students to understand methods for reducing the influence of human factors. Permitting students to lead the "Team Time Out" not only allows them to become involved with protocols for improving patient safety, but also engages them regarding the use of deep venous thrombosis and antibiotic prophylaxis.

2. Teamwork and communication

Despite these being core clinical skills, students generally have few opportunities to see healthcare teams in action. This is multi factorial, with fewer rotations being conducted within tertiary hospitals where multidisciplinary patient care is more common, and increasing external commitments reducing time spent with direct patient contact. In addition, surgical patients may be managed at different sites to where the treatment regimen was planned. This placement allows students to understand the concept of shared care, not only between the anaesthetists and other medical practitioners such as surgeons and intensive care physicians, but also between the members of multidisciplinary teams in the theatre setting, including medical staff, nursing staff, anaesthesia assistants, and orderlies. Watching handover processes between anaesthesia and recovery staff as the patient passes from one part of the theatre complex to another, and encouraging students to participate in handovers, can be particularly instructive in terms of demonstrating the process of continuity of care. Students should be made aware of the importance of both clear communication and the delineation of roles in the safe management of the anaeasthetised patient.

**RESOURCES FOR INDIVIDUAL ANAESTHETISTS TO INCREASE AND IMPROVE TEACHING SKILL**

For many anaesthetists who are not regularly involved in teaching, the idea of having to teach may be daunting. For those who wish to improve their teaching abilities, there are several resources available:

1. General teaching resources

Since 2000, the delivery of Teaching on the Run courses has become widespread in Australia and New Zealand. This course provides strong foundations for clinical teaching in the operating theatre. Commencing in April 2004, the Medical Journal of Australia published a series of articles based on this course, and the complete set is available for purchase as a book.

2. Teaching courses

In addition to Teaching on the Run courses, ANZCA has developed the ANZCA Educators Program which offers different modules which range from planning effective teaching and learning to the use of technology in teaching and learning. Although developed primarily for the teaching of anaesthesia trainees, the modules are also relevant to teaching medical students.

3. Prepare a teaching portfolio

Prepared either paper-based or electronically, a portfolio containing interesting ECGs, ABGs, airway CT scans, and other investigations, as well as thought-provoking clinical scenarios, provides opportunities for discussion and learning. These can be best utilised in the absence of discussion points with the patient being managed in theatre. A wide variety of investigations and images are easily found on the internet. Clinical scenarios provide an opportunity for learning during long cases. The scenarios do not need to be complicated – even the simplest scenarios provide opportunity for discussion and learning. Not only do clinical scenarios allow for teaching and preparedness for clinical practice, their format and interaction with the anaesthetist mimic many assessment formats enabling exam preparedness. Examples of clinical scenarios are given in the box below.
CONCLUSION

Many clinicians will remember the outstanding teachers of their clinical years in medical school, some of whom may have been the inspiration to choose current career paths. While not every clinician finds clinical teaching easy, it is important that medical students undergoing their anaesthesia rotation are able to complete the learning outcomes within the specialty such that they will be safe junior doctors in the future and be inspired to undertake further self-motivated learning.

It is important to realise that not every theatre list will be an ideal opportunity for teaching. A list with a particularly complicated patient having a high expected perioperative mortality, or those patients in whom unexpected complications occur, are such examples. We believe that students will still learn by watching the management of these complicated clinical situations. A simple communication explaining that there may be limited formal teaching but still much to learn may be appreciated by the student, and likely to maintain their interest.

One ANZCA competency in the current training program is that of scholar, and within that competency the role in practice of being able to teach others. For those who have been awarded the FANZCA diploma in recent times, assessment of this competency will have occurred throughout training. For those who are obtaining specialist recognition before this time, the skills of education may have been less thoroughly taught and assessed. We hope that this brief chapter may provide some resources for those who continue to find teaching daunting.

(Note: Ross MacPherson is happy to provide a copy of the anaesthesia workbook used by medical students at The University of Sydney, which can be used as a template for your own. He can be contacted at ross.macpherson@health.nsw.gov.au).

REFERENCES


Examples of clinical scenarios

A 65-year-old man with a previous mechanical valve replacement on warfarin presents for a colectomy. How would you manage his anticoagulation perioperatively?

The ward contacts you regarding a 24-year-old female patient who has had a laparoscopic appendicectomy, and is continuing to vomit. How would you manage this patient?

A 52-year-old female presents for laparoscopic procedure for a malignant gynaecological condition which is expected to last for four hours. What risk factors may predispose this patient to developing a deep venous thrombosis? What are the strategies used to reduce the incidence of deep venous thrombosis in the perioperative period?

You are the junior medical officer in the preadmission clinic and clerking a patient in preparation for a left hemicolectomy. The patient is a type 2 diabetic on metformin, empagliflozin, and insulin glargine. What arrangements would you make for this patient perioperatively?

You are asked to review a 72-year-old six hours after a revision hip replacement. He has a history of ischaemic heart disease and takes ramipril and metoprolol. His pulse rate is 56 beat per minute, and blood pressure 95/65 mmHg. His preoperative blood pressure was 140/80 mmHg. How would you assess and manage this patient?
Management and legal

Clinical leadership in uncertain times
Nicole Sheridan, Candida Marane

Realising the potential of anaesthesia technicians: The Royal Perth Hospital experience
Peter Mulrooney, Laura Prates Vitoria

Socrates, Plato and the healthcare worker’s duty to serve
Elizabeth Hessian, Julian Savulescu

Medicolegal insights into anaesthesia
Chris Bolton

Media moments for anaesthetists
Simon Hendel, Jonathan (Joff) Lacey
Clinical leadership in uncertain times

Dr Nicole Sheridan, MBBS, FANZCA, MMED
Deputy Director, Department of Anaesthesia Pain and Perioperative Medicine, Western Health, Footscray, Victoria, Australia

Dr Sheridan has an interest in obstetric anaesthesia and sustainability. She assisted with developing operating theatre flows and processes during Melbourne’s COVID-19 outbreaks.

Dr Candida Marane, BSc, MBBS, Grad Cert Clin Ed, FANZCA
Head of Simulation and Emergency Response Training, Acting Deputy Director, Department of Anaesthesia Pain and Perioperative Medicine, Western Health, Footscray, Victoria, Australia

Dr Marane has an interest in medical education, simulation and interdisciplinary team training. She assisted with Western Health’s response to Melbourne’s COVID-19 outbreaks in multiple areas including education, training and the development of a Critical Care Outreach Team.

INTRODUCTION

The COVID-19 pandemic has caused unprecedented disruption to our work and lives where constant ongoing and unpredictable change has become the new normal. There have been recent unimaginable shifts in the ways we live our lives and function within our workplace. Increasingly the robustness of the healthcare system is related to the health of our workforce and, more broadly, that of society and the planet.

The term “VUCA” is used widely in business and organisation management to describe conditions that are characterised by volatility, uncertainty, complexity, and ambiguity1. Prior to the COVID-19 pandemic, healthcare systems were becoming an increasingly VUCA world with the convergence of several factors. Increasing costs, economic concerns, growth and aging of population all presenting imperatives to find answers to sustain our system. The expectations of patients and families are continually evolving with increasing consumer expectations and the democratisation of medicine. Innovations, new technologies and advanced analytics are also being developed at an exponential rate. At local levels in the face of external factors, departments are facing challenges around mental health of doctors, training and work environments, workplace culture, co-ordination, and data and information.

Western Health is a large health service comprising three acute public hospitals and serving a community of approximately 800,000 people in the western region of Melbourne, Australia. Western Health was in a unique position during 2020. Two of Western Health’s campuses, Footscray and Sunshine hospitals, were surrounded by the COVID-19 hotspots of metropolitan Melbourne in 2020. Western Health cared for more than 400 COVID-19 positive patients2. This is significantly more than most Australian hospitals, but thankfully is nowhere near the numbers seen by our colleagues overseas. As well as caring for COVID-19 positive patients many of our staff also lived in these COVID-19 hotspots.

Subsequent challenges that have faced us since the beginning of 2020 have included occupational health and safety and wellbeing of staff, trauma and burnout, urgency driven delivery services, shortages of equipment and drugs for delivery of care, teams fractured in to remote and virtual groups and rapid evolution of technology and digitisation. We have been forced to adapt quickly and identify creative ways to operate. This has required a distinct set of leadership skills.

WHAT IS CLINICAL LEADERSHIP?

Leadership is both the position or fact of being the leader and a set of characteristics that make a good leader4. Clinical leadership is a process of influencing point-of-care innovation and improvement in both organisational processes and individual care practices to achieve quality and safety of care outcomes4. As anaesthetists, we are well trained in the principles of crisis resource management (CRM). CRM has its origins in the aviation industry where it was found that human error contributed to more than 70 per cent of aviation accidents5. The majority of these errors were related to teamwork failures. Anaesthesia was the first healthcare specialty to adopt CRM. In the 1980s it was recognised that there were sufficient parallels between the work of anaesthetists and airline pilots to justify the adoption of aviation’s Crew Resource Management principles6. CRM can be summarised as principles of individual and team behaviour in ordinary and crisis situations that focuses on skills of dynamic decision-making, interpersonal behaviour, and team management. Evidence shows training in CRM improves performance and reduces errors7 and it is a fundamental component of the Australian and New Zealand College of Anaesthetist’s (ANZCA) training program and continuing professional development. CRM is a key component of simulation training within our department for anaesthesia consultants, trainees and nurses.
LEADING IN TIMES OF CRISIS

In medicine a crisis usually refers to a situation that requires multiple issues to be addressed simultaneously, has a time pressure in which these issues must be addressed and has a catastrophic outcome if the issues are not addressed. These elements are all present in the COVID-19 pandemic and it would be appropriate to refer to it as a crisis. CRM is a key component of our clinical work, but it therefore also provides sound principles on which to base leadership during uncertain times such as a global pandemic.

Effective leadership in current disruptive environments needs to utilise a range of different styles. Increasingly, leaders should ensure that the team has a shared mental model understanding what the team is working towards. A shared mental model is a team’s shared, accurate, and complementary understanding of their purview, which indicates signs of progress. Equally, recognising obstacles overcome and upcoming obstacles helps the team retain a sense of efficacy. Within our department and organisation, during the COVID-19 pandemic, successes and barriers were recognised both formally and informally at many levels. Daily check ins with team members provided opportunities to acknowledge progress and hurdles. This enabled positive reinforcement of progress and problem solving as a team. The organisation commonly recognised achievements through electronic updates, video conferences, awards and use of social media.

KNOW YOUR ENVIRONMENT

Knowing your environment helps maintain situational awareness, understand internal and external capabilities, and recognise strengths and vulnerabilities of the team and the surrounding environment. Leaders need to monitor and understand both the internal and external environment, particularly in times of uncertainty. Sharing information with colleagues within your health network and externally, locally and internationally, using modern technological aids (videocollaboration, group information sharing apps) can assist in monitoring and gathering up-to-date information. We found this particularly useful with the rapidly changing environments and accelerated learnings during the COVID-19 pandemic.

To be able to adapt in times of change it is key to understand the internal capabilities of your team and recognising opportunities within the team to develop team members and coach them towards the team need to recognise where they can mobilise further resources as required. The redundancy created by cancelling elective surgery allowed us to create more resilient roster processes. We increased staff availability after hours to support the increased demands and cognitive load, we had staff allocated to cover sick leave and furloughed staff and created critical care outreach services to support surges in other departments.

Pre-existing relationships within the organisation and health service were crucial to our response during the pandemic. They allowed us to collectively recognise strengths and vulnerabilities across the organisation. The pandemic provided an opportunity to build on and improve these relationships, particularly with other critical care areas that we worked closely with in our organisation. Knowing the strengths and functioning of these departments allowed us to work together to provide dynamic solutions.

COMMUNICATE EFFECTIVELY

Effective communication is essential for a resilient workplace. Communication of directives has been shown to be the number one organisational protective factor preventing symptoms of mental distress during the coronavirus outbreak in healthcare staff. As people struggle with evolving uncertainty, they will seek out information and analysis.

Good communication is required for a team to sustain a shared mental model, or in other terms, a shared cognition. This is an understanding of how the team will work together to safely accomplish their goals. The more overlap between individual mental models the greater the likelihood that team members will predict, adapt and co-ordinate with another successfully, even under stressful and novel conditions.

Communication needs to be regular, while recognising that time is often limited. It can be in the form of team huddles, handovers and pre-briefs and debriefs. These communications should cover current priorities, individual and team responsibilities and relay new and important information. As leaders we facilitated advocacy and allowed colleagues to ask questions and raise concerns. This must be encouraged so there is no fear or reluctance to speak up. We promoted a shared perspective because often when one team member has a query, others will also have the same query. The ability for team members to communicate feedback and questions was vital and allowed us to continue to tailor our response.

With rapidly evolving environments we have become better at communicating virtually through the use of video calling and conferencing. Recognising which tasks are better done in person and which can be done virtually is critical to the success of a team acting with integrity.

Table 1. Multimodal leadership

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Leadership level</th>
<th>Descriptor</th>
<th>Role in leadership</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Individual</td>
<td>Coach</td>
<td>Aligning individuals interests and strengths with requirements of the department.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Recognising successes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ensuring mutual monitoring.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Team</td>
<td>Conductor</td>
<td>Creating shared leadership and goals.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Designating and ensuring role clarity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Facilitating participative decision making.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Creating resilient work models.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ensuring culture of psychological safety.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Organisation/External</td>
<td>Champion</td>
<td>Advocating for your team and managing resources.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Providing positive role modelling, acting with integrity.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Providing Effective Leadership and Ensure Role Clarity

The CRM model requires effective leaders to designate leadership roles and maintain role clarity. Clinical leaders should ensure that the team has a shared mental model understanding what the team is working towards. A shared mental model is a team’s shared, accurate, and complementary understanding of their purview, which enables teams to adapt and co-ordinate together. This can be accomplished through regular huddles and debriefings where roles and priorities can be clarified, and it can be determined who has the most expertise to take on a given need.

Shared leadership is encouraged by many organisations and is proven as an approach to meet increased complexity, such as that faced during the pandemic. Shared leadership is associated with improved team performance and is most appropriate to avoid duplication and confusion so leaders must trust each other, have a common vision of goals and communicate effectively. With the shared leadership model there can still be one single person with ultimate responsibility, but leadership tasks can be shared. Encouraging participative decision making creates a culture where team members feel valued and have a sense of ownership regarding decisions that can ultimately affect their safety and wellbeing while at work.

During the COVID-19 pandemic some of the biggest challenges that we faced were related to the rapidly changing environment and changing directives from the government and organisation. This required dynamic situational awareness. To manage this challenge, we expanded the leadership roles within our department in a shared leadership model. We organised designated leaders to manage the most dynamic needs. Some of these areas included critical care outreach services, personal protective equipment (PPE), theatre workflows, equipment, rostering and telehealth. These leaders communicated frequently using video conference to integrate work and create a global situational awareness. This is an innovation that we have continued to remain connected on a daily basis and overcome some of the challenges created by our multicampus model.

Positive leadership results in teams possessing a belief that their team can succeed in current conditions, improving team performance. Positive leadership can be achieved by recognising the successes of the team which indicates signs of progress. Equally, recognising obstacles overcome and upcoming obstacles helps the team retain a sense of efficacy. Within our department and organisation, during the COVID-19 pandemic, successes and barriers were recognised both formally and informally at many levels. Daily check ins with team members provided opportunities to acknowledge progress and hurdles. This enabled positive reinforcement of progress and problem solving as a team. The organisation commonly recognised achievements through electronic updates, video conferences, awards and use of social media.

Leaders should ensure that the team has a shared mental model understanding what the team is working towards. A shared mental model is a team’s shared, accurate, and complementary understanding of their purview, which enables teams to adapt and co-ordinate together. This can be accomplished through regular huddles and debriefings where roles and priorities can be clarified, and it can be determined who has the most expertise to take on a given need.

Leaders should ensure that the team has a shared mental model understanding what the team is working towards. A shared mental model is a team’s shared, accurate, and complementary understanding of their purview, which enables teams to adapt and co-ordinate together. This can be accomplished through regular huddles and debriefings where roles and priorities can be clarified, and it can be determined who has the most expertise to take on a given need.
ANTICIPATE, SHARE AND REVIEW YOUR PLAN

Throughout periods of rapid change, it is important to have a strong sense of mission and purpose directed by organisational and individual guiding principles. This provides stability and our core values can guide us towards clear decisions even in the face of uncertainty and ambiguity. For example, the mission and purpose may be providing the most appropriate and best possible care to your patients and to support your colleagues and ensure their wellbeing. Guiding principles might include being accessible, supportive and proactive, and willing to listen while being flexible and adaptable. In times of uncertainty, we gravitate to those whose purpose reflects our own personal values and beliefs.

Organisational culture is best described as the “way we do things here”. Where individuals or groups’ personal values and beliefs differ from the organisational culture, this can lead to lack of engagement and burnout. This can certainly be very challenging, particularly when individuals are concerned with personal or patient safety which they may see as not aligning with an organisation’s responses. Leaders need to listen to their team and acknowledge these differences and use them as an opportunity for deeper understanding and creativity finding areas of overlap between personal/group and organisation values and opportunities to align these guided by an overarching purpose. Leaders are required to be an intermediary between the organisation and individual team members, acknowledging concerns, providing background and honest responses and empowering individuals by including them in planning and team decision making.

While it is important to share and review your plan, it is equally important that planning is a participatory process where colleagues are able to speak up and contribute ideas and concerns in a respectful culture allows individual empowerment. It has been shown to be protective to the psychological health of the team and support collaborative problem solving. We allocated senior and junior staff to manage the areas mentioned above, reporting back to that area’s particular leader. This allowed team members to participate in decision making regarding their own workplace and safety. We know that team members actively taking part in making decisions and by determining the results of decisions, gain a sense of control of their lives during rapidly changing environments, particularly when there is a threat to one’s own wellbeing.

Anticipating and planning for all contingencies was an important element of our response. Planning for the worst allowed team members to utilise all available resources in developing strategies and ensuring that nobody was left behind. We implemented and communicated to staff in advance of being required.

As leaders we represented our department to the organisation’s executive and external groups. In representing the entire group, it was essential that we displayed integrity and appropriate standards. We advocated for our department, colleagues and patients.

DISTRIBUTE THE WORKLOAD – MONITOR AND SUPPORT TEAM MEMBERS

Given the rapid evolving and nature of the pandemic it was essential to ensure our response to the workload was distributed among our team. This allowed for efficient and effective solutions as new problems arose. However, it also meant we had to address the particular strengths that different team members possess. We ensured that we had senior medical staff, junior medical staff and peripatetic nurses working together to provide their different perspectives and skill sets.

During a crisis and uncertain times, it is imperative for a leader to ensure the continued psychological safety of team members and colleagues. Psychological safety within a team is one of the strongest predictors of team effectiveness, and people need to feel safe and supported to be productive. It is the degree to which people feel able to take interpersonal risks such as speaking up, acknowledge mistakes and broker difficult conversations. Leaders play a key role in setting the tone and creating a climate of psychological safety. This can be achieved by establishing open communication channels and providing opportunities for anonymous feedback.

As a department, we promoted psychological safety by empowering team members to speak up, within their own areas and independently when needed. Firstly, we provided regular platforms where team members were encouraged to ask questions and voice concerns. This united us and often produced groundbreaking solutions to complex problems. Secondly, we encouraged anaesthetists in theatre to make logistical and safety decisions regarding the theatre team and patient. Our anaesthetists were aware that they were supported by the leadership team and that we were accessible at any time to be contacted.

Mutual team monitoring (MTM) is where individuals monitor the welfare of other team members. In times of crisis, it is inevitable that one’s attention is narrowed to that of their own job and wellbeing. MTM creates an effective team that can monitor the situation itself, team performance and, if necessary, the entire department, we created a ‘buddy system’, this was an extension of our existing mentor system. It necessitated more frequent communication between peers and the objective was to assess mood and provide support.

Being paired with peers facing similar challenges and often similar feelings and reactions allowed for more open discussion. Paired team members would check in with each other several times a week, scoring how they felt from one (worst day at work, no desire to come to work) to 10 (best day at work, excited to come to work). This allowed opportunities to self-reflect, provide support, and debrief. Each member of the department was aware of additional supports for themselves and their “buddy” if required and the leadership group was always accessible when there were concerns regarding welfare of department members. This was very important as a department because we had lost our shared staff spaces where we would typically connect, share stories and create solidarity. We also found other ways of coming together, including lunchtime quizzes via videoconference, an online quiz night and producing a dance video.

As leaders we shared our vulnerability and showed empathy. We acknowledged that we were too affected by fear; the uncertainty and the unprecedented situation. Sharing struggles is not a sign of weakness but a powerful way to build trust. We acknowledged that leaders could make mistakes, and that there is no room for ego when leading a team. It is important to learn from mistakes and move on. Honest communication creates credibility.

CONCLUSION

While there was no specific script for an event of this scale, our departmental leadership team created an organisational framework drawing from core CRM skills utilising multimodal styles. This served our department, organisation and patients well. Our responses were not always perfect, we adapted and learned. In the continuing pandemic environment and aftermath of the increased burden of patient and staff infections, reflecting on what we did well and carrying learnings forward has helped our department heal and continue to function in the current day stresses of an ongoing global pandemic, continuing with large projects and providing catch up surgery for our patients.

REFERENCES


2. Western Health Foundation. A Focus on Western Health’s ICU Response during COVID-19 webinar [Internet]. Melbourne: Western Health; 2020 [cited 2021 April 20]. Available from: https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=Krp46gTXLQ


Realising the potential of anaesthesia technicians: The Royal Perth Hospital experience

Peter Mulrooney, MB ChB, FRCA
Department of Anaesthesia and Pain Medicine, Royal Perth Hospital, Perth, WA

Dr Peter Mulrooney is a consultant anaesthetist and is the clinical manager of the Royal Perth Bentley Group Anaesthesia Technicians. He has extensive experience in managing departments of anaesthesia having previously been chair of the anaesthetic department at the University Hospitals Coventry and Warwickshire for eight years. In addition, he was co-clinical director of surgery and oncology and chair of the Senior Hospital Medical Staff Committee at the same hospital. Prior to that he was a senior specialist anaesthetist in the Royal Air Force. He has a long-standing interest in governance-based management coupled to patient and staff safety.

Laura Prates Vitoria, MD, FANZCA
Department of Anaesthesia and Pain Medicine, Royal Perth Hospital, Perth, WA

Dr Laura Prates Vitoria is a consultant anaesthetist who holds the role of deputy clinical manager of the Royal Perth Bentley Group Anaesthesia Technicians. She completed her specialist training in Brazil and has worked in Australia for more than six years. In addition to her clinical interests, she invests heavily in teaching and staff support. She has developed an interest in the application of clinical governance in advancing patient and staff safety.

INTRODUCTION

The anaesthesia department is the largest clinical department in metropolitan hospitals. The United Kingdom (UK) Audit Commission reported that anaesthetists are directly involved with two-thirds of hospital patients and are key to generating a remarkable proportion of hospital income at a pay cost equivalent to 3 per cent of this sum.1 The anaesthesia department has also been in the forefront of advances in patient safety and clinical governance. None of this would be possible without the support of highly trained assistants.

A 1999 incident monitoring study2 found “inadequate assistance” as a contributing factor to significant anaesthesia incidents identified in 187 reports (3.2 per cent), while suggesting that “skilled assistance” minimised the incident in 808 cases (18.8 per cent) – although the latter is difficult to prove retrospectively. Adverse outcomes in the report included prolonged stay, awareness and Intensive Care Unit (ICU) admission. Incidents were related to equipment, communication and inadequate staffing levels (number and/or skill mix). The impact on patient survival, quality of life and health system burden implicit in these figures argues for investment in a high quality well-functioning technician service.

Anaesthesia assistants fall broadly into two categories, technicians and nurses. In the Royal Perth Hospital (RPH) Department of Anaesthesia and Pain Medicine the vast majority of the anaesthesia assistants are technicians and in order to avoid confusion they are collectively referred to as anaesthesia technicians (AT).

The purpose of this article is to illustrate how a thorough review of the RPH anaesthesia technician service was undertaken and how subsequent developments were underpinned throughout by concentrating on clinical governance and the Australian and New Zealand College of Anaesthetists (ANZCA) standards.

HISTORY OF RPH ANAESTHETIC TECHNICIAN SERVICE

The RPH is a tertiary level centre and serves as the adult trauma centre for Perth, Western Australia. It forms part of the Royal Perth Bentley Group (RPBG) of hospitals along with the smaller Bentley Hospital (BH). Between them, they have a total of 700 beds, 500 at RPH and 200 at BH. There are some 24 anaesthesia service locations (operating theatres and other sites), 20 at RPH and four at BH.

Historically, the technician manager had been directly answerable to the head of the Department (HOD) of Anaesthesia but was in reality largely left to operate independently. The structure of that service involved a management “group” comprising of the manager and two senior technicians (who acted as the daytime co-ordinators). The lines of communication were fluid in that there was an assumption of effective communication and dissemination if any of these individuals were approached. Managerial communications were largely issued without formal record. Over a number of years, it became apparent that this amorphous, informal and semi-detached model benefited neither the anaesthetists, the technicians nor, ultimately, the patients.

The increasing recognition of the importance of several aspects directly resulted in overwhelming pressure on the HOD. These aspects included: clinical governance, clinical developments, new equipment, new techniques
and practices, changing hospital priorities, the increasing impact of employment and occupational health regulations affecting both the anaesthetists and the technicians. By way of illustration, currently at RPH the consultant anaesthetic full-time equivalent (FTE) is 55, the trainee FTE is approximately 50 and the technician FTE is 43. The question that logically arose was whether the anaesthesia technicians should form a group to be considered as a discrete separate department in their own right or whether they should be integrated more fully within the Department of Anaesthesia (or potentially elsewhere). The anaesthesia departmental opinion was overwhelmingly that, given the commonality of purpose and the supportive skill profile, the anaesthesia technicians should remain as a discrete group within the Department of Anaesthesia.

In order to transition the technicians into a more governance-based entity, a senior managerially experienced consultant anaesthetist was identified to provide advice and liaise between the technician manager and the HOD. Within a short period, it became apparent that this model was insufficiently robust. As a consequence, a new executive post was formally established, that of clinical manager of the anaesthesia technicians.

DEPARTMENTAL REVIEW

A number of governance-based audits and reviews were undertaken. These highlighted a lack of uniformity in drug and equipment provision throughout the anaesthesia areas along with out-of-date drugs being stored and equipment being utilised beyond identified service dates. It also became apparent that there was no detailed description of the technician’s day-to-day duties, the job description form (JDF) being anodyne and lacking specificity. There was no plan to address fatigue management and safe working hours. There was no record of overtime worked. There were no records of continuing professional development (CPD) for individual technicians. There were no recorded quality assurance audits. Substantive support roles such as educators and administrative staff also did not exist.

Following this process, a strategy was put in place to address the identified problems.

Departmental structure

A new technician manager was appointed, and a new management structure put in place. The technician manager now works under the direct supervision of the clinical manager (consultant anaesthetist). This provides a close level of support for the technician manager, strengthens strategic planning and facilitates an early warning system for potential problems. The technician manager is now supported by two assistants who interchangeably cover the RPH and BH sites. They are 0.5 FTE managerial and 0.5 FTE technician. This ensures that either one can step into the manager role as required while maintaining their technical skills. To ensure a verifiable audit trail, all communications are directed to the manager and confirmed in writing as appropriate. The daytime co-ordinator role is now shared between a cohort of six experienced technicians ensuring depth of resource, individual investment in the department and the development of organisational skills.

Two new 0.5 FTE educator/0.5 FTE technician positions have been created. These posts have a more senior designation but have no managerial role or responsibilities. They report directly to the technician manager. These posts were designed to both maintain technical skills and to minimise the complete loss of educator support when one or other is absent.

An administrative clerk position was also created, funded and filled. This structure (see Figure 1) deliberately centralises all management activities in order to minimise miscommunication.

Figure 1. Flowchart outlining anaesthetic technicians line of management

Staffing numbers

Staffing here refers to staff who fulfil the ANZCA PS084 standard and who have successfully completed the RPH competency-based induction process. PS084 also stipulates that the hospital must ensure that staff numbers and rostering practices result in the allocation of a competent technician for every case where anaesthesia is administered. This number must allow for:

1. Annual leave.
2. Long service leave.
3. Personal leave (sick leave, carers leave, maternity leave, and so on).

At RPH, it was determined that the minimum staffing numbers for a shift would be based on the N+1 principle, where N equates to the number of tasks requiring attendance by technicians. The “+1” concept ensured that as a minimum there was at least one extra individual available for unexpected episodes. The +1 element is the shift co-ordinator who is responsible for dealing with the daily operational issues. The technician manager, the assistant to the manager and the educator are separate to these numbers.

A review of unexpected technician absences (most commonly due to sickness) revealed that at RPH there was a daily average shortfall of two technicians. This is unlikely to be unique. In addition, given the trauma and tertiary role of RPH, unplanned additional activity frequently occurs; therefore, there are two additional staff members rostered to the daytime shift over and above N+1.

In the event that N+1 is not achievable a formal escalation process is followed. Potential service failure must be identified at the earliest possible moment in order to prioritise services. The co-ordinator generates a report providing the staffing information in a standard format that is then provided to the duty anaesthetist. The co-ordinator will also seek to recruit off-duty or agency technicians (where possible, agency technicians familiar with the hospital are preferred). In the event of a life or limb threatening event the manager, assistant to the manager or the educator could step in, but this would be a rare interim measure while awaiting replacement staff. However, covering shortfalls with these individuals as a routine merely papers over the cracks rather than addressing underlying staffing deficiencies.

DRUGS AND EQUIPMENT

Consultation was undertaken with the responsible consultant anaesthetist within the department as to what drugs, and in what quantity, were required to be available in the anaesthesia trolley in the operating theatre. The layout of the two relevant drawers was agreed and the conclusions implemented. A strict policy of checking and audit thereof was put in place.

The disposable equipment in the trolley was also reviewed and standardised. The same process was undertaken for the anaesthesia room attached to the operating theatre. These too are subject to the same audit process.
The “hard” equipment such as anaesthesia machines, syringe drivers, cell savers, infusion pumps and so on were listed in a register and the next service date noted. Close liaison with the service department was undertaken to ensure that the required service dates were logged, and the service appropriately undertaken in a planned and timely fashion. Checking the next service date forms part of the daily checklist. This is also subject to audit. Figure 2 illustrates examples of the setup standards required by the Department of Anaesthesia.

Figure 2. Anaesthesia trolley, first drawer of the anaesthesia trolley, anaesthesia room

The audits undertaken are formally registered with the RPH Governance Evidence Knowledge Outcomes (GEKO) processes. Discrepancies are reviewed and managed as appropriate.

SCOPE OF PRACTICE

Given the lack of a detailed job description for the technicians, managing inadequate performance was difficult since adequate performance had not actually been defined. A metric was needed. There was also a desire to create a more cohesive and engaged group identity. It was decided that these elements could be addressed by means of creating an overarching approach that would encompass both the generic departmental ethos and the specific activities of each member of the technician service.

Accordingly, two documents were created. The first document described the ethos of the department and the professional standards expected including objectives, processes and outcomes. It also referred to potential future developments.

The second document described in detail the duties and responsibilities of each technician role within the department. The document includes detailed requirements under the following headings:

1. Check/maintain the anaesthetic machine/ANZCA Level 2 check.
2. Prepare for the operating list.
3. Maintain stock levels in theatre.
4. Maintain stock levels in anaesthesia room.
5. Ensure drugs within the expiry dates.
7. Ensure equipment prepared/maintained (service dates)/cleaned.
10. Optional skill set and maintenance of CPD.

Every technician is required to acknowledge their understanding and acceptance of their role by signing this document. Addenda were also created to address the additional roles of the manager, assistant managers and educators.

The two documents were amalgamated into a definitive professional standards and scope of practice manual (see Figure 3).

FATIGUE MANAGEMENT

Proactive fatigue management is now a core process at RPBG. Clinical governance implicitly requires this. An all-too-often theme has been that the operating list must go on no matter what. This is a service-centric view. It does not prioritise patient or staff safety. The anaesthesia technician is a key member of the team and is integral to the safety strategies protecting the patient. If the technician is fatigued and pressured into continuing to work, then patient safety is compromised.

In the event of a shortage of staff, it is tempting to ask individuals to do double shifts, for example doing a morning session after a night shift. This is a dangerous practice. It has been shown that working 17 hours has the same performance deterioration as an alcohol level of 0.05. This is an issue not just for work performance, but also for homeward travel. There is now a strict policy preventing double shifts for technicians at RPBG. In addition, adequate rest periods between duties, including call outs, are enforced. Overtime is also actively monitored to prevent excessive hours. If governance standards are threatened, operating lists are cancelled. This has led to the hospital investing in the technician FTE.

A further issue that affects fatigue is the on-call commitment. The RPH technicians have two staff members permanently sharing the single night shift with day staff rotating into night shifts to accommodate the shortfalls. On top of this there is a requirement for on call staff at night, on weekends and on public holidays. The pool of available staff is affected by the distance from the individual’s home in that they must be able to reach the hospital within 30 minutes. A map with anaesthetic technicians out-of-hours travel time to Royal Perth Hospital was created to show their disposition and potential availability to be included in the on-call roster (see Figure 4). There is also the concept of a “biological contract” whereby once an individual reaches a certain age, they should be considered for opting out of the on-call roster. Currently the on-call frequency is approximately twice per month.
TRAINING

Throughout Australia, the degree of training and experience of the anaesthesia assistant can vary from no formal qualification through to completion of a formally recognised course. Technician training at RPH commenced in an ad hoc fashion in 1966. Almost 30 years later in 1995, an accredited competency based RPH training program was registered in Western Australia (WA). In 2000 this transitioned to a technical and further education (TAFE) administered WA program and finally to a national standard in 2004. In 2013 the training program was fully transferred to the Central Institute of Technology (CIT) located in Perth. The qualification awarded was the Certificate IV of Anaesthetic Technology. In 2016 CIT became part of North Metropolitan TAFE. This qualification has now evolved to become the Diploma of Anaesthetic Technology (HLT57915). PS08 provides guidance on what standards the course should encompass.

The diploma course is part-time and includes practical, hands-on activities in a classroom format as well as in a well-designed simulated anaesthesia technology laboratory. It also includes vital clinical placements in multiple hospitals in the Perth metropolitan area organised by the TAFE. It is suggested that the course equips those qualified to be industry ready after a two-year course. Unfortunately, the course falls short of compliance with PS08 in that the period of supervised clinical training is far less than 12 months. The total number of hours required to comply is calculated by RPH to be 1748 (38 hours per week for 46 weeks). The current total number of hours of supervised practice in the TAFE course is approximately 400, that is, the equivalent of 10.5 weeks.

The RPH Department of Anaesthesia and Pain Medicine recognised the training shortfalls and has, as a consequence, formalised a standard whereby the anaesthetic assistant, whether nurse or technician, must be qualified to be industry ready after two years. This was successful and two trainee posts have been maintained since. Of the trainees who have undertaken these positions to date, six (66 per cent) have been appointed to full-time posts at RPH.

EDUCATORS

Having identified both the technician training shortfall and the lack of formalised training support within this skill group, a successful business case was put forward to appoint two 0.5 FTE educators.

The educator must possess the Certificate IV Training and Assessment (TAE40116) qualification or its equivalent. Their technician role is maintained by ensuring a 50:50 educator/technician balance. The educators oversee the TAFE trainee attachments and ensure that their exposure to the clinical environment is appropriate. They also administer the RPH induction program for new appointees.

As per PS08, anaesthetic technicians must maintain and upgrade their knowledge and skills with regular education activities. At RPH this is undertaken by weekly one-hour education sessions. In addition, the technicians have mandatory hospital updates. They are also encouraged to undertake individual online learning activities. When new techniques or equipment are proposed, the educators are responsible for designing, implementing and recording their safe introduction. An important role of the educators is to organise and facilitate all these activities and to ensure each technician has an up-to-date continuing professional development (CPD) portfolio.

HEALTH AND DEMOGRAPHICS

The impact of staff health episodes is significant since the practice model is based on the expectation of solo practice. It cannot be assumed that help is immediately available. At RPH, a standard approach for all technician health issues was instituted, unless minor in nature, in that a formal review is required by the occupational health department. The conclusion of that review had to be that there are no limitations to activities before the individual can be considered as fit to return to solo technician duties. To assist in this process, the Professional Standards and Scope of Practice document was supplied to the occupational physician. However, the final decision remains that of the clinical manager.
In addition, it is vital to assess the age demographic. This is by no means an exact science, but the higher the proportion of older staff, the higher the risk of absences through sickness, prolonged recovery periods and potential retirements.

COMMUNICATION AND RECORDS

The scope of technology to enhance interpersonal communications is wide. That said, no department can operate in a fashion to accommodate each technician’s personal preferences. Accordingly, it is vital that a standardised method of communication is established and promulgated. Hence, at RPH, the only accepted forms of official communication are the global email address, an officially sanctioned app group or personally addressed mail. This approach guarantees an audit trail and provides protection for both the employer and the individual employee.

ROLE OF THE CONSULTANT ANAESTHETIST

While standards and expectations can be set by the managers, the anaesthetist (whether consultant or trainee) is the team leader and is responsible for maintaining those standards in the clinical setting. If a technician underperforms, the anaesthetist should identify this to the technician and if the issue persists or if the issue is serious, this should be formally brought to the attention of the manager. Problems can only be addressed if highlighted and the anaesthetist has a duty to identify such problems.

CONCLUSION

Anaesthesia technician “functionality” is not an end in itself, it is just the beginning. The question that arises is whether there is an enhanced role for the technicians and whether that can be achieved on a basis that leads to professional registration. The advantage of this step is that national standards would transcend local control and thus strengthen governance, hospital standards and hence patient safety both in the metropolitan and country environments.

REFERENCES


Socrates, Plato and the healthcare worker’s duty to serve

Elizabeth Hessian MBBS MPH FANZCA
Western Health, Victoria, Australia

Dr Liz Hessian is an anaesthetist, deputy director of the Department of Anaesthesia, Pain and Perioperative Medicine at Western Health, and honorary clinical fellow in the Department of Critical Care, University of Melbourne. She has an interest in organisational improvement facilitating well-being of healthcare workers and high-quality patient care.

Julian Savulescu FAHMS
University of Oxford, Oxford, United Kingdom

Professor Julian Savulescu is an Australian philosopher and bioethicist. He is Uheno chair in practical ethics at the University of Oxford, director of the Oxford Uehiro Centre for Practical Ethics, co-director of the Wellcome Centre for Ethics and Humanities, visiting professorial fellow at the Murdoch Children’s Research Institute and Distinguished International Visiting Professor in Law, University of Melbourne.

INTRODUCTION

Non nobis solum nati sumus Not for Ourselves Alone are We Born
— Marcus Tullius Cicero

Throughout the centuries, societies have looked to the caring professions in times of health crisis, and in response, healthcare workers can boast a long history of serving their patients regardless of the hazards. In recent times, the culture of duty to serve has become eroded by an increasing emphasis on self-determination and a transactional approach within the healthcare worker (HCW)/patient relationship. We examine the tension between duty to serve and personal autonomy, and place the four traditional medical ethical principles of beneficence, non-maleficence, justice and autonomy within a layered framework that takes account of societal context and values. These issues are teased out in a hypothetical discourse between two moral philosophers Socrates and Plato, who use a process of reflective equilibrium to resolve the following question: Should healthcare organisations ethically be able to compel healthcare workers to serve during a pandemic, regardless of unavoidable personal risk?

THE DUTY TO SERVE

From ancient times, civilizations have feared contagion. The renowned physician Galen was infamous for running from the Roman smallpox epidemic in 166 AD. Middle Ages writings point to the contagious nature of “the pest” with many physicians urging flight to remote locations. From ancient times, civilisations have feared contagion. The renowned physician Galen was infamous for running from the Roman smallpox epidemic in 166 AD. Middle Ages writings point to the contagious nature of “the pest” with many physicians urging flight to remote locations. Those infected seeking help faced varying responses2. “For every account of a… physician hiding in terror… there are descriptions of… physicians trying desperately to help their patients, and priests administering the sacraments to the dying”. It is difficult to know the scale of physician flight, but Amundsen concludes a general condemnatory attitude towards doctors who abandoned their plague patients to protect their own safety. Changing attitudes more recently are captured by the evolution of the American Medical Association (AMA) Code of Ethics. In 1847, the code was explicit as to physician responsibility: “when pestilence prevails, it is [physicians’] duty to face the danger and to continue their labors for the alleviation of suffering, even at the jeopardy of their own lives”.1” By the 1950s, in response to diminishing physician autonomy and increasingly powerful insurers, the code only required physicians to assist in emergencies. The softened wording might have reflected increasing complacency given advancements in medical care. This complacency was abruptly interrupted in the 1980s by the emergence of HIV/AIDS, HCWs, who for decades had enjoyed a high level of workplace safety, were faced with a contagious illness that led inevitably to a debilitating and early death. The disease was initially most prevalent in two widely vilified groups, homosexual men and those who injected recreational drugs. Discriminatory attitudes and limited knowledge of HIV transmission saw HCWs refusing to treat infected patients2, including in 1992, in 40 per cent of Japanese hospitals3.

The AMA responded initially with a widely ridiculed statement that treating HIV positive patients was only required if physicians were “emotionally able”4. Today it takes a middle ground acknowledging duty balanced with personal risk management:
Because of their commitment to care for the sick and injured, individual physicians have an obligation to provide urgent medical care during disasters… [P]hysicians also have an obligation to evaluate the risks of providing care to individual patients versus the need to be available to provide care in the future[14].

The evolving AMA code illustrates the profession grappling to reconcile established moral principles with competing societal influences. An Australian study by Seale and colleagues in 2009 found that 83 per cent of HCWs would continue to work during a pandemic[1]. The authors noted the varying results across similar international surveys, including in the US where studies showed only around half of all HCWs would continue working[12-13].

The Severe Acute Respiratory Syndrome (SARS) and other disease outbreaks offer further insights. In the 2003 SARS pandemic many facilities faced staff shortages, and martyrs to the cause experienced disproportionately higher exposure to risk when covering for absent colleagues[14]. This was evidenced again in the 2009 H1N1 pandemic where absenteeism was seen in 30 per cent of HCW in the US, 40 per cent in Argentina, and in New Zealand it created temporary stresses in hospitals[15]. Factors contributing to absenteeism were fear of the unknown, shortages of personal protective equipment (PPE), as well as what some researchers have termed “weakly contextualised or poorly understood duty of care”[16,17]. In relation to the SARS outbreak Singer and colleagues “could not reach consensus on the issue of duty to serve, particularly regarding the extent to which healthcare workers are obligated to risk their lives in delivering clinical care”. To answer this question, they urged “urgent attention from researchers, regulatory bodies, and the public[18]”. Unfortunately answers were not available when the latest pandemic hit.

In January 2020, news filtered out from China of a novel human coronavirus, SARS-CoV-2 causing COVID-19. Since that time, the pandemic has circled the globe, overwhelming healthcare systems in many countries. Healthcare workers standing on the frontline risked contracting the disease, sometimes with dire consequences. Early data estimated the risk of HCWs contracting COVID-19 at one in 200, with 15 per cent of those experiencing severe illness and one in 1000 dying[19]. In addition, many HCWs faced the moral distress that came from denying scarce resources to those who would normally receive a full suite of treatments – intensive care unit (ICU) beds, ventilators, or even oxygen[20-21].

At a time when hospitals desperately need their most valuable asset — experienced, trained staff — those staff are questioned about their morality, courage, or should contribute in the face of perceived duty of care[19].

Such tensions indicate that organisations cannot necessarily rely on HCWs to serve under all circumstances during a pandemic. We therefore need to understand the drivers that lead HCWs to step up during adversity, and the spectrum along which the answers lie as to whether HCWs can be compelled to work.

At one extreme HCWs have an absolute duty to work during a pandemic, always placing patient need above personal concerns. This position of martyrdom compels the troops to scramble over the trenches thinking only of duty. It could be represented as a “calling”, a position articulated by one spiritual leader in a study of personal concerns. This position of martyrdom compels the troops to scramble over the trenches thinking only of duty[22].

Reflective equilibrium is a philosophical method seeking a goal of fairness exemplified by society being “a cooperative venture for mutual advantage”, produced[ing] by its collaborative effort a net surplus of advantages and benefits[23,24].

In order to reach the “ideal society” position from “behind the veil of ignorance[25,26]”, the philosophers will need to consider multiple perspectives: HCWs, patients, healthcare organisations, and society as a whole, as well as the four pillars of medical ethics (beneficence, non-maleficence, justice, autonomy) and build a model that embeds these principles within the complexity of societal context.

THE PHILOSOPHERS MEET

Our meeting of Socrates and Plato begins with them reviewing the four key medical ethical principles. Beneficence

Socrates starts by invoking the principle of beneficence. “In modern health care… the principle of beneficence constitutes a foundational principle of the patient-provider relationship[27,28].” HCWs are expected to deliver compassionate care, and in return, they are accorded respect, remuneration and often subsidised training. They therefore have both a moral duty and an implied societal contract to continue to serve regardless of a changing risk environment[29].

Plato responds that this is a simplistic view of the relationship between beneficence and a duty to care. What if by plunging into the conflagration, a HCW becomes fatigued, mentally or physically unwell, causing suboptimal performance, risk of spreading further infection, requirement to step down or diversion of health resources towards her own care? Plato paraphrases Aristotle: “Courage unmatched by wisdom often leads to rashness… to behaviour that undermines optimal effectiveness, improves nothing, and may even cause greater general harm than good[30].”

Socrates suggests that HCWs should expect of themselves a baseline level of beneficence, a “moral minimum”. Thomson wrote of a duty to assist in the case of the stabbing murder of Kitty Genovese whose plight was witnessed by no less than 38 people, none of whom tried to assist or even call the police[31,32]. Simon et al developed this argument into one of a “moral minimum” to assist in times of “critical human need”[33].

Socrates agrees with Plato, in that beneficence should be considered broadly. Beyond duty to patients lies a duty to hospital, colleagues and profession, to the loved ones of patients, and a responsibility to maintain a robust body of scientific knowledge[34]. These broader duties are encompassed by the term “professionalism”.

This sense of obligation towards one’s colleagues was movingly expressed by Ear, Nose and Throat (ENT) residents in New York volunteering to set up a COVID-19 surge ICU:

"Before we began, we reflected on our privilege. How lucky were we to have the opportunity, the choice, to volunteer in contrast to some of our colleagues? We, as otolaryngologists, as subspecialists, were in this moment not special, but physicians like everyone else. It was our duty to help lighten the load of our colleagues[35]."

As Socrates and Plato continue to talk, it becomes apparent that although the principle of beneficence could either support or negate a compelled duty to serve, a “sum of vectors” approach appears more supportive of HCWs’ position. This approach is further developed later as they develop their solution model.

Non-maleficence

Perhaps the most important argument for the principle of non-maleficence supporting a duty to work, Socrates claims, relates to the loss of public trust should HCWs abandon their posts.

Population surveys rate nurses the most trustworthy of all professions; doctors and other HCWs scoring only slightly lower[36]. A perception that HCWs are stepping back during times of danger runs the risk of destroying hard-won trust in the caring professions[37]. Lost trust may result in patients who are less motivated to present, follow advice, and even miss the beneficial placebo effect that may arise from the therapeutic relationship.

In order to prevent reputational harm to the caring professions, Socrates argues that non-maleficence – their professions’ reputation – should guide HCWs to remain steadfast in the face of danger.

Additionally, Socrates points to the high levels of training of HCWs. Non-maleficence should be just as applicable to professional colleagues as to patients, and there is risk to less experienced HCWs who cover those who have left[38,39]. “Training not only increases the value of the aid, it may also reduce the risk associated with providing it[40].”

Australasian Anaesthesia 2021 – Management and legal

Socrates, Plato and the healthcare worker’s duty to serve

The polar opposite emphasises HCW self-determination, with a “transactional” relationship between parties where the vendor is free to choose hours worked, fees charged, and choice of risk undertaken. This position was encapsulated following the emergence of HIV:

[Healthcare has been largely a product of the free market, carrying with it no obligations binding physicians to treat those needing medical attention[39,40].

The medical care system is steeped in individualism and autonomy… Medical care operates on the free market system and physicians are its free agents[41].

A middle ground achieved through reflective equilibrium may be possible. To do this we have created a hypothetical dialogue between two philosophers – Socrates and Plato. Socrates’ original position supports the “calling” approach: HCWs have a moral duty to provide care during a pandemic. Plato argues for healthcare being transactional: that as autonomous persons, HCWs can choose to absent themselves during a pandemic. Through their dialogue, the philosophers move to a middle ground: a moral position supporting HCWs compelled to work only when organisations account for individual circumstances, mitigate risk by strict mutual obligation, and are subject to relevant societal contextual factors[42].

To reach consensus, the philosophers engage in a process of reflective equilibrium, described by John Rawls, where decisions are “negotiated in a ‘process of mutual adjustment of principles and considered judgements’”[43,44] in order to bring principles and judgements into equilibrium.
Plato counters by extending non-maleficence further to healthcare organisation obligation to avoid harm to its staff. If knowing that, for example, an older male anaesthetist has a higher baseline risk than others, how can that organisation ethically require him to work? And what of risk to HCW emotional wellbeing in working beyond their usual scope of practice? For the first time, many of us were truly scared to go to work, to hurt the patients, to not be able to emotionally manage what we were seeing. We were not trained in critical care44. Plato then describes further harms to the profession: surveyed HCWs abhor punitive measures to compel working that may deter new members from joining the profession and encourage existing members to leave45.

Socrates counters stating that organisations can impose such obligations, but only if they have maximised measures to reduce workforce risk. The philosophers start to shift their absolute positions to consider risk mitigation by mutual obligation41.

Socrates draws on Singer in considering this question.

The value of reciprocity requires healthcare institutions to support and protect healthcare workers, to help them cope with very stressful situations, to acknowledge their work in dangerous and difficult conditions, and to have workable plans for emergency situations49.

Studies of essential workers indicate that although a high proportion are willing to step up during a pandemic, they may be prevented from doing so by personal circumstances50. Organisations can support HCs by providing reciprocal incentives such as care of children, pets or other frail relatives, commute and accommodation alternatives, and flexible work hours.

The philosophers start to consider how reciprocity also supports the next ethical pillar, that of justice.

Justice

Justice requires that patients are treated fairly, particularly when resources are limited. Justice also applies to the obligations by organisations, governments and society towards HCs with respect to mutual obligation and reciprocity41.

How can reciprocal obligations of healthcare organisations help support a just approach? Surveys show HCs prefer their drivers to be carrots rather than sticks, favouring an approach that “creates a supportive environment for personal decision-making” that respects “individualised circumstantial limits”11.

Increased remuneration is a potentially attractive incentive. During SARS, HCs treating infectious patients received additional financial reward with Vietnam paying up to five times usual salaries46. However, care is required to ensure that financial incentives achieve their desired outcome. Some Toronto hospitals created pay discrepancies between hospitals in close geographical proximity; aggrieved nurses complained that they were required to ensure that financial incentives achieve their desired outcome. Some Toronto hospitals created pay discrepancies between hospitals in close geographical proximity; aggrieved nurses complained that they were required to ensure that financial incentives achieve their desired outcome. Some Toronto hospitals created pay discrepancies between hospitals in close geographical proximity; aggrieved nurses complained that they were required to ensure that financial incentives achieve their desired outcome. Some Toronto hospitals created pay discrepancies between hospitals in close geographical proximity; aggrieved nurses complained that they were required to ensure that financial incentives achieve their desired outcome. Some Toronto hospitals created pay discrepancies between hospitals in close geographical proximity; aggrieved nurses complained that they were required to ensure that financial incentives achieve their desired outcome. Some Toronto hospitals created pay discrepancies between hospitals in close geographical proximity; aggrieved nurses complained that they were required to ensure that financial incentives achieve their desired outcome. Some Toronto hospitals created pay discrepancies between hospitals in close geographical proximity; aggrieved nurses complained that they were required to ensure that financial incentives achieve their desired outcome. Some Toronto hospitals created pay discrepancies between hospitals in close geographical proximity; aggrieved nurses complained that they were required to ensure that financial incentives achieve their desired outcome. Some Toronto hospitals created pay discrepancies between hospitals in close geographical proximity; aggrieved nurses complained that they were required to ensure that financial incentives achieve their desired outcome. Some Toronto hospitals created pay discrepancies between hospitals in close geographical proximity; aggrieved nurses complained that they were required to ensure that financial incentives achieve their desired outcome. Some Toronto hospitals created pay discrepancies between hospitals in close geographical proximity; aggrieved nurses complained that they were required to ensure that financial incentives achieve their desired outcome. Some Toronto hospitals created pay discrepancies between hospitals in close geographical proximity; aggrieved nurses complained that they were required to ensure that financial incentives achieve their desired outcome. Some Toronto hospitals created pay discrepancies between hospitals in close geographical proximity; aggrieved nurses complained that they were required to ensure that financial incentives achieve their desired outcome. Some Toronto hospitals created pay discrepancies between hospitals in close geographical proximity; aggrieved nurses complained that they were required to ensure that financial incentives achieve their desired outcome. Some Toronto hospitals created pay discrepancies between hospitals in close geographical proximity; aggrieved nurses complained that they were required to ensure that financial incentives achieve their desired outcome. Some Toronto hospitals created pay discrepancies between hospitals in close geographical proximity; aggrieved nurses complained that they were required to ensure that financial incentives achieve their desired outcome. Some Toronto hospitals created pay discrepancies between hospitals in close geographical proximity; aggrieved nurses complained that they were required to ensure that financial incentives achieve their desired outcome. Some Toronto hospitals created pay discrepancies between hospitals in close geographical proximity; aggrieved nurses complained that they were required to ensure that financial incentives achieve their desired outcome. Some Toronto hospitals created pay discrepancies between hospitals in close geographical proximity; aggrieved nurses complained that they were required to ensure that financial incentives achieve their desired outcome.

The carrot approach can be tailored to provide benefit to both HCs and their employers. Ensuring early access for HCs to vaccines and therapeutics, especially in scenarios of limited supply, would be popular and advantageous to organisations with an eye to maintaining good workforce health. Such approaches also shift the incentive beyond the purely monetary to that of improved health and wellbeing. This approach speaks to equity, providing an incentive that is just as valuable to the wealthy as it is to the poor47.

Autonomy

Plato now moves to arguably the most prized of the medical ethical principles, that of autonomy. Autonomy allows HCs to determine their own course by evaluating personal risks and benefits47. Our older male anaesthetist has his own health at stake, and Plato argues he has the right to protect himself. By allowing HCs autonomy, Plato argues they will make the appropriate personal choices to maintain health and wellbeing, thus ensuring a sustainable and high-quality service to their patients.

Socrates counters saying that HCs will not necessarily weigh risks accurately. Some HCs will inevitably stray too close to the precipice, failing to self-protect sufficiently, others may overweight their personal risk in calculating the equation. “[T]he limits may be institutionally imposed… [recognising] the problems of [the agent] making such value judgments”52.

But to ensure a humane society, Plato insists we should always place autonomy at the pinnacle of medical ethics lest we travel the slippery slope taken by the Nazi regime. Michael Kirby has eloquently described the stain left on our history from the regime’s barbarism.

There will always be memories of the Holocaust. Even when every distorted mind that conceived and executed the oppression is dead, there will be memories. They are written into the consciousness of humanity forever. Human beings everywhere will continue to recall the pitch-black moments of human history that came together in the Holocaust44,45.

At the Nuremberg trials, Nazi doctors justified their inhumane experimentation on non-consenting prisoners by claiming research was necessary for national security and the greater good53.

Their argument that societal need trumped individual autonomy was roundly rejected by the trial judges. From these trials emerged the Nuremberg Code, whose first principle was that “the voluntary consent of the human subject is absolutely essential”54. “[L]ack of respect for autonomy became lack of respect for human life and indifference to the infliction of pain and murder”55 – surely a path that healthcare organisations should avoid at all costs.

Socrates agrees that the principle of autonomy is paramount to ensuring a humane society. But, he says, HCs have full autonomy, having consented to joining professions with known occupational risk56. HCs experience occupational violence at the hands of angry or delirious patients, incur needle-stick injuries causing chronic infectious diseases, suffer higher rates of mental illness and suicide, and, are on the frontline to respond during pandemics57.

Plato counters, saying that the HC may not have been aware of the particular risk in serving during a pandemic, especially given there were many decades in the 20th century that were mercifully free of widespread contagion58. The influenza outbreaks that occurred during the middle of the 20th century, H2N2 (“The Asian Flu”, 1957-8) and H3N2 (“The Hong Kong Flu”, 1968-70), although widespread, lacked the societal punch of the earlier Spanish flu pandemic59. Have HCs really consented if they were unaware they would need to contribute during an outbreak of a serious communicable disease?

Socrates concedes that the risks have varied over time but argues that there has been sufficient temporal proximity to infectious disease outbreaks during the entirety of the 20th century for HCs to be at least aware of the impacts on their profession, even if individuals had not been personally affected60.

Plato argues that compelling HCs to work against their will is pandemic is comparable to other states of involuntary servitude such as military conscription61.

Socrates concedes this point, but muses that military analogies might provide useful examples of how informed consent and reward for those who choose additional risk could benefit HCs. Malm et al developed this idea:

[Traditionally epidemics have not been met with the expectation that all doctors serve equally, but with the financing of cadres of "plague doctors" or with the exploitation of existing pools of military medical personnel... who are habituated to following orders and accepting risk]62.

Structures allowing rapid deployment of fully consented HCs include corps of compensated or volunteer individuals, specifically trained in infectious diseases management. The National Guard is cited as an example of such cadres, but perhaps models more relevant to the Australian setting include Surf Lifesaving Australia and the volunteer Country Fire Authority.

Socrates and Plato have arrived at an impasse but have nonetheless created a foundation supported by the four medical ethical pillars. They decide to consider their arguments as a “sum of vectors” before adding further dimensions in a layered model that will move them closer to an answer.

Sum of vectors analysis

One original way to make progress in practical ethics is the “sum of vectors” approach. On one view of ethics, ethics is about weighing reasons. Reasons are like forces in physics. They have a direction and a strength. In physics, we discover the overall force (which way the ball should roll) by summing these different vectors. In ethics, we must also “sum the reasons” to discover what we have overall most reason to do.

It is important to recognise that different factual circumstances (context) may affect the strength but not the direction of a single vector. Thus, under conditions of abundant resources, the vector of distributive justice is much weaker than when resources are scarce. This may change what we have overall most reason to do in different contexts, even though the same vectors are operative.

The philosophers’ arguments are summarised in Table 1 and Figure 1 illustrating a vector analysis of the four medical ethical pillars. They decide to consider their arguments as a “sum of vectors” before adding further dimensions in a layered model that will move them closer to an answer.
Table 1. The philosophers’ arguments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Argument</th>
<th>“Calling” (1)</th>
<th>“Transactional” (-1)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Beneficence</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Senseless martyrdom</td>
<td></td>
<td>-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complexity of competing duties</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Care of patients</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Societal contract</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A HCW moral minimum</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obligation to care for profession</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Non-maleficence</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Obligation of organisation to protect HCWs</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loss of HCWs from professions</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reputational harm to profession</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Harm to less experienced HCWs</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Autonomy</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autonomy ensures a humane society</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consent ensures autonomy</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Autonomous decisions may be biased</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consent not fully informed</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ignorance of risk not a defence</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Involuntary servitude</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preparation can ensure consent</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Justice</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fairness to HCWs by organisations</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fairness to patients by HCWs</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Utilitarian argument</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mitigation of risk by organisational reciprocity</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

HCW = healthcare worker

Figure 1. “Sum of vectors” analysis

This figure shows the “sum of vectors” analysis for the data in Table 1.

Socrates, Plato and the healthcare worker’s duty to serve

Although Socrates’ position is stronger using this somewhat blunt instrument, Plato also has significant points on the board. Both agree that the fundamental principles should not be discarded, as the arguments for each side using these principles appear well-founded and coherent. Rather, their initial starting judgements of answer extremes will need to be adjusted to ensure equilibrium with these foundational principles.

These adjustments include weighting risk for both HCWs and actions and considering how different societal contexts could shift their model along the axes.

Personal risk, risk of an act

Socrates and Plato agree on one point: that duty and a sense of vocation are key ingredients for the caring professions. They also agree that during times of unprecedented disruption, every person in society has obligations beyond the usual. The point on which they disagree is how extreme a risk should be taken to fulfil those obligations. And should all comers contribute equally?

Ethicists consider acts of service as either reasonable duty or supererogatory. Urmson described this distinction as dividing

“The good that we expect of one another (our duties) and the good that one may hope for or aspire to or admire in others but that is above and beyond the call of duty and outside the realm of ordinary socially-enforced obligations, i.e. the supererogatory.”

Another description of supererogatory acts relates to others’ expectations: “acts that go beyond our duty... are ones we are praised for doing and are not blamed for not doing.” Finally, somewhat poetically:

“Supererogatory acts arise from a movement of the soul toward generosity beyond previously known boundaries for that person.”

An example of supererogatory act would be rushing into a cardiac arrest of a COVID-19 positive patient without first donning PPE. Such an act is considered to be beyond the call of duty, despite measurable harm to patients of delayed resuscitation.
Authors have expanded the binary notion of duty versus supererogatory acts into more gradated levels. Clark invokes the biblical story of the good Samaritan who stopped to check an injured Jew by the side of the road, bound his wounds, transported him to a nearby town, and provided for his ongoing care. Not only is a service of great compassion, but all the more telling because of the historical enmity between the Samaritans and the Jews. Ruderman ponders "whether the acceptable standard of professional engagement should occur at the level of 'splendid', 'good', or 'merely decent' Samaritan?". The philosophers shift from the what of the duty to the who. Are all equal with respect to obligation?

A radiologist, who exclusively works remotely interpreting images sent to her home office, could justifiably argue that she had made a choice to accept relative professional isolation for the benefit of reduced occupational risk. Shifting to activities beyond her usual practice – perhaps manning a COVID-19 testing station – could be seen as an act of at least a "good" Samaritan. Furthermore, we must consider inequalities between the professions. Should not the doctors sitting at the privileged pinnacle of the system be required to contribute more during times of emergency, in recognition of benefits of higher remuneration, autonomy and societal deference they enjoy during times of prosperity? Nurses may incur greater risks given extended contact with patients, and will have enjoyed fewer professional tangible benefits45. Healthcare organisations should carefully consider these inequalities and determine a reasonable expectation of each HCW.

When assessing human research, regulators risk stratify both research interventions and participants. In particular, vulnerable groups such as children, pregnant women and Indigenous research participants are identified for special consideration46. Drawing on this paradigm, Socrates proposes that both the activities and the personal risk inherent in HCW age, experience and health, could be better matched. Clark describes a sliding scale, where "as individual risk increases, the responsibility to render aid diminishes"47. This approach was applied by Reid with respect to HIV: "According to the framework of the HIV/AIDS debate, obligation sinks with rising levels of risk and there is a level of risk at which the duty to serve no longer holds"48.

Socrates is therefore moving away from his original judgement of an absolute duty to serve towards a more nuanced position where the healthcare organisation is responsible for understanding individual HCW and clinical activity risk and deploying staff accordingly.

With good human resource management, our older male anaesthetist could be redirected from the intubation unit to the postoperative ward; our radiologist, who exclusively works remotely interpreting images sent to her home office, could justifiably argue that she had made a choice to accept relative professional isolation for the benefit of reduced occupational risk. A radiologist, who exclusively works remotely interpreting images sent to her home office, could justifiably argue that she had made a choice to accept relative professional isolation for the benefit of reduced occupational risk. Shifting to activities beyond her usual practice – perhaps manning a COVID-19 testing station – could be seen as an act of at least a "good" Samaritan.

The philosophers have arrived at a mutually satisfactory position on the question of HCW duty to serve during a pandemic. The philosophers smile as they alight on this important caveat, realising that the somewhat grim analysis of their duty to care ought to be weaved within the fabric of society in order to provide HCPs with the conditions and resources necessary to satisfy their duty, rather than based on an ethic derived entirely from individual obligations20. Every society must decide ahead of crises where their moral minimum lies. Visualising this question graphically, this setpoint will establish the equipoise value for each society's model. In different societies, the location of the moral minimum on the Y axis will lie at different points between the two extremes of a "calling" and "transnational" approach to duty. Societies must then determine how best to support and scaffold the safest and most consistent approach for their healthcare workforces to operate around that pre-determined set-point. Ahead of disaster, they must decide which actions to praise and incentivise, which to apply deterrent measures, and what reasonable mutual obligation frameworks can be established. Crucially, each society may answer these questions differently. But in proactively planning, organisations can be explicit and HCWs informed, allowing both to enter the crisis with a unified and clearly understood path.

AN INJECTION OF POSITIVITY

The arguments presented are all couched around pandemic duty being gruelling, emotionally taxing and dangerous. An important qualification is that service may not necessarily be universally negative. Many HCWs have entered the caring professions motivated by altruism. Rewarding moments of human connection are described here:

In a moment of compassion we are afforded a rare human experience, and for a short while, our absorbency with the self is extinguished. We are able to cease the grinding striving for the primacy of our own existence and our own welfare and are momentarily released from the burden of individual resolve. This relief is not unlike the selflessness that comes when absorbed in great works of art. Examples of extinguishing the self can also be found in certain great lives, like that of the Buddha, where a preoccupation with self is superseded by a concern for others, and we move toward an annihilation of individuality49.

Increasing empathy, pride in a job well done in the face of great adversity, as well as the inevitable camaraderie that arises when one is inextricably linked within and dependent upon a team are some other benefits.

Being in this medical apocalypse bind us together, as a team, as brothers and sisters. We reached out to each other; checked up on each other, and took care of each other. [We] have learned greater lessons on empathy and teamwork than we ever could have without this experience. We are better physicians than we ever could have been and can be proud of what we have done49.

The philosophers smile as they alight on this important caveat, realising that the somewhat grim analysis of their model is lightened by these more positive overlays.

CONCLUSION

The philosophers have arrived at a mutually satisfactory position on the question of HCW duty to serve during a pandemic. Neither an absolute duty to serve, nor a complete abrogation of a HCW's right to make choice is morally justifiable.

Instead, the responsibility for ensuring a sustainable workforce during a health crisis lies collectively with the professions, healthcare organisations, and society. Without this responsibility HCW lives are put at risk and in many cases HCW's have died (Figure 2). HCWs must nurture a culture of professionalism, vocation, selflessness and collegiality, and be aware of where their individual moral minimum lies. This approach must be balanced against their need to self-care and consider competing duties such as to family.

Healthcare organisations must have a detailed understanding of their individual staff members' experience, abilities, health risk and pre-existing enjoyment of the benefits of working within healthcare. They must be agile in mobilising reciprocal supports, innovating and communicating with HCWs to ensure best protection of the vulnerable while maximising utilisation of the expertise and motivation of highly trained staff.
Societies must reflect on their individual values within ethical frameworks, and if they afford absolute autonomous rights to their populations, must be internally consistent and assume similar rights for HCWs. They must then provide the scaffolding of practical resources and cultural supports, allowing those stationed at the final garrison to safely deliver consistent and high-level care to those seeking sanctuary. The philosophers have reached a position eloquently expressed by Reid writing in the aftermath of SARS:

Duty to care... arises from social reflection on what response to an epidemic would be consistent with our values and our needs, recognizing our shared vulnerability to disease and death. Such reflectionunderwrites a strong duty of care, but one not to be borne solely by the altruism and heroism of individual healthcare workers41.

Not for ourselves alone are we born, but rather, we exist as individual threads within the complex fabric of society; as we weave together creating its strength, so it scaffolds and enfolds us supporting our endeavours.

REFERENCES

Medicolegal insights into anaesthesia

Chris Bolton MBBS FANZCA PhD
Melbourne, Australia

Dr Chris Bolton divides his professional life between private clinical practice and working as a medicolegal advisor for one of Australia’s largest medical defence organisations (MDOs). He has two children, one wife and lives in domestic bliss. His current passion is downhill mountain bike-riding but he has previously represented Australia in both fencing and sailing. He was fifth in the Australian age-group triathlon championships in 2019 and, prior to COVID, was active in local amateur theatre productions.

Disclaimer: The following article offers general advice only. Practitioners should always contact their MDO to discuss their specific situation.

INTRODUCTION

Fear comes in all shapes and sizes, sometimes rational, other times not. In clinical practice, true fear strikes when the patient suddenly and unexpectedly deteriorates for no obvious reason. The feeling that unknown forces are at work, and that the situation is out of the control, is truly frightening. The medicolegal world, for the majority of practitioners, is a similarly frightening place for the very same reasons. It is also a world that we are increasingly likely to be drawn into. The following chapter will attempt to shed some light on the workings of this dark place, offer some insight on how to avoid entering it, and dispel some of the less rational fears associated with it.

AN INCONVENIENT TRUTH

Australia and New Zealand are ranked among the most highly individualistic societies in the world. We tend to consider ourselves in the context of “I” rather than “we”. Self out-ranks community, and the mantles of previous revered community figures such as lawyers, doctors and bankers have been systematically eroded. Meanwhile, our communities’ expectations of the standard of medical care are justifiably high, however, these expectations are becoming increasingly unrealistic with the widespread peddling of pseudo-medical literature and opinion on the internet. The net result is that patients are now, more likely than ever, to be dissatisfied and exercise their right to complain.

In short, our practice climate is warming up, and we have little or no control over the factors driving this change. Our best chance of survival (that is, avoiding complaints) therefore lies in understanding and adapting to our changing medicolegal environment. At the heart of this lies the concept of patient satisfaction.

SATISFACTION

We all aim to provide exceptional care. We all aim to have satisfied patients. Sadly, this is not always the case. Patients evaluate the quality of their care by comparing their experience of care with their pre-held expectations. When there is a shortfall between the experience and the expectations, patients become dissatisfied. Dissatisfied patients complain. While this is not a particularly earth-shattering observation, it is the basis of all medicolegal notifications.

It is therefore useful to look at the factors that drive the “satisfaction equation”:

Satisfaction = difference between what is experienced and what is expected
Communication is both verbal and non-verbal and requires a rarely found ability to listen. It is the most potent tool we have at our disposal to bring patient experience and expectations into phase. Effective communication in the pre-anaesthetic period allows for the management of expectations, whilst communication is also integral to the experience of care (Table 1). An assessment of the quality of communication is also the basis on which the practitioner’s response becomes a further opportunity for open disclosure and education, while also demonstrating an understanding of, and sympathy to, the patient’s views and experience.

When things go wrong
Things do go wrong. Errors are made. Anaesthesia training focuses on how to avoid adverse events and, in the rare event that one does occur, its clinical management. Unfortunately, how to manage the patient as a person in these situations often gets overlooked.

Open disclosure
Following the acute clinical management of an adverse event, the single most important process in the management of the patient is open disclosure. Practitioners often fear that an acknowledgement of an error will lead to litigation. In reality, quite the opposite is true. The process of open disclosure is not only part of our duty of care, it often becomes the focal point of the patient’s experience of care.

Open disclosure should be done in person and be a truthful, objective account of what occurred. It is about communication and education, and making the patient feel that they are respected and cared for. The patient’s emotions should be acknowledged and supported. Open disclosure should be viewed as a process not an event, and it is often appropriate to plan a series of meetings. Many potential complaints have been avoided through effective open disclosure.

Complaints
Not all of the people can be pleased, all of the time. When a patient is dissatisfied, it is their right to complain. If communication has failed to resolve an issue, a patient should be offered the opportunity to submit a formal complaint. This, in itself, is often a therapeutic process for the patient.

Complaints are usually directed to a third party such as an anaesthesia department or hospital, or to a regulatory body, for example, the Australian Health Practitioner Regulation Agency (AHPRA) or New Zealand’s Health and Disability Commissioner (HDC). Complainants invariably seek an apology and are usually motivated by a desire to ensure that the situation does not occur again through practitioner awareness or education. Less commonly there is a desire to seek compensation or see the practitioner disciplined.

Practitioners should always take complaints seriously and respond appropriately. It is hazardous to allow the response to be delegated to others (for example, a hospital complaints officer) as it can never be assumed that a third party will respond in either a timely or appropriate fashion. All complaints should be dealt with personally, promptly, and under the guidance of an MDO.

Why are anaesthetists contacting their MDO?
As already mentioned, anaesthetists are increasingly finding the need to contact their MDO. Table 3 summarises data published by an Australian MDO regarding the reasons for their members’ notifications.

Communication
Dissatisfaction on the rise
Regulatory authorities in both Australia and New Zealand report that the notification rates about medical practitioners are on the rise6. A major Australian MDO with several thousand anaesthetist members, reports the same pattern for anaesthetists, with one in 18 of their anaesthesia members contacting them for medicolegal advice in the year 2017-2018. It is well recognised by MDOs that most medicolegal complaints have their roots in poor communication8.

**Table 1. Factors effecting experience of care (Drapor and Hill)³**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Factor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Communication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information provided</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Being treated with respect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perceived involvement in decision making</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The quality of the facilities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level of clinical skill demonstrated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waiting times</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Continuity of care</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discharge planning</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 2. Factors effecting expectations of care (Carr-Hill)⁴**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Factor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Life-style</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Culture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Previous experiences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Personal values</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 3. Reasons for MDO notifications (Australia)⁹⁰**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reason</th>
<th>Percentage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Complaint to regulator</td>
<td>49%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Claim for compensation</td>
<td>25%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Employment dispute</td>
<td>12%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coronial matter</td>
<td>8%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Billing audit</td>
<td>1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td>5%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These will all be discussed in turn.

Complaints to a regulator
Anyone can make a notification to a regulatory authority. As the community watchdog, regulators are duty-bound to consider any complaint about a health practitioner. Notifications may be referred from one regulator to another depending on the nature of the complaint. Regulators have different powers but tend to have similar handling processes which will be discussed below.

Once a complaint has been received by a regulator, the practitioner is immediately notified. Rather ironically, the practitioner may not be given any details about the complaint at this stage as the investigator may consider that more information is required from the complainant to clearly identify the issues. Once the investigator has established the details of the complaint, the practitioner is asked for a response. They are provided with a complete, or partially redacted copy of the complaint and may be asked to respond to the complaint as it stands, or to a series of questions posed by the investigator. The practitioner should always involve their MDO in the drafting of the response.

Once the response is submitted, the matter is referred for assessment. Further information may be sought from the practitioner during the assessment phase to clarify certain issues. The complainant will automatically receive a copy of the practitioner’s response unless a request is made to withhold it on reasonable grounds. As such, the practitioner’s response becomes a further opportunity for open disclosure and education, while also demonstrating an understanding of, and sympathy to, the patient’s views and experience.

Once a decision has been made on a matter, both the complainant and the practitioner are provided with the decision including the rationale for its formulation. Not all regulators have the power to impose conditions, however those that don’t, have the ability to refer the matter to a regulator who does. The possible outcomes of a complaint therefore include:

- Complaint dismissal.
- Conditions or undertakings imposed on the practitioner.

Regulatory authorities in both Australia and New Zealand report that the notification rates about medical practitioners are on the rise⁶⁻⁷. A major Australian MDO with several thousand anaesthetist members, reports the same pattern for anaesthetists, with one in 18 of their anaesthesia members contacting them for medicolegal advice in the year 2017-2018. It is well recognised by MDOs that most medicolegal complaints have their roots in poor communication⁸.

**Table 1. Factors effecting experience of care (Drapor and Hill)³**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Factor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Communication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Information provided</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Being treated with respect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perceived involvement in decision making</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The quality of the facilities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level of clinical skill demonstrated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Waiting times</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Continuity of care</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discharge planning</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table 2. Factors effecting expectations of care (Carr-Hill)⁴**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Factor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Life-style</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Culture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Previous experiences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Personal values</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Dissatisfaction on the rise**

Regulatory authorities in both Australia and New Zealand report that the notification rates about medical practitioners are on the rise⁶⁻⁷. A major Australian MDO with several thousand anaesthetist members, reports the same pattern for anaesthetists, with one in 18 of their anaesthesia members contacting them for medicolegal advice in the year 2017-2018. It is well recognised by MDOs that most medicolegal complaints have their roots in poor communication⁸.

**Table 3. Reasons for MDO notifications (Australia)⁹⁰**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reason</th>
<th>Percentage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Complaint to regulator</td>
<td>49%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Claim for compensation</td>
<td>25%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Employment dispute</td>
<td>12%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coronial matter</td>
<td>8%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Billing audit</td>
<td>1%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td>5%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These will all be discussed in turn.

**Complaints to a regulator**

Anyone can make a notification to a regulatory authority. As the community watchdog, regulators are duty-bound to consider any complaint about a health practitioner. Notifications may be referred from one regulator to another depending on the nature of the complaint. Regulators have different powers but tend to have similar handling processes which will be discussed below.

Once a complaint has been received by a regulator, the practitioner is immediately notified. Rather ironically, the practitioner may not be given any details about the complaint at this stage as the investigator may consider that more information is required from the complainant to clearly identify the issues. Once the investigator has established the details of the complaint, the practitioner is asked for a response. They are provided with a complete, or partially redacted copy of the complaint and may be asked to respond to the complaint as it stands, or to a series of questions posed by the investigator. The practitioner should always involve their MDO in the drafting of the response.

Once the response is submitted, the matter is referred for assessment. Further information may be sought from the practitioner during the assessment phase to clarify certain issues. The complainant will automatically receive a copy of the practitioner’s response unless a request is made to withhold it on reasonable grounds. As such, the practitioner’s response becomes a further opportunity for open disclosure and education, while also demonstrating an understanding of, and sympathy to, the patient’s views and experience.

Once a decision has been made on a matter, both the complainant and the practitioner are provided with the decision including the rationale for its formulation. Not all regulators have the power to impose conditions, however those that don’t, have the ability to refer the matter to a regulator who does. The possible outcomes of a complaint therefore include:

- Complaint dismissal.
- Conditions or undertakings imposed on the practitioner.
• A restriction of a practitioner’s practice or prescribing abilities.
• The removal of the practitioner’s right to practice.

**Mandatory reporting**

Mandatory reporting to a regulator is required when a practitioner believes that they, themselves, or a colleague pose a substantial risk of patient harm due to an inability to practice at the level required. In Australia, mandatory reporting applies when a practitioner’s poor performance is due to:

• A mental or physical condition.
• Drug or alcohol intoxication.
• A departure from professional standards.
• When they are engaging in, have engaged in, or might engage in sexual misconduct in their clinical practice.

In New Zealand, the Good Medical Practice guidelines state that mandatory reporting applies when it is considered that a practitioner is unable to perform their duties due to:

• A mental or physical condition, or
• When they have been dismissed or resigned for reasons of competence.

The document goes on to state however, that reporting should be considered in any situation where it is reasonably suspected that a practitioner, for any reason, poses an unacceptable risk of harm to patients.

On a practical level, the decision to report can be a difficult one. It is based on having formed a reasonable belief that the practitioner poses an unacceptable risk of harm. To help establish whether this threshold has been reached in the notifier’s mind, it is often useful for the practitioner to discuss the situation informally with the regulatory body, or with their MDO. It should be remembered that the decision being made is whether to report, not whether to discipline. It is up to others to investigate and make that judgement. Notifications may be made anonymously.

**What are the rules?**

The code of conduct that practitioners are expected to comply with is no mystery. Its details can be found in the Good Medical Practice guidelines of the Australasian Medical Board’s, and the Medical Council of New Zealand’s, respective publications entitled Good medical practice. These documents detail how practitioners are expected to conduct themselves in their interactions with patients, peers and staff, both within and outside of their workspace. An appreciation of the breadth of the code of conduct can be gleaned by examining the list of chapter headings given in Table 4. An even greater appreciation of the code can be gained by actually reading it.

**Table 4. Chapter headings from Good Medical Practice. A code of conduct for doctors in Australia**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter Heading</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Professionalism.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Providing good care.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Working with patients.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Respectful culture.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Working with healthcare professionals.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Working within the healthcare system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patient safety and minimising risk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maintaining professional performance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Professional behavior.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ensuring doctor’s health.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teaching, supervising and assessing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Undertaking research.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In the event of a complaint to a regulator, the standards outlined in the code are those against which a practitioner’s conduct will be judged. It is obviously in the practitioner’s own interests to familiarise themselves with the content of these documents.

**Claims for compensation**

Australia and New Zealand have different medical malpractice laws. The author has no experience with New Zealand’s quite unique system and therefore necessarily limits his comments to Australia.

A claim for compensation due to negligence is an uncommon event and as such a less common cause of MDO notifications (see Table 3). If a claim is made, practitioners should immediately seek the advice of their MDO.

A successful claim of negligence must demonstrate;

1. that a duty of care was owed to the patient,
2. that this duty of care was breached and,
3. that sufficient damage ensued as a result of the breach to warrant restitution.

**Negligence – a breach of the duty of care owed**

The duty of care may be breached by:

1. Failing to adequately inform, and/or
2. Failing to practice at the level expected.

If established, the patient may then reasonably argue negligence.

A failure to adequately inform

The underlying tenet of our patient-centred care system is that patients are involved in their medical decision making. This requires being provided with sufficient information about the proposed management, the treatment options, and the benefits and risks of each, to allow them to make an informed decision on whether they wish to proceed or not. Practitioners must provide information in language that the patient can easily understand. This may include written information, diagrammatic information or interpreter, if necessary. Written information on its own is not considered sufficient. Patients must be given the time and opportunity to ask questions. Once this process has occurred, the discussion, and its content, must be documented in the patient notes. If there is no documentation, there is no evidence that any discussion took place.

The piece of string in all of this is, of course, which risks should be discussed. Simplistically, risks can be considered objective or subjective. Objective risks include those risks that a reasonable person, in the patient’s position, would attach significance to and want to know about (a so-called material risk). A subjective risk is a risk that the anaesthetist is aware of, or should reasonably be aware of, that this particular patient would attach significance to (a material risk specific to this particular patient). Risks that should be considered are those that are uncommon but with serious consequences, and those that are more common with less severe consequences. The Australian and New Zealand College of Anaesthetists (ANZCA) has addressed this topic in its PS26 publication entitled Statement on informed consent for anaesthesia or sedation.

It is therefore useful to consider the common causes of medicolegal claims in anaesthesia. These include dental damage (up to half of the claims), complications of neuraxial or peripheral nerve blocks, awareness, and death.

A list of complications that might therefore be considered for discussion in any given pre-operative consultation is as follows (see Table 5).

**Table 5. Potential complications of anaesthesia that may be discussed in the consent process**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of Complication</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dental damage.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sore throat.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nausea and/or vomiting.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emergence delirium in children.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complications of invasive procedures including nerve blocks and arterial or central venous lines.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug reactions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Awareness.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Death.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Financial consent
Practitioners in both Australia and New Zealand are expected to obtain written financial consent in any situation where the patient will incur an out-of-pocket expense for the provision of healthcare.

A failure to practice at the level expected
To be successful, a claim of negligence in this area must clearly demonstrate that the practitioner’s performance has fallen below the level expected of their peers. When clinical issues are under scrutiny, the court will be guided by the opinions of respected peers acting as impartial expert witnesses. Expert witnesses necessarily make their assessment of practitioner’s performance based largely on the practitioner’s documentation. As always, good contemporaneous documentation is the key to a successful defense.

Restitution
If it is concluded the patient experienced sufficient damage as a result of a breach of the duty of care, the issue of compensation arises. Assuming that practitioners have practiced within the terms of their indemnity policy, financial compensation and legal costs will be the responsibility of the MDO.

Employment issues
Most MDOs offer industrial relations advice to their members. Industrial relations advice may also be sought from medical unions or from privately engaged solicitors.

Coronial matters
Anaesthetic-related deaths are rare. Unfortunately, they do occur, and the anaesthetist will often be required to make a submission to the coroner. The coroner’s job is to make a determination on the likely cause of death, significant contributing factors, and to make relevant recommendations based on their investigation. It should be noted that the coroner’s findings in Australia and New Zealand are open to public discovery and may be used in, or trigger, subsequent litigation. Any submission to the coroner should be therefore be accurate, detailed and reviewed by an MDO prior to its submission.

An insight into the common causes of anaesthetic-related deaths may be obtained from publications such as the Victorian Consultative Council on Anaesthetic Morbidity and Mortality’s (VCCAMM) triennial reviews of perioperative deaths. In the 2015-2017 triennium, for example, 181 perioperative deaths were examined, of which 58 were determined to be anaesthetic related14. The causes of these anaesthetic related deaths are given in Table 6. The causes of these anaesthetic related deaths are given in Table 6.

Table 6. Causes of 58 anaesthetic-related deaths. VCCAMM 2015-2017

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cause</th>
<th>Percentage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cardiovascular (cardiac arrest, significant hypotension, myocardial ischaemia and infarction)</td>
<td>32 (55%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Respiratory (aspiration, pneumothorax)</td>
<td>9 (16%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neurological (stroke)</td>
<td>7 (12%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug related (anaphylaxis, adverse drug response)</td>
<td>6 (10%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Airway (failed intubation)</td>
<td>2 (3%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other</td>
<td>2 (3%)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Audit
In Australia, Medicare is increasingly focusing its attention on medical practitioners’ billing practices. Individuals whose billing practice is statistically different from that of their peers (that is, above the 95th percentile) are likely to come under scrutiny. These practitioners will be then contacted and may be offered:

2. an opportunity to meet with investigators to explain why they are an outlier, and/or
3. be the subject of an external audit. In this situation, the hospital notes are reviewed by a peer seeking evidence to support the use of the claimed item numbers.

It is the responsibility of the individual practitioner to educate themselves about the appropriate use of anaesthesia item numbers. It is understood that practitioners make mistakes however, if payments have been made that were not due, Medicare will expect to be reimbursed. If there is evidence that erroneous billing is intentional, the practitioner may be charged with fraud. As with all medicolegal matters, good documentation is the practitioner’s best defense.

Social media
Social media is perhaps the most disturbing recent development for the medicolegal world. Not only does it represent a new forum in which practitioners can behave badly, but it also presents an unregulated platform for the anonymous criticism of practitioners. While it is incredibly distressing to be unfairly targeted, the moderators of these forums defend their users’ right to free speech. Once a negative review has been posted the chances of affecting its removal are low. Responding to these criticisms online is fraught with hazard. As always, practitioners should discuss their individual situation with their MDO.

DOCUMENTATION: IF YOU DIDN’T DOCUMENT IT, IT DIDN’T HAPPEN
If there in one thing that helps protect a practitioner in the event of an investigation of any sort, it is the ability to produce good quality, contemporaneous clinical notes. The rule of thumb for the standard of documentation required in anaesthesia is that a colleague could safely take over the care of the patient based solely on a review of the notes or, on review of the notes, confidently conclude that the duty of care owed to the patient had been fulfilled (see section: Negligence). Unfortunately, anaesthetists’ documentation often leaves a lot to be desired. As such, there is little that they can do to defend themselves. Very simplistically, from a medicolegally point of view, if it wasn’t documented, it didn’t happen.

WELLBEING
An accusation of incompetence or negligence is incredibly confronting. Despite the fact that we are all human, and that we all make mistakes, practitioners are often blind-sided by the intensity of the emotions they experience. Feelings of persecution, anger, and guilt are common. There is also fear: a fear of being judged by (often ill-informed) colleagues, a fear of repercussions, and most of all, a fear of the unknown. Occasionally it is the profession’s health that is at the heart of the problem but more often, it is the incident or complaint itself that pierces the wellbeing bubble.

While the MDO will help the practitioner navigate the technical aspects of a notification, it is incumbent upon practitioners to look after themselves and seek help if required. Debriefing with a respected peer and seeking the support of colleagues, friends and family is important. Time and support are far more therapeutic than drugs and alcohol. As medical practitioners, we are trained to help others. It is reasonable to assume therefore, that we would also be capable of extending ourselves to ask a troubled colleague if they are OK.

Professional help is readily accessible. A confidential “doctors-for-doctors” hotline is available in every state and territory in Australia and in New Zealand. Contact details of the individual services can be found on the Doctors’ Health and Advisory Service website15.

CONCLUSION
My concluding comment on all things medicolegal is “if you don’t know, ask”. You pay your MDOs large sums of money so please use them. It’s better to avoid trouble than to have to dig yourself out of a huge, steaming pile of it.

REFERENCES

Media moments for anaesthetists

Simon Hendel MBBS (Hons) FANZCA GDip Journalism
The Alfred, Melbourne

Dr Simon Hendel is an anaesthesiologist at The Alfred in Melbourne and has completed post graduate qualifications in journalism. He has worked in a number of freelance media roles including as the medical advisor and fact checker for the ABC television series Ask The Doctor and Catalyst. His articles have appeared in The Conversation, The Age, The Sydney Morning Herald, Executive Style and MJA InSight Plus. As far as he knows, he has never influenced anyone in particular on social media.

Jonathan (Joff) Lacey BMEdSci BMBS MSc FRCA
The Alfred, Melbourne

Dr Joff Lacey is a British-trained anaesthetist who is completing his fellowship at The Alfred in Melbourne. He has enjoyed a range of media experiences, including as presenter and scientific adviser for the award-winning medical documentary series The Cure, and as a member of the presenting team for the online professional development platform TopMedTalk.

INTRODUCTION

There has been a media revolution. Across the past decade traditional media has been disrupted. The meteoric rise of online news and content providers, social-media platforms, and user-driven-content has blurred the lines separating publisher, journalist and consumer. This growth has been driven by an insatiable consumer appetite for information and simultaneous engagement. Media of various platforms has become both more overt and insidious across our personal and professional lives. Social media (SoMe) forums (including Facebook, Twitter and YouTube) enjoy a staggering four billion active users worldwide¹; no fewer than 500 million tweets are sent each day². With myriad sources at our fingertips it has never been easier to access entertainment, marketing and news – and never harder to discern the difference.

The disruption of traditional media and democratisation of information and production has had undeniable benefits, beyond the profits of Twitter and Google. But the other side of this double-edged sword has been a surgeon’s scalpel. Like a cosmetic surgeon cutting and slicing and stitching together to create the appearance of youth, traditional media organisations have gone under the knife. Many can barely be recognised except by their closest friends. Newsrooms are decimated, journalist job numbers slashed, the subscription/advertising business model excised. Anyone with an iPhone can take and distribute visual media faster than any news agency at the turn of the 21st century – so who needs photojournalists?²

It is only on reflection that we realise the velocity and extent of this disruption: it is fewer than 15 years since the rise of online news and content providers, social-media platforms, and user-driven-content has blurred the lines separating publisher, journalist and consumer. This growth has been driven by an insatiable consumer appetite for information and simultaneous engagement. Media of various platforms has become both more overt and insidious across our personal and professional lives. Social media (SoMe) forums (including Facebook, Twitter and YouTube) enjoy a staggering four billion active users worldwide¹; no fewer than 500 million tweets are sent each day². With myriad sources at our fingertips it has never been easier to access entertainment, marketing and news – and never harder to discern the difference.

The disruption of traditional media and democratisation of information and production has had undeniable benefits, beyond the profits of Twitter and Google. But the other side of this double-edged sword has been a surgeon’s scalpel. Like a cosmetic surgeon cutting and slicing and stitching together to create the appearance of youth, traditional media organisations have gone under the knife. Many can barely be recognised except by their closest friends. Newsrooms are decimated, journalist job numbers slashed, the subscription/advertising business model excised. Anyone with an iPhone can take and distribute visual media faster than any news agency at the turn of the 21st century – so who needs photojournalists?²

It is only on reflection that we realise the velocity and extent of this disruption: it is fewer than 15 years since the first iPhone was released; and only 25 years ago that The Age newspaper (Melbourne-based Channel 9/Fairfax masthead) first published an article online in January 1995 – at that time fewer than 250,000 Australians had access to the internet.

While the medical world is renowned for its conservatism and relatively cautious approach, it too has witnessed the explosion of social media and disruption of traditional media as a means of communication and engagement. This has conferred tremendous advantages, allowing information dissemination to previously unreachable audiences, at a rate unparalleled in the evening news.

Medicine has always had a strong relationship with the entertainment industry too, with a long list of popular medical dramas. But we are now seeing a surge in the media presence of real-life medical professionals. The term “media” no longer refers to a limited number of (trusted) corporate organisations involved in mass communication; the individual now has the capability to be a media outlet. Cue the rise of the Citizen Journalist (and the fall of the sub-editor!).

The opportunity and advantages of the medico-media relationship are vast, but so is the potential harm. And for doctors at all levels, understanding these risks and opportunities is now an essential part of professional practice. In this article we will discuss the opportunities, as well as the liabilities, for anaesthetists associated with media engagement and ultimately why we should embrace the revolution.

MEDICS IN THE MEDIA

The media opportunities for medical professionals are varied and numerous: newspaper columns, scriptwriting, novels, popular science books, documentaries, news commentary, podcasts, children’s television programs, blogs, and medical education videos to name a few. Talking-head-health-experts are in such high demand that there are talent agencies specialising in managing the careers of medics in the media.
Physicians are particularly attractive to production companies and journalists’ contact books, not only for their expert knowledge but also because they remain broadly trusted by the public. With the advent of social media and an increasing comfort with online public presence, medics have demonstrated prolific activity that includes provision of expert opinion, distribution of journal articles, political discussion and live debate. Unprecedented is a word that has taken on new meaning across the past 12 months in the face of the coronavirus pandemic. While we have found ourselves in unprecedented times, we have witnessed an extraordinary volume of medical engagement and contribution to the media. With so much unknown and so little time to acquire knowledge, medical professionals flooded the internet. Social media has emerged as one of the primary sources of medical update and opinion and, for better or worse, shows no sign of abating. Social media use and engagement presents significant opportunities to broaden the reach and audience for communication by anaesthetists – both within the profession and to the public.

**ANAESTHETIC OPPORTUNITY**

Not traditionally a profession at ease with publicity and promotion, it is important that we use the opportunities afforded by the media to the advantage of both clinicians and patients alike. Whether for public educational resources, research updates or organisational promotion, the media provides enormous potential for advancement of the specialty.

**Research and education**

Research and education are key tenets of advancing the science of anaesthesia. Social media provides a unique platform that allows anaesthetists to connect with colleagues, patients and the public alike. It enables accessible, far-reaching, real-time conversation on perennial clinical challenges as well as recent discoveries and emerging trends. Key findings in the latest articles, from the most high-impact journals can be disseminated across the world in minutes. Platforms such as Twitter, if viewed through the lens of open access to information, serve as a conduit to information that may otherwise be protected by a journal subscription pay-wall, or simply too difficult to find. Use of social media risks too, of course. While reputable information can be readily shared with people who may otherwise not have had access to it, so too can poor-quality information or even deliberate misinformation.

For scientists trying to spread the news of their research findings, using social media has become essential. But competing with the torrent of variable information being shared is perhaps the greatest challenge. Peaking above the noise level and being heard is not easy. While not looking directly at published research, a 2018 study of Twitter activity at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT) in the United States of America, and published in the journal Science, analysed 126,000 stories tweeted by three million users. The key findings of the researchers: fake news, false stories and rumours penetrate much deeper into the social network than verified accurate stories. This risk has not been studied specifically in terms of sharing of scientific content. “This highlights the challenge associated with reaching an audience with accurate information. However, that is not cause to disengage or even for alarm – it simply highlights the need for vigilance and critical appraisal of data. The benefits of social media engagement for the dissemination of research and sharing of science, vastly outweigh the detriments. For scientists trying to spread the news of their research findings, using social media has become essential.”

**PITFALLS AND CAUTIONARY TALES**

Where there is opportunity, there is also risk. The line between private online life, or even personal opinion, and professional responsibility as a doctor is now entirely blurred. Understanding this is the crucial first step in engaging on online presence. Whether for better or worse, our online presence can impact us on Facebook, comments on news articles, Twitter arguments and shared media, are available for all in perpetuity. So, what we engage with, post, share, and comment on builds a picture of who we are in the online space. As that profile increasingly articulates with who we are in the “real” world, the greater the impact it can have on professional standing, employment prospects and reputation.

Institutional guidance from professional associations such as the Australian Medical Association and regulatory agencies including the Australian Health Practitioner Regulation Agency (AHPRA) are necessary and an important barometer for doctors engaging with social media. Likewise, most hospitals have policies relating to staff engagement with mainstream media and many will require staff to seek advice and counsel with their media affairs department to discuss potential comments or media engagement. In some cases, this may be a contractual requirement. This should not dissuade doctors engaging with the media – merely provide them with a clear framework for doing so.

Speaking with journalists is not something that should be feared or avoided. Most are not trying to catch you out or trip you up. In the circumstance of communicating research or science, most are simply trying to determine what complicated material for a wider lay audience.

Communicating areas of technical or scientific expertise in plain English and avoiding jargon is the best way to ensure your message is not lost in translation. Some clinicians may wish to undertake formal training to improve their confidence and efficacy of communicating with journalists and the media. Again, contacting your hospital’s media affairs department is a good first step as they may provide in-house training or advice on reputable training opportunities. Another excellent resource is the Australian Science Media Centre (AuSMC) – an independent, not-for-profit organisation that aims to improve the quality of science communication in the media. AustraSMC act as an impartial and trusted nexus between scientists and journalists; they provide support to the media in reporting accurately on complex scientific matters including finding reliable sources, and likewise encourage the experts to engage proactively with the media. To that end, AuSMC provides scientists and healthcare professionals with numerous training resources and workshops aimed at honing media skills.

Anaesthetists surely have their work cut out for them. Engaging publicly is perhaps the best way we can foster the type of awareness that is important for patient safety and comfort: an awareness of what it is we really do. It is perhaps an unfortunate by-product of the success and safety of our unique medical specialty that many do not understand what happens when they go under the knife nor the extensive role that anaesthetists play in modern healthcare. However, engaging with the public through various forms of media is our opportunity to improve that understanding.

Public engagement may include a diverse range of activities including science festivals, museum exhibits, public lectures and school workshops, but also direct engagement with (social) media. The successful Australian and New Zealand College of Anaesthetists (ANZCA) National Anaesthesia Day is another example of important efforts for our profession to connect with the public. This variety of engagement provides opportunities to promote and inform the public about anaesthetists, our expertise and our responsibilities.

It is also logical that a better-informed public may also lead to improved outcomes, not only in terms of patient satisfaction but in the shared-decision making processes that are often left wanting in anaesthesia.
Engaging with mainstream media and talking to journalists is usually a much more structured process and less common than inadvertently exposing yourself to risk on social media. It is well documented that social media use for the physician is fraught with personal, practical and ethical challenges. The reality is that any comment on a personal profile can be linked back to you professionally, so if you wouldn’t be happy seeing your comments front page of a national newspaper then think twice about publishing them on a social media platform (Table 1).

### Table 1. Examples of disciplinary action taken against medics as a result of social media activity

| The Medical Board of Australia v Lee (2019) | Dr Lee was a registrar in emergency medicine when he received a suspension from the medical register for professional misconduct. The verdict was in relation to comments made on social media, including overseas-based platforms. Despite the private capacity in which these comments were made, Dr Lee was easily identifiable as an Australian medical professional. The remarks were highly offensive and often morally reprehensible and prompted notification of the Medical Board, eventually leading to disciplinary action. Although an extreme example, the case demonstrates the blurring of private/professional boundaries in the online world and highlights that it is our duty to maintain professional standards in all spheres of life. Published guidance from AHPRA states that “National boards may consider social media use in your private life (even where there is no identifiable link to you as a registered health practitioner) if it raises concerns about your fitness to hold registration.” |
| The Medical Board of Australia v Ellis (2020) | Dr Ellis was a Melbourne-based GP. The manager of the practice where he worked notified the Medical Board of Australia with concerns regarding the doctor’s social media activity. Dr Ellis had posted material and comments regarding his controversial opinions on vaccines, chemotherapy and other medical interventions. Following an investigation, the board deemed that Dr Ellis posed a risk to public health and safety, either through broadcasting his views or practicing medicine in alignment to them, and therefore deemed it appropriate to suspend his registration with immediate effect. When you post on social media it is broadcast to the world and is irretrievable. Clinicians are welcome to their personal views and opinions but they must uphold the ethical and behavioural code of our profession. AHPRA states that a doctor “who makes comments, endorses or shares information which contradicts the best available scientific evidence may give rise to concerns, endorses or shares information which contradicts the best available scientific evidence may give legitimacy to false health-related information and breach their professional responsibilities.” |

### STATISTICAL LITERACY AND COMMUNICATION

Stating that numerical figures are precise whereas in reality they are imprecise is a statistical fallacy that has important implications for the medical profession. Even highly educated people, including healthcare professionals, can have difficulty grasping numerical concepts important to understanding concepts of risk. That imprecision at assessing risk has been highlighted in the past few months as a number of effective vaccines for SARS-CoV-2 have become available. Especially in jurisdictions such as Australia where COVID-19 has been largely controlled (and despite logistic challenges in making vaccines available) an emerging hesitancy to certain vaccines has dominated media reports and twitter threads. Simultaneously and on the other hand, there is a lethargy about the risks of continuing to avoid COVID-19. This is not helped by media reporting of every potential vaccine-associated complication, whether verified or not, at the same time as daily “double-doughnut” case numbers. As medical specialists, who are in the main not also vaccine specialists, we have a very real responsibility to be measured, balanced and accurate in our commentary on social media – as well as in actual society!

Grasping with the communication of risk has been a challenge for far longer than the Astra-Zeneca SARS-CoV-2 thrombosis risk was first suggested. In the world of science communication, a battle exists between absolute and relative risk – and to the victor goes the headline. So, it is inevitably relative risk, without the corresponding context and grounding of absolute risk, that grabs the story. Also, when absolute numbers are very low it can be very difficult to appreciate the risk. Relative risk, although an extremely useful statistic, can be misleading to the general public. It is often more persuasive with the numbers involved being much greater than absolute terms.

A New Zealand study demonstrated that participants were far more likely to consent to a proposed intervention when its supposed benefits were framed as a relative risk reduction than when compared to the exact same benefit communicated in terms of absolute risk reduction. We wield incredible influence when we frame risk in a particular way and we must be mindful of that influence when we communicate and commentate. Perhaps using more than one method to communicate risk may mitigate effects of framing? Misplaced commentary on risk in medicine and the great efforts made through research to accurately determine and communicate risk. To be fair to us all, understanding, let alone communicating, statistical risk is no easy feat. Sir David Spiegelhalter is a British statistician who has published extensively on the methods, and difficulty, of communicating the complexities of risk to the general population. For those among us keen to wade into the twittersphere or mainstream commentary, his work is well worth reviewing regardless of your statistical competencies.

### CONCLUSION

There are many benefits to medical practitioners and, more specifically, anaesthesiologists, engaging with the media. Mainstream commentary, his work is well worth reviewing regardless of your statistical competencies.

### PERSONAL DISCLOSURES

The authors’ personal experience in the media has been primarily in television (science documentaries) and print (journalism). Our involvement has been overwhelmingly positive both in terms of professional and personal impact. The creative world of the media provides an appealing balance to the technical precision of clinical anaesthesia practice.

As a healthcare professional it is all too easy to become blase about the wonders of science and medicine; reporting these to the public provides welcome insight into the privilege of our working environment. It remains a component to our professional lives that provides great fulfilment and satisfaction, and one we both hope to continue throughout our careers. We would encourage any colleagues with an interest to pursue them keenly.

### REFERENCES

25. Ellis v Medical Board of Australia (Review and Regulation) [2020] VCAT 862.
28. Sarfati D, Howden-Chapman P, Woodward A, Salmond C. Does the frame affect the picture? A study into how attitudes to screening for cancer are affected by the way benefits are expressed. J Med Screen. 1998;5(3):137-140. doi:10.1136/jms.5.3.137